World Journal of Gastroenterology®

Volume 13 Number 42
November 14, 2007

National Journal Award
2005

Baishideng

Editorial Department of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*
77 Shuangta Xijie, Taiyuan 030001, Shanxi Province, China
Telephone: +86-351-4078656
E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 1007-9327 CN 14-1219/R Local Post Offices Code No. 82-261

World Journal of Gastroenterology www.wjgnet.com Volume 13 Number 42 Nov 14 2007

ISSN 1007-9327
CN 14-1219/R

WJG

World Journal of Gastroenterology®

Indexed and Abstracted in:

Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®) and Journal Citation Reports/Science Edition, *Index Medicus*, MEDLINE and PubMed, Chemical Abstracts, EMBASE/Excerpta Medica, Abstracts Journals, *Nature Clinical Practice Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, CAB Abstracts and Global Health.
ISI JCR 2003-2000 IF: 3.318, 2.532, 1.445 and 0.993.

Volume 13 Number 42
November 14, 2007
World J Gastroenterol
2007 November 14; 13(42): 5547-5672

Online Submissions
wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
Printed on Acid-free Paper
世界胃肠病学杂志

National Journal Award
2005

World Journal of Gastroenterology®

Weekly Established in October 1995

Volume 13 Number 42
November 14, 2007

Baishideng

Contents

Contents

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Volume 13 **Number** 42 **November** 14, 2007

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Volume 13 **Number** 42 **November** 14, 2007

Contents

Responsible E-Editor for this issue: Yong Liu

C-Editor for this issue: Dr. Richard A Rippe

Responsible S-Editor for this issue: Ye Liu

World Journal of Gastroenterology (*World J Gastroenterol , WJG*), a leading international journal in gastroenterology and hepatology, has an established reputation for publishing first class research on esophageal cancer, gastric cancer, liver cancer, viral hepatitis, colorectal cancer, and *H pylori* infection, providing a forum for both clinicians and scientists, and has been indexed and abstracted in Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®) and Journal Citation Reports/Science Edition, *Index Medicus*, MEDLINE and PubMed, Chemical Abstracts, EMBASE/Excerpta Medica, Abstracts Journals, *Nature Clinical Practice Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, CAB Abstracts and Global Health. ISI JCR 2003-2000 IF: 3.318, 2.532, 1.445 and 0.993. *WJG* is a weekly journal published by *WJG*. The publication date is on 7th, 14th, 21st, and 28th every month. The *WJG* is supported by The National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801 and No.30424812, which was founded with a name of *China National Journal of New Gastroenterology* on October 1, 1995, and renamed as *WJG* on January 25, 1998.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastroenterology

RESPONSIBLE INSTITUTION
Department of Science and Technology of Shanxi Province

SPONSOR
Taiyuan Research and Treatment Center for Digestive Diseases, Taiyuan 77, Shuangta Xijie, Taiyuan 030001, Shanxi Province, China

EDITING
Editorial Board of *World Journal of Gastroenterology,* 77 Shuangta Xijie, Taiyuan 030001,
Shanxi Province, China
Telephone: +86-351-4078656
E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com

PUBLISHING
Editorial Department of *World Journal of Gastroenterology,* 77 Shuangta Xijie, Taiyuan 030001,
Shanxi Province, China
Telephone: +86-351-4078656
E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PRINTING
Beijing Kexin Printing House

OVERSEAS DISTRIBUTOR
Beijing Bureau for Distribution of Newspapers and Journals
(Code No. 82-261)
China International Book Trading Corporation PO Box 399, Beijing, China (Code No. M4481)

PUBLICATION DATE
November 14, 2007

World Journal of Gastroenterology®

Editorial Board

2007-2009

Baishideng

http://www.wjgnet.com E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com

John L Wallace, *Calgary*
Eric M Yoshida, *Vancouver*

Chile
Silvana Zanlungo, *Santiago*

China
Henry LY Chan, *Hongkong*
Xiao-Ping Chen, *Wuhan*
Zong-Jie Cui, *Beijing*
Da-Jun Deng, *Beijing*
Er-Dan Dong, *Beijing*
Sheung-Tat Fan, *Hong Kong*
Jin Gu, *Beijing*
De-Wu Han, *Taiyuan*
Ming-Liang He, *Hong Kong*
Wayne HC Hu, *Hong Kong*
Chee-Kin Hui, *Hong Kong*
Ching Lung Lai, *Hong Kong*
Kam Chuen Lai, *Hong Kong*
James YW Lau, *Hong Kong*
Yuk Tong Lee, *Hong Kong*
Suet Yi Leung, *Hong Kong*
Wai-Keung Leung, *Hong Kong*
Chung-Mau Lo, *Hong Kong*
Jing-Yun Ma, *Beijing*
Lun-Xiu Qin, *Shanghai*
Yu-Gang Song, *Guangzhou*
Qin Su, *Beijing*
Wai-Man Wong, *Hong Kong*
Hong Xiao, *Beijing*
Dong-Liang Yang, *Wuhan*
Winnie Yeo, *Hong Kong*
Yuan Yuan, *Shenyang*
Man-Fung Yuen, *Hong Kong*
Jian-Zhong Zhang, *Beijing*
Xin-Xin Zhang, *Shanghai*
Shu Zheng, *Hangzhou*

Croatia
Tamara Cacev, *Zagreb*
Marko Duvnjak, *Zagreb*

Cuba
Damian Casadesus Rodriguez, *Havana*

Czech
Milan Jirsa, *Praha*

Denmark
Peter Bytzer, *Copenhagen*
Hans Gregersen, *Aalborg*
Jens H Henriksen, *Hvidovre*
Claus Peter Hovendal, *Odense*
Fin Stolze Larsen, *Copenhagen*
SØren MØller, *Hvidovre*

Egypt
Abdel-Rahman El-Zayadi, *Giza*
Amr Mohamed Helmy, *Cairo*
Sanaa Moharram Kamal, *Cairo*
Ayman Yosry, *Cairo*

Finland
Irma Elisabet Jarvela, *Helsinki*
Katri Maria Kaukinen, *Tampere*
Minna Nyström, *Helsinki*
Pentti Sipponen, *Espoo*

France
Bettaieb Ali, *Dijon*
Corlu Anne, *Rennes*
Denis Ardid, *Clermont-Ferrand*
Charles Paul Balabaud, *Bordeaux*
Soumeya Bekri, *Rouen*
Jacques Belghiti, *Clichy*
Pierre Brissot, *Rennes*
Patrice Philippe Cacoub, *Paris*
Franck Carbonnel, *Besancon*
Laurent Castera, *Pessac*
Bruno Clément, *Rennes*
Jacques Cosnes, *Paris*
Thomas Decaens, *Cedex*
Francoise Lunel Fabiani, *Angers*
Gérard Feldmann, *Paris*
Jean Fioramonti, *Toulouse*
Catherine Guettier, *Villejuif*
Chantal Housset, *Paris*
Juan Lucio Iovanna, *Marseille*
Rene Lambert, *Lyon*
Philippe Mathurin, *Lille*
Tamara Matysiak–Budnik, *Paris*
Francis Mégraud, *Bordeaux*
Richard Moreau, *Clichy*
Thierry Piche, *Nice*
Raoul Poupon, *Paris*
Jean Rosenbaum, *Bordeaux*
Jose Sahel, *Marseille*
Jean-Philippe Salier, *Rouen*
Jean-Yves Scoazec, *Lyon*
Khalid Ahnini Tazi, *Clichy*
Emmanuel Tiret, *Paris*
Baumert F Thomas, *Strasbourg*
MC Vozenin-brotons, *Villejuif*
Jean-Pierre Henri Zarski, *Grenoble*
Jessica Zucman-Rossi, *Paris*

Germany
HD Allescher, *Garmisch-Partenkirchen*
Martin Anlauf, *Kiel*
Rudolf Arnold, *Marburg*
Max G Bachem, *Ulm*
Thomas F Baumert, *Freiburg*
Daniel C Baumgart, *Berlin*
Hubert Blum, *Freiburg*
Thomas Bock, *Tuebingen*
Katja Breitkopf, *Mannheim*
Dunja Bruder, *Braunschweig*
Markus W Büchler, *Heidelberg*
Christa Buechler, *Regensburg*
Reinhard Buettner, *Bonn*
Elke Cario, *Essen*
CF Dietrich, *Bad Mergentheim*
Rainer Josef Duchmann, *Berlin*
Paul Enck, *Tuebingen*
Fred Fändrich, *Kiel*
Ulrich Robert Fölsch, *Kiel*
Helmut Friess, *Heidelberg*
Peter R Galle, *Mainz*
Nikolaus Gassler, *Aachen*
Andreas Geier, *Aachen*
Dieter Glebe, *Giessen*
Burkhard Göke, *Munich*
Florian Graepler, *Tuebingen*
Axel M Gressner, *Aachen*
Veit Gülberg, *Munich*
Rainer Haas, *Munich*
Eckhart Georg Hahn, *Erlangen*
Stephan Hellmig, *Kiel*
Martin Hennenberg, *Bonn*
Johannes Herkel, *Hamburg*
Klaus Herrlinger, *Stuttgart*
Eberhard Hildt, *Berlin*
Joerg C Hoffmann, *Berlin*
Ferdinand Hofstaedter, *Regensburg*
Werner Hohenberger, *Erlangen*
RG Jakobs, *Ludwigshafen*
Jutta Keller, *Hamburg*
Andrej Khandoga, *Munich*
Sibylle Koletzko, *München*
Stefan Kubicka, *Hannover*
Joachim Labenz, *Siegen*
Frank Lammert, *Bonn*
Thomas Langmann, *Regensburg*
Christian Liedtke, *Aachen*
Matthias Löhr, *Mannheim*
Christian Maaser, *Muenster*
Ahmed Madisch, *Dresden*
Michael Peter Manns, *Hannover*
Stephan Miehlke, *Dresden*
Sabine Mihm, *Göttingen*
Silvio Nadalin, *Essen*
Markus F Neurath, *Mainz*
Johann Ockenga, *Berlin*
Florian Obermeier, *Regensburg*
Gustav Paumgartner, *Munich*
Ulrich Ks Peitz, *Magdeburg*
Markus Reiser, *Bochum*
Steffen Rickes, *Magdeburg*
Gerhard Rogler, *Regensburg*
Tilman Sauerbruch, *Bonn*
Dieter Saur, *Munich*
Hans Scherubl, *Berlin*
Joerg Schirra, *Munich*
Roland M Schmid, *München*
Volker Schmitz, *Bonn*
AG Schreyer, *Regensburg*
Tobias Schroeder, *Essen*
Hans Seifert, *Oldenburg*
Manfred V Singer, *Mannheim*
Gisela Sparmann, *Rostock*
Jurgen M Stein, *Frankfurt*
Ulrike Susanne Stein, *Berlin*
Manfred Stolte, *Bayreuth*
Christian P Strassburg, *Hannover*
WR Stremmel, *Heidelberg*
Harald F Teutsch, *Ulm*
Robert Thimme, *Freiburg*
HL Tillmann, *Leipzig*
Tung-Yu Tsui, *Regensburg*
Axel Ulsenheimer, *Munich*
Patrick Veit, *Essen*
Claudia Veltkamp, *Heidelberg*
Siegfried Wagner, *Deggendorf*
Henning Walczak, *Heidelberg*
Fritz von Weizsacker, *Berlin*
Jens Werner, *Heidelberg*
Bertram Wiedenmann, *Berlin*
Reiner Wiest, *Regensburg*
Stefan Wirth, *Wuppertal*
Stefan JP Zeuzem, *Homburg*

Greece
Elias A Kouroumalis, *Heraklion*
Ioannis E Koutroubakis, *Heraklion*
Spiros Sgouros, *Athens*

Hungary
Peter Laszlo Lakatos, *Budapest*
Zsuzsa Szondy, *Debrecen*

Iceland
H Gudjonsson, *Reykjavik*

India
KA Balasubramanian, *Vellore*
Sujit K Bhattacharya, *Kolkata*
Yogesh K Chawla, *Chandigarh*
Radha K Dhiman, *Chandigarh*
Sri Prakash Misra, *Allahabad*
ND Reddy, *Hyderabad*

Iran
Seyed-Moayed Alavian, *Tehran*
Reza Malekzadeh, *Tehran*
Seyed Alireza Taghavi, *Shiraz*

Ireland
Billy Bourke, *Dublin*
Ronan A Cahill, *Cork*
Anthony P Moran, *Galway*

Israel
Simon Bar-Meir, *Hashomer*
Abraham Rami Eliakim, *Haifa*

Yaron Ilan, *Jerusalem*
Avidan U Neumann, *Ramat-Gan*
Yaron Niv, *Pardesia*
Ran Oren, *Tel Aviv*

Italy

Giovanni Addolorato, *Roma*
Luigi E Adinolfi, *Naples*
Domenico Alvaro, *Rome*
V Annese, *San Giovanni Rotond*
Adolfo Francesco Attili, *Roma*
Giovanni Barbara, *Bologna*
Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
Pier Maria Battezzati, *Milan*
Stefano Bellentani, *Carpi*
Antomio Benedetti, *Ancona*
Mauro Bernardi, *Bologna*
Livia Biancone, *Rome*
Luigi Bonavina, *Milano*
Flavia Bortolotti, *Padova*
Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
Giovanni Cammarota, *Roma*
Antonino Cavallari, *Bologna*
Giuseppe Chiarioni, *Valeggio*
Michele Cicala, *Rome*
Amedeo Columbano, *Cagliari*
Massimo Conio, *Sanremo*
Dario Conte, *Milano*
Gino Roberto Corazza, *Pavia*
Francesco Costa, *Pisa*
Antonio Craxi, *Palermo*
Silvio Danese, *Milan*
Roberto De Giorgio, *Bologna*
Giovanni D De Palma, *Naples*
Fabio Farinati, *Padua*
Giammarco Fava, *Ancona*
Francesco Feo, *Sassari*
Stefano Fiorucci, *Perugia*
Andrea Galli, *Firenze*
Valeria Ghisett, *Turin*
Gianluigi Giannelli, *Bari*
Edoardo G Giannini, *Genoa*
Paolo Gionchetti, *Bologna*
Mario Guslandi, *Milano*
Pietro Invernizzi, *Milan*
Giacomo Laffi, *Firenze*
Giovanni Maconi, *Milan*
Lucia Malaguarnera, *Catania*
ED Mangoni, *Napoli*
Giulio Marchesini, *Bologna*
Fabio Marra, *Florence*
Marco Marzioni, *Ancona*
Giuseppe Montalto, *Palermo*
Giovanni Monteleone, *Rome*
Giovanni Musso, *Torino*
Gerardo Nardone, *Napoli*
Valerio Nobili, *Rome*
Luisi Pagliaro, *Palermo*
Francesco Pallone, *Rome*
Fabrizio R Parente, *Milan*
F Perri, *San Giovanni Rotondo*
Raffaele Pezzilli, *Bologna*
A Pilotto, *San Giovanni Rotondo*
Mario Pirisi, *Novara*
Paolo Del Poggio, *Treviglio*
Gabriele Bianchi Porro, *Milano*
Piero Portincasa, *Bari*
Bernardino Rampone, *Siena*
Claudio Romano, *Messina*
Marco Romano, *Napoli*
Gerardo Rosati, *Potenza*
Enrico Roda, *Bologna*
Domenico Sansonno, *Bari*
Vincenzo Savarino, *Genova*
Mario Del Tacca, *Pisa*
Giovanni Tarantino, *Naples*
Roberto Testa, *Genoa*
Pier Alberto Testoni, *Milan*
Dino Vaira, *Bologna*

Japan

Kyoichi Adachi, *Izumo*
Yasushi Adachi, *Sapporo*
Taiji Akamatsu, *Matsumoto*
Sk Md Fazle Akbar, *Ehime*
Takafumi Ando, *Nagoya*
Akira Andoh, *Otsu*
Taku Aoki, *Tokyo*
Masahiro Arai, *Tokyo*
Tetsuo Arakawa, *Osaka*
Yasuji Arase, *Tokyo*
Masahiro Asaka, *Sapporo*
Hitoshi Asakura, *Tokyo*
Takeshi Azuma, *Fukui*
Yoichi Chida, *Fukuoka*
Takahiro Fujimori, *Tochigi*
Jiro Fujimoto, *Hyogo*
Kazuma Fujimoto, *Saga*
Mitsuhiro Fujishiro, *Tokyo*
Yoshihide Fujiyama, *Otsu*
Hirokazu Fukui, *Tochigi*
Hiroyuki Hanai, *Hamamatsu*
Kazuhiro Hanazaki, *Kochi*
Naohiko Harada, *Fukuoka*
Makoto Hashizume, *Fukuoka*
Tetsuo Hayakawa, *Nagoya*
Kazuhide Higuchi, *Osaka*
Keisuke Hino, *Ube*
Keiji Hirata, *Kitakyushu*
Yuji Iimuro, *Nishinomiya*
Kenji Ikeda, *Tokyo*
Fumio Imazeki, *Chiba*
Yutaka Inagaki, *Kanagawa*
Yasuhiro Inokuchi, *Yokohama*
Haruhiro Inoue, *Yokohama*
Masayasu Inoue, *Osaka*
Akio Inui, *Kagoshima*
Hiromi Ishibashi, *Nagasaki*
Shunji Ishihara, *Izumo*
Toru Ishikawa, *Niigata*
Kei Ito, *Sendai*
Masayoshi Ito, *Tokyo*
Hiroaki Itoh, *Akita*
Ryuichi Iwakiri, *Saga*
Yoshiaki Iwasaki, *Okayama*
Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
Hiroshi Kaneko, *Aichi-Gun*
Shuichi Kaneko, *Kanazawa*
Takashi Kanematsu, *Nagasaki*
Mitsuo Katano, *Fukuoka*
Junji Kato, *Sapporo*
Mototsugu Kato, *Sapporo*
Shinzo Kato, *Tokyo*
Norifumi Kawada, *Osaka*
Sunao Kawano, *Osaka*
Mitsuhiro Kida, *Kanagawa*
Yoshikazu Kinoshita, *Izumo*
Tsuneo Kitamura, *Chiba*
Seigo Kitano, *Oita*
Kazuhiko Koike, *Tokyo*
Norihiro Kokudo, *Tokyo*
Satoshi Kondo, *Sapporo*
Shoji Kubo, *Osaka*
Masato Kusunoki, *Tsu Mie*
Katsunori Iijima, *Sendai*
Shin Maeda, *Tokyo*
Masatoshi Makuuchi, *Tokyo*
Osamu Matsui, *Kanazawa*
Yasuhiro Matsumura, *Chiba*
Yasushi Matsuzaki, *Tsukuba*
Kiyoshi Migita, *Omura*
Tetsuya Mine, *Kanagawa*
Hiroto Miwa, *Hyogo*
Masashi Mizokami, *Nagoya*
Yoshiaki Mizuguchi, *Tokyo*
Motowo Mizuno, *Hiroshima*
Morito Monden, *Suita*
Hisataka S Moriwaki, *Gifu*
Yasuaki Motomura, *Iizuka*
Yoshiharu Motoo, *Kanazawa*
Kazunari Murakami, *Oita*
Kunihiko Murase, *Tusima*
Masahito Nagaki, *Gifu*
Masaki Nagaya, *Kawasaki*
Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
Hisato Nakajima, *Tokyo*
Hiroki Nakamura, *Yamaguchi*
Shotaro Nakamura, *Fukuoka*
Mikio Nishioka, *Niihama*
Shuji Nomoto, *Nagoya*
Susumu Ohmada, *Maebashi*
Masayuki Ohta, *Oita*
Tetsuo Ohta, *Kanazawa*
Kazuichi Okazaki, *Osaka*
Katsuhisa Omagari, *Nagasaki*
Saburo Onishi, *Nankoku*
Morikazu Onji, *Ehime*
Satoshi Osawa, *Hamamatsu*
Masanobu Oshima, *Kanazawa*
Hiromitsu Saisho, *Chiba*
Hidetsugu Saito, *Tokyo*
Yutaka Saito, *Tokyo*
Isao Sakaida, *Yamaguchi*
Michiie Sakamoto, *Tokyo*
Yasushi Sano, *Chiba*
Hiroki Sasaki, *Tokyo*
Iwao Sasaki, *Sendai*
Motoko Sasaki, *Kanazawa*
Chifumi Sato, *Tokyo*
Shuichi Seki, *Osaka*
Hiroshi Shimada, *Yokohama*
Mitsuo Shimada, *Tokushima*
Tomohiko Shimatan, *Hiroshima*
Hiroaki Shimizu, *Chiba*
Ichiro Shimizu, *Tokushima*
Yukihiro Shimizu, *Kyoto*
Shinji Shimoda, *Fukuoka*
Tooru Shimosegawa, *Sendai*
Tadashi Shimoyama, *Hirosaki*
Ken Shirabe, *Iizuka*
Yoshio Shirai, *Niigata*
Katsuya Shiraki, *Mie*
Yasushi Shiratori, *Okayama*
Masayuki Sho, *Nara*
Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
Hidekazu Suzuki, *Tokyo*
Minoru Tada, *Tokyo*
Tadatoshi Takayama, *Tokyo*
Tadashi Takeda, *Osaka*
Koji Takeuchi, *Kyoto*
Kiichi Tamada, *Tochigi*
Akira Tanaka, *Kyoto*
Eiji Tanaka, *Matsumoto*
Noriaki Tanaka, *Okayama*
Shinji Tanaka, *Hiroshima*
Wei Tang, *Tokyo*
Hideki Taniguchi, *Yokohama*
Kyuichi Tanikawa, *Kurume*
Akira Terano, *Shimotsugagun*
Hitoshi Togash, *Yamagata*
Kazunari Tominaga, *Osaka*
Takuji Torimura, *Fukuoka*
Minoru Toyota, *Sapporo*
Akihito Tsubota, *Chiba*
Shingo Tsuji, *Osaka*
Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
Shinichi Wada, *Tochigi*
Hiroyuki Watanabe, *Kanazawa*
Toshio Watanabe, *Osaka*
Yuji Watanabe, *Ehime*
Chun-Yang Wen, *Nagasaki*
Koji Yamaguchi, *Fukuoka*
Takayuki Yamamoto, *Yokkaichi*
Takashi Yao, *Fukuoka*

Masashi Yoneda, *Tochigi*
Hiroshi Yoshida, *Tokyo*
Masashi Yoshida, *Tokyo*
Norimasa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
Kentaro Yoshika, *Toyoake*
Masahide Yoshikawa, *Kashihara*

Lebanon
Bassam N Abboud, *Beirut*
Ala I Sharara, *Beirut*
Joseph Daoud Boujaoude, *Beirut*

Lithuania
Limas Kupcinskas, *Kaunas*

Macedonia
Vladimir Cirko Serafimoski, *Skopje*

Malaysia
Andrew Seng Boon Chua, *Ipoh*
Khean-Lee Goh, *Kuala Lumpur*
Jayaram Menon, *Sabah*

Mexico
Garcia-Compean Diego, *Monterrey*
E R Marin-Lopez, *Jesús García*
Saúl Villa-Treviño, *México*
JK Yamamoto-Furusho, *México*

Monaco
Patrick Rampal, *Monaco*

Netherlands
Ulrich Beuers, *Amsterdam*
Gerd Bouma, *Amsterdam*
Lee Bouwman, *Leiden*
J Bart A Crusius, *Amsterdam*
Janine K Kruit, *Groningen*
Ernst Johan Kuipers, *Rotterdam*
Ton Lisman, *Utrecht*
Yi Liu, *Amsterdam*
Servaas Morré, *Amsterdam*
Chris JJ Mulder, *Amsterdam*
Michael Müller, *Wageningen*
Amado Salvador Peña, *Amsterdam*
Robert J Porte, *Groningen*
Ingrid B Renes, *Rotterdam*
Andreas Smout, *Utrecht*
RW Stockbrugger, *Maastricht*
Luc JW van der Laan, *Rotterdam*
Karel van Erpecum, *Utrecht*
GP VanBerge-Henegouwen, *Utrecht*

New Zealand
Ian David Wallace, *Auckland*

Nigeria
Samuel Babafemi Olaleye, *Ibadan*

Norway
Trond Berg, *Oslo*
Tom Hemming Karlsen, *Oslo*
Helge Lyder Waldum, *Trondheim*

Pakistan
Muhammad S Khokhar, *Lahore*

Poland
Tomasz Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Robert Flisiak, *Bialystok*
Hanna Gregorek, *Warsaw*
DM Lebensztejn, *Bialystok*
Wojciech G Polak, *Wroclaw*
Marek Hartleb, *Katowice*

Portugal
MP Cecília, *Lisbon*
Miguel Carneiro De Moura, *Lisbon*

Russia
Vladimir T Ivashkin, *Moscow*
Leonid Lazebnik, *Moscow*
Vasiliy I Reshetnyak, *Moscow*

Saudi Arabia
Ibrahim Abdulkarim Al Mofleh, *Riyadh*

Serbia
DM Jovanovic, *Sremska Kamenica*

Singapore
Bow Ho, *Kent Ridge*
Khek-Yu Ho, *Singapore*
Francis Seow-Choen, *Singapore*

Slovakia
Anton Vavrecka, *Bratislava*

Slovenia
Sasa Markovic, *Ljubljana*

South Africa
Michael C Kew, *Parktown*

South Korea
Byung Ihn Choi, *Seoul*
Ho Soon Choi, *Seoul*
M Yeo, *Suwon*
Sun Pyo Hong, *Gyeonggi-do*
Jae J Kim, *Seoul*
Jin-Hong Kim, *Suwon*
Myung-Hwan Kim, *Seoul*
Chang Hong Lee, *Seoul*
Jong Kyun Lee, *Seoul*
Eun-Yi Moon, *Seoul*
Jae-Gahb Park, *Seoul*
Dong Wan Seo, *Seoul*
Dong jin Suh, *Seoul*

Spain
Juan G Abraldes, *Barcelona*
Agustin Albillos, *Madrid*
Raul J Andrade, *Málaga*
Luis Aparisi, *Valencia*
Fernando Azpiroz, *Barcelona*
Ramon Bataller, *Barcelona*
Josep M Bordas, *Barcelona*
Xavier Calvet, *Sabadell*
Andres Cardenas, *Barcelona*
Vicente Carreño, *Madrid*
Jose Castellote, *Barcelona*
Antoni Castells, *Barcelona*
Vicente Felipo, *Valencia*
Juan C Garcia-Pagán, *Barcelona*
Jaime Bosch Genover, *Barcelona*
Jaime Guardia, *Barcelona*
Angel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
María Isabel Torres López, *Jaén*
José M Mato, *Derio*
Juan F Medina, *Pamplona*
MA Muñoz-Navas, *Pamplona*
Julian Panes, *Barcelona*
Miguel Minguez Perez, *Valencia*
Miguel Perez-Mateo, *Alicante*
Josep M Pique, *Barcelona*
Jesús M Prieto, Pamplona
Sabino Riestra, *Pola De Siero*
Luis Rodrigo, *Oviedo*
Manuel Romero-Gómez, *Sevilla*

Sweden
Einar Stefan Björnsson, *Gothenburg*
Curt Einarsson, *Huddinge*
Ulf Hindorf, *Lund*
Hanns-Ulrich Marschall, *Stockholm*
Lars Christer Olbe, *Molndal*
Matti Sallberg, *Stockholm*
Magnus Simrén, *Göteborg*
Xiao-Feng Sun, *Linköping*
Ervin Tóth, *Malmö*
Weimin Ye, *Stockholm*

Switzerland
Chrish Beglinger, *Basel*
Pierre A Clavien, Zurich
Jean-Francois Dufour, *Bern*
Franco Fortunato, *Zürich*
Jean Louis Frossard, *Geneva*
Gerd A Kullak-Ublick, *Zurich*
Pierre Michetti, *Lausanne*
Francesco Negro, *Genève*
Bruno Stieger, *Zurich*
Radu Tutuian, *Zurich*
Stephan Robert Vavricka, *Zurich*
Arthur Zimmermann, *Berne*

Turkey
Yusuf Bayraktar, *Ankara*
Figen Gurakan, *Ankara*
Aydin Karabacakoglu, *Konya*
Serdar Karakose, *Konya*
Hizir Kurtel, *Istanbu*
Osman Cavit Ozdogan, *Istanbul*
Özlem Yilmaz, *Izmir*
Cihan Yurdaydin, *Ankara*

United Arab Emirates
Sherif M Karam, *Al-Ain*

United Kingdom
David Adams, *Birmingham*
NK Ahluwalia, *Stockport*
CG Antoniades, *London*
Anthony TR Axon, *Leeds*
Qasim Aziz, *Manchester*
Nicholas M Barnes, *Birmingham*
Jim D Bell, *London*
Mairi Brittan, *London*
Alastair David Burt, *Newcastle*
Simon Scott Campbell, *Manchester*
Simon R Carding, *Leeds*
Paul Jonathan Ciclitira, *London*
Eithne Costello, *Liverpool*
Tatjana Crnogorac-Jurcevic, *London*
Amar Paul Dhillon, *London*
Emad M El-Omar, *Aberdeen*
Annette Fristscher-Ravens, *London*
Elizabeth Furrie, *Dundee*
Daniel Richard Gaya, *Edinburgh*
Subrata Ghosh, *London*
William Greenhalf, *Liverpool*
Indra Neil Guha, *Southampton*
Peter Clive Hayes, *Edinburgh*
Gwo-Tzer Ho, *Edinburgh*
Anthony R Hobson, *Salford*
Stefan G Hübscher, *Birmingham*
Robin Hughes, *London*
Pali Hungin, *Stockton*
David Paul Hurlstone, *Sheffield*
Rajiv Jalan, *London*
Janusz AZ Jankowski, *Oxford*
Brian T Johnston, *Belfast*
David EJ Jones, *Newcastle*
Michael A Kamm, *Harrow*
Peter Karayiannis, *London*
Laurens Kruidenier, *Harlow*
Patricia F Lalor, *Birmingham*
Hong-Xiang Liu, *Cambridge*
K E L McColl, *Glasgow*
Stuart AC McDonald, *London*

Dermot Patrick Mcgovern, *Oxford*
Giorgina Mieli-Vergani, *London*
Nikolai V Naoumov, *London*
John P Neoptolemos, *Liverpool*
James Neuberger, *Birmingham*
Mark S Pearce, *Newcastle Upon Tyne*
Stephen P Pereira, *London*
D Mark Pritchard, *Liverpool*
Stephen E Roberts, *Swansea*
Marco Senzolo, *Padova*
Soraya Shirazi-Beechey, *Liverpool*
Robert Sutton, *Liverpool*
Simon D Taylor-Robinson, *London*
Paris P Tekkis, *London*
Ulrich Thalheimer, *London*
Nick Paul Thompson, *Newcastle*
David Tosh, *Bath*
Frank Ivor Tovey, *London*
Chris Tselepis, *Birmingham*
Diego Vergani, *London*
Geoffrey Warhurst, *Salford*
Peter James Whorwell, *Manchester*
Roger Williams, *London*
Karen Leslie Wright, *Bath*
Min Zhao, *Foresterhill*

United States

Gary A Abrams, *Birmingham*
Golo Ahlenstiel, *Bethesda*
BS Anand, *Houston*
Frank A Anania, *Atlanta*
M Ananthanarayanan, *New York*
Gavin Edward Arteel, *Louisville*
Jasmohan Singh Bajaj, *Milwaukee*
Jamie S Barkin, *Miami Beach*
Kim Elaine Barrett, *San Diego*
Marc Basson, *Detroit*
Wallace F Berman, *Durham*
Timothy R Billiar, *Pittsburgh*
Edmund J Bini, *New York*
Jennifer D Black, *Buffalo*
Herbert L Bonkovsky, *Farmington*
Andrea D Branch, *New York*
Robert S Bresalier, *Houston*
Alan L Buchman, *Chicago*
Alan Cahill, *Philadelphia*
John M Carethers, *San Diego*
David L Carr-Locke, *Boston*
Ravi S Chari, *Nashville*
Jiande Chen, *Galveston*
Xian-Ming Chen, *Omaha*
Ramsey Chi-man Cheung, *Palo Alto*
William D Chey, *Ann Arbor*
John Y Chiang, *Rootstown*
Parimal Chowdhury, *Arkansas*
Raymond T Chung, *Boston*
James M Church, *Cleveland*
Mark G Clemens, *Charlotte*
Vincent Coghlan, *Beaverton*
David Cronin II, *New Haven*
John Cuppoletti, *Cincinnati*
Mark James Czaja, *New York*
Peter V Danenberg, *Los Angeles*
Kiron Moy Das, *New Brunswick*
Sharon DeMorrow, *Temple*
Deborah L Diamond, *Seattle*
Peter Draganov, *Florida*
Bijan Eghtesad, *Cleveland*
Hala El-Zimaity, *Houston*
Michelle Embree-Ku, *Providence*
Ronnie Fass, *Tucson*
Mark A Feitelson, *Philadelphia*
Ariel E Feldstein, *Cleveland*
Alessandro Fichera, *Chicago*
Chris E Forsmark, *Gainesville*
Chandrashekhar R Gandhi, *Pittsburgh*
Susan L Gearhart, *Baltimore*
Xupeng Ge, *Boston*
John P Geibel, *New Haven*
Xin Geng, *New Brunswick*
Jean-Francois Geschwind, *Baltimore*
Ignacio Gil-Bazo, *New York*
Shannon S Glaser, *Temple*
Ajay Goel, *Dallas*
Julia Butler Greer, *Pittsburgh*
James Henry Grendell, *New York*
David R Gretch, *Seattle*
Stefano Guandalini, *Chicago*
Anna S Gukovskaya, *Los Angeles*
Sanjeev Gupta, *Bronx*
David J Hackam, *Pittsburgh*
Stephen B Hanauer, *Chicago*
Gavin Harewood, *Rochester*
Margaret McLean Heitkemper, *Seattle*
Alan W Hemming, *Gainesville*
Samuel B Ho, *San Diego*
Colin William Howden, *Chicago*
Hongjin Huang, *Alameda*
Jamal A Ibdah, *Columbia*
Atif Iqbal, *Omaha*
Hajime Isomoto, *Rochester*
Hartmut Jaeschke, *Tucson*
Dennis M Jensen, *Los Angeles*
Leonard R Johnson, *Memphis*
Michael P Jones, *Chicago*
Peter James Kahrilas, *Chicago*
AN Kalloo, *Baltimore*
Neil Kaplowitz, *Los Angeles*
Rashmi Kaul, *Tulsa*
Jonathan D Kaunitz, *Los Angeles*
Ali Keshavarzian, *Chicago*
Miran Kim, *Providence*
Joseph B Kirsner, *Chicago*
Leonidas G Koniaris, *Miami*
Burton I Korelitz, *New York*
Robert J Korst, *New York*
Richard A Kozarek, *Seattle*
Michael Kremer, *Chapel Hill*
Shiu-Ming Kuo, *Buffalo*
Daryl Tan Yeung Lau, *Galvesto*
Joel E Lavine, *San Diego*
Dirk J van Leeuwen, *Lebanon*
Glen A Lehman, *Indianapolis*
Alex B Lentsch, *Cincinnati*
Andreas Leodolter, *La Jolla*
Gene LeSage, *Houston*
Ming Li, *New Orleans*
Zhiping Li, *Baltimore*
LM Lichtenberger, *Houston*
GR Lichtenstein, *Philadelphia*
Otto Schiueh-Tzang Lin, *Seattle*
Martin Lipkin, *New York*
Edward V Loftus, *Rocheste*
Robin G Lorenz, *Birmingham*
Michael Ronan Lucey, *Madison*
JD Luketich, *Pittsburgh*
Henry Thomson Lynch, *Omaha*
Patrick M Lynch, *Houston*
Peter J Mannon, *Bethesda*
Charles Milton Mansbach, *Memphis*
John Frank Di Mari, *Texas*
John M Mariadason, *Bronx*
WM Mars, *Pittsburgh*
Laura E Matarese, *Pittsburgh*
Lynne V McFarland, *Washington*
Kevin McGrath, *Pittsburgh*
Harihara Mehendale, *Monroe*
Stephan Menne, *New York*
Howard Mertz, *Nashville*
George W Meyer, *Sacramento*
G Michalopoulos, *Pittsburgh*
James Michael Millis, *Chicago*
Albert D Min, *New York*
Pramod Kumar Mistry, *New Haven*
Smruti Ranjan Mohanty, *Chicago*
Satdarshan Singh Monga, *Pittsburgh*
Timothy H Moran, *Baltimore*
Steven F Moss, *Providence*
Masaki Nagaya, *Boston*
Laura Eleanor Nagy, *Cleveland*
Hiroshi Nakagawa, *Philadelphia*
Douglas B Nelson, *Minneaplis*
Brant K Oelschlager, *Washington*
Curtis T Okamoto, *Los Angeles*
Stephen JD O'Keefe, *Pittsburgh*
Dimitry Oleynikov, *Omaha*
Natalia A Osna, *Omaha*
Stephen J Pandol, *Los Angeles*
Pankaj Jay Pasricha, *Gaveston*
Zhiheng Pei, *New York*
Michael A Pezzone, *Pittsburgh*
CS Pitchumoni, *New Brunswiuc*
Jay Pravda, *Gainesville*
M Raimondo, *Jacksonville*
GS Raju, *Galveston*
Murray B Resnick, *Providence*
Adrian Reuben, *Charleston*
Douglas K Rex, *Indianapolis*
Victor E Reyes, *Galveston*
Richard A Rippe, *Chapel Hill*
Marcos Rojkind, *Washington*
Philip Rosenthal, *San Francisco*
Hemant Kumar Roy, *Evanston*
Shawn David Safford, *Norfolk*
Bruce E Sands, *Boston*
NJ Shaheen, *Chapel Hill*
Harvey L Sharp, *Minneapolis*
Stuart Sherman, *Indianapolis*
Shivendra Shukla, *Columbia*
Alphonse E Sirica, *Virginia*
Shanthi V Sitaraman, *Atlanta*
Shanthi Srinivasan, *Atlanta*
Michael Steer, *Boston*
Gary D Stoner, *Columbus*
Liping Su, *Chicago*
Christina Surawicz, *Seattle*
Gyongyi Szabo, *Worcester*
Yvette Taché, *Los Angeles*
Seng-Lai Tan, *Seattle*
Andrzej Tarnawski, *Long Beach*
Andrzej S Tarnawski, *Orange*
K-M Tchou-Wong, *New York*
Neil D Theise, *New York*
PJ Thuluvath, *Baltimore*
Swan Nio Thung, *New York*
Natalie J Torok, *Sacramento*
RA Travagli, *Baton Rouge*
G Triadafilopoulos, *Stanford*
James F Trotter, *Denver*
Chung-Jyi Tsai, *Lexington*
Andrew Ukleja, *Florida*
Hugo E Vargas, *Scottsdale*
Scott A Waldman, *Philadelphia*
Jian-Ying Wang, *Baltimore*
Steven David Wexner, *Weston*
Keith Tucker Wilson, *Baltimore*
Jacqueline L Wolf, *Boston*
Jackie Wood, *Ohio*
George Y Wu, *Farmington*
Jian Wu, *Sacramento*
Samuel Wyllie, *Houston*
Wen Xie, *Pittsburgh*
Yoshio Yamaoka, *Houston*
Vincent W Yang, *Atlanta*
Francis Y Yao, *San Francisco*
Min You, *Tampa*
Zobair M Younossi, *Virginia*
Liqing Yu, *Winston-Salem*
David Yule, *Rochester*
Ruben Zamora, *Pittsburgh*
Michael E Zenilman, *New York*
Zhi Zhong, *Chapel Hill*

Uruguay

Henry Cohen, *Montevideo*

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5547-5551
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

EDITORIAL

Emerging role of IL-23/IL-17 axis in *H pylori*-associated pathology

Roberta Caruso, Francesco Pallone, Giovanni Monteleone

Roberta Caruso, Francesco Pallone, Giovanni Monteleone, Department of Internal Medicine & Centre of Excellence for Genomic Risk Assessment in Multifactorial and Complex Diseases, University "Tor Vergata" of Rome, Rome, Italy
Correspondence to: Giovanni Monteleone, Cattedra di Gastroenterologia, Dipartimento di Medicina Interna, Università Tor Vergata, Via Montpellier, 1, Rome 00133, Italy. gi.monteleone@med.uniroma2.it
Telephone: +39-6-72596158 Fax: +39-6-72596391
Received: July 3, 2007 Revised: August 10, 2007

Abstract

Colonization of stomach by *H pylori* is followed by a marked infiltration of the mucosa with polymorphonuclear leukocytes, macrophages, and lymphocytes that very often remains asymptomatic, but in some circumstances can lead to the development of gastroduodenal ulceration, gastric carcinoma, and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma. The molecular mechanisms by which *H pylori* triggers and maintains the local immune response are complex, but there is evidence that cytokines produced by both immune and non-immune cells contribute to amplify the ongoing inflammation. *H pylori* infection is associated with a marked mucosal induction of T helper (Th) type 1 and Th17-type cytokines that is governed by specific antigen-presenting cell-derived molecules, such as interleukin (IL)-12 and IL-23. In this paper, we will review the available data on the expression and role of IL-23 and IL-17 in *H pylori*-related gastritis.

Key words: IL-23; IL-17; *H pylori*

Caruso R, Pallone F, Monteleone G. Emerging role of IL-23/IL-17 axis in *H pylori*-associated pathology. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5547-5551

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5547.asp

INTRODUCTION

H pylori is a spiral-shaped Gram-negative flagellate bacterium that colonizes the human gastric mucosa and chronically infects more than half of the human population. Infection is inversely correlated with socioeconomic conditions. Most new *H pylori* infections occur in children, but the lack of specific *H pylori*-related clinical signs makes difficult to define the mode of transmission[1]. *H pylori* survives within the gastric mucus layer despite the acidic microenvironment, that limits the growth of most bacteria. This primarily relies upon the ability of *H pylori* to secrete a large amount of urease that breaks down urea into carbon dioxide and ammonia, the latter buffering its environment. Most *H pylori* organisms remain in the mucus layer, even though a small proportion adheres to the mucosal epithelial cells and rarely invades the mucosa[2]. Moreover, *H pylori* can inject into the epithelial cells bacterial products that modify epithelial cell functions[3].

IL-17 IS OVER-PRODUCED IN *H pylori*-COLONIZED GASTRIC MUCOSA

H pylori infection causes a marked infiltration of the gastric mucosa with neutrophils, macrophages, and lymphocytes. Most *H pylori*-infected patients are asymptomatic, but *H pylori*-driven gastritis can lead to the development of gastroduodenal ulcers, gastric carcinoma, and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma[4]. The level of inflammation increases the risk of disease, but it does not seem to influence which disease develops. In contrast, this is thought to be largely influenced by the pattern of gastric inflammation. In particular, antral gastritis is associated with increased stimulated acid production and predisposes to duodenal ulceration, while corpus-predominant or pangastritis is associated with reduced acid production and predisposes to gastric ulcer and gastric adenocarcinoma[5]. There is also evidence that the degree of gastric infiltration by neutrophils correlates with the development of gastroduodenal ulcerations, and this is in part dependent on the release of damaging inflammatory mediators such as reactive oxygen species[6,7]. Because neutrophils are short-lived, they must be constantly recruited into the infected mucosa from circulation. Antigens released by *H pylori* can stimulate endothelial cells, macrophages and epithelial cells to make huge amounts of chemokines, such as interleukin (IL)-8 and growth-regulated oncogene-alpha, that produce a chemotactic gradient for the migration of neutrophils into the gastric mucosa[8-11]. It is also known that infections with specific *H pylori* strains that possess the cag pathogenicity island (*cag*+) induce significantly higher levels of chemokines than do cag-strains[12]. Both macrophages and epithelial cells also synthesize neutrophil-recruiting chemokines in response to lamina propria mononuclear cell

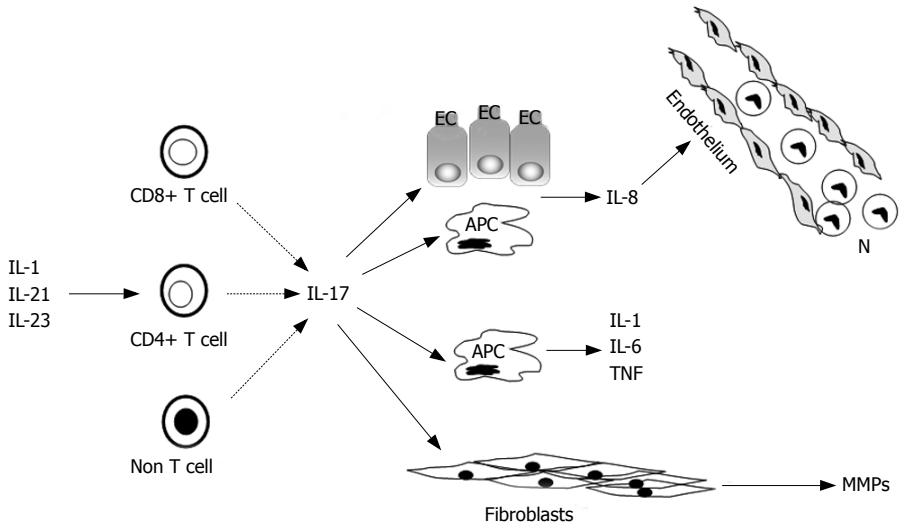


Figure 1 The figure illustrates some of the putative functions of IL-17 in the human gastric mucosa. During *H pylori* infection, IL-17 is produced by both lamina propria (LP) T (CD4+ and CD8+) and non-T cells, through a process that could be positively regulated by IL-1, IL-21, and IL-23. IL-17 stimulates both epithelial cells (EC) and LP antigen presenting cells (APC) to make IL-8, thereby enhancing the recruitment of blood neutrophils (N) into the mucosa. Additionally, IL-17 increases the production of inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1, IL-6, and TNF by LP APC, as well as it stimulates fibroblasts to secrete matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), a family of proteases that can cause mucosal degradation.

(LPMC)-derived molecules. In this context, we and others have recently shown that IL-17, a key regulator of neutrophil chemotaxis, is produced in excess in *H pylori*-infected stomach[13-15]. By real-time PCR and Western blotting it was shown that IL-17 up-regulation occurs at both RNA and protein levels in *H pylori*-infected biopsies in comparison to uninfected biopsies either with or without gastritis[13,14]. Notably, among *H pylori*-positive patients, the gastric mucosa at the site of ulcers contains more IL-17 than the non-ulcerated mucosa of the antrum[15]. Several observations suggest that IL-17 plays a decisive role in the neutrophil recruitment to the *H pylori*-infected gastric mucosa. First, IL-17 levels correlate with the number of neutrophils infiltrating the Hp-infected mucosa[15]. Second, both gastric LPMC and epithelial cells express IL-17 receptors and are functionally capable of responding to IL-17 by secreting IL-8[14-16]. Consistently, conditioned media of gastric epithelial cells stimulated with IL-17 enhance the migration of peripheral blood neutrophils, and this effect is inhibitable by a blocking anti-IL-8, but not anti-IL-17 antibody (Figure 1)[14]. Functional analysis of intracellular pathways involved in the induction of IL-8 synthesis by IL-17 revealed that IL-17 activates ERK1/2 MAP kinases in gastric epithelial cells, and that pharmacologic blockade of this pathway significantly inhibits IL-8 secretion[16]. These findings are in line with the demonstration that activated ERK1/2 and IL-8 are more pronounced in gastric epithelial cells isolated from *H pylori*-infected biopsies in comparison to uninfected controls, and that neutralization of endogenous IL-17 in *ex vivo* cultures of *H pylori*-infected gastric biopsies down-regulates the expression of activated ERK1/2 and IL-8[16]. Finally, IL-17 expression positively correlates with IL-8 content in *H pylori*-colonized biopsies[15].

Besides its effects on IL-8 synthesis, IL-17 exerts additional immune-regulatory functions which could influence the magnitude and/or severity of *H pylori*-related gastritis. For example, IL-17 stimulates the production of IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-α by both immune and non-immune cells[17], and induces fibroblasts to make matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs)[18]. MMPs are a family of proteases that can cleave multiple components of the extracellular matrix, thereby contributing to the mucosal damage[19] (Figure 1).

IL-23 CONTROLS IL-17 PRODUCTION IN THE HUMAN GASTRIC MUCOSA

IL-17 was originally named cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated-8 (CTLA-8), subsequently IL-17, and more recently IL-17A, since it is one of six related members belonging to the IL-17 family (IL-17A-F)[20]. IL-17 was initially described at the message level as a product of human blood activated CD4+ memory T cells. Subsequent studies have shown that IL-17 can be also made by activated CD8+ T cells, TCR$\gamma\delta$+ T cells, and neutrophils[20]. More recently, it was shown that IL-17 is produced by a specific subset of CD4+ T cells, termed T helper (Th) 17-cells, that are distinct from, and antagonized by the classical Th1 or Th2 cells[21]. Th17-cells produce also, but to a lesser extent, TNF-α, IL-6, IL-17F, IL-22, and granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor[22,23]. Flow-cytometry analysis of IL-17 production in gastric LPMC isolated from biopsies of *H pylori*-infected patients showed that CD4+ T cells are a major source of IL-17, even though CD8+ T cells and CD3-negative cells were also positive for IL-17 (Figure 1)[13]. The molecular pathways governing the development of Th17-cells in humans have not been yet elucidated, but studies in murine systems indicate that Th-17 cell differentiation is driven by IL-6 and TGF-β1[24,25]. There is also evidence that expansion and survival of Th17-cells require additional factors, such as IL-23[25]. IL-23 is a heterodimeric protein that is composed by the p40 subunit of IL-12 and a specific subunit, termed IL-23/p19. The functional IL-23 heterodimer is produced by activated dendritic cells (DC), monocytes and macrophages[26]. We have recently shown that IL-23 protein is produced in excess in *H pylori*-colonized mucosa. RNA transcripts for both p40 and p19 subunits were also up-regulated in biopsies from *H pylori*-infected patients, indicating that IL-23 is regulated at the transcriptional level in this condition[13]. These results confirm and expand on data of previous studies showing that *H pylori* enhances IL-23 secretion by monocyte-derived DC[27], and that *H pylori* neutrophil-activating protein (*H pylori*-NAP), a member of a broad super-family of ferritin-like proteins, induces IL-23 production by neutrophils and monocytes[28,29]. Functional studies also revealed that

IL-23 enhances IL-17 synthesis by normal gastric LPMC, and that blockade of endogenous IL-23 activity in cultures of LPMC isolated from *H pylori*-infected biopsies down-regulates IL-17 production[13]. The exact molecular mechanism by which IL-23 regulates IL-17 in *H pylori*-infected mucosa remains to be ascertained. Notably, neutralization of endogenous IL-23 by a blocking anti-IL-23/p19 antibody in cultures of LPMC isolated from *H pylori*-infected biopsies attenuates the expression of active Stat3. Moreover, in normal gastric LPMC, exogenous IL-23 enhances the activation of Stat3, and pharmacologic inhibition of Stat3 suppresses IL-17 production induced by IL-23[13]. Taken together, these results suggest that Stat3 plays a key role in the IL-23-driven IL-17 production during *H pylori* infection. This well fits with the demonstration that Stat3 is essential for the induction and expansion of IL-17-producing cells in response to cytokine stimulation both in vitro and *in vivo*[30]. Such an effect could rely on the ability of Stat3 to bind the promoter of IL-17 gene and enhance its transcriptional activity[31], and/or favor the induction of RORγt, a master regulator of Th17-cell differentiation[32], and the expression of IL-23R.

IL-17 synthesis may be regulated by additional cytokines other than IL-23. IL-1R1-deficient mice fail to mount a robust Th17 response, and IL-1R1-deficient cells do not produce IL-17 in response to IL-23[33]. Since *H pylori* infection enhances the production of IL-1 at the gastric level[34], it is tempting to speculate that this cytokine may act in concert with IL-23 in enhancing IL-17. IL-17 synthesis is also increased by IL-15 in cultures of human and murine CD4+ T cells[35]. However, the fact that IL-15 expression is down-regulated in *H pylori*-infected biopsies argues against a role for IL-15 in the control of IL-17 production during *H pylori*-related gastritis[36]. Th17 cell differentiation is also enhanced by IL-21[37,38], a T-cell derived cytokine that is produced in excess in *H pylori*-colonized stomach[39].

THE ROLE OF IL-23 IN AMPLIFYING *H pylori*-DRIVEN TH1-IMMUNE RESPONSE

During *H pylori* infection, there is a pronounced specific acquired immune response, characterized by generation of antibodies, and differentiation and activation of effector T cells. Although this later includes both a Th1 and a Th2 component, mucosal cytokine profiles imply Th1 predominance[40], and the number of cells producing interferon (IFN)-γ, the key Th1 cytokine, in the *H pylori*-infected human gastric mucosa correlates with the severity of gastritis[41]. Animal models also suggest that the extent of Th1 differentiation is important in pathogenesis. Mice with a predominant Th1 response develop more gastric inflammation during *H pylori* colonization than those with a Th2 response[42-43]. Gastric inflammation and atrophic changes are abrogated in the absence of IFN-γ[44], while IFN-γ infusion into mice, even in the absence of *H pylori* infection, induces pre-cancerous gastric atrophy, metaplasia and dysplasia[45]. IL-12-deficient mice have also reduced gastric inflammatory infiltration and are unable to clear *H pylori* infection[46].

Several virulence factors are reported to promote Th1 responses, including the plasticity region locus jhp0947-jhp0949 which is associated with duodenal ulcer disease[47] and the *H pylori*-NAP[29]. The Th1/Th2 balance is also influenced by phase-variable expression of Lewis blood-group antigens and genomic DNA recombination[48,49].

IL-12 is supposed to be one of the major Th1-inducing factors in *H pylori*-colonized gastric mucosa[50], even though IL-23 may contribute to expand the ongoing Th1 cell response[26]. Indeed, blockade of endogenous IL-23 by anti-IL23/p19 in cultures of LPMC isolated from *H pylori*-colonized biopsies reduces IFN-γ secretion, and stimulation of normal gastric LPMC with IL-23 enhances IFN-γ production. These data are in accordance with the demonstration that IL-23 activates Stat4 and enhances IFN-γ production in cultures of human and murine memory T cells[26], and that in two models of *H. hepaticus*-triggered T cell-dependent colitis, IL-23 enhances both IFN-γ and IL-17 responses that together synergize to trigger severe intestinal inflammation[51,52].

IL-23 and gastric cancer

As pointed out above, *H pylori* is a major factor in the induction of gastritis and its progression to pre-neoplastic lesions and non-cardia gastric cancer. Despite the high prevalence of *H pylori* infection, the risk of gastric cancer in *H pylori*-infected patients is, however, estimated to be approximately 1%-3%. This indicates that infection per se is not sufficient to induce the progression to gastric neoplasia and that additional bacterial and host factors are required[2]. A detailed description of such factors is beyond the scope of this review. In this context it is, however, noteworthy that accumulating evidence would seem to suggest that IL-12 and IL-23 are important mediators in the process that links *H pylori* infection to gastric cancer. Indeed, polymorphisms of IL-12p40 and p35 genes enhance the risk of non-cardia gastric cancers in *H pylori*-infected patients[53]. Moreover, high levels of IL-23 have been documented in human gastric cancers[53]. Nonetheless, no functional study has so far mechanistically linked the activity of IL-12 and IL-23 to gastric cancer. Additionally, studies in murine models of epithelial cancers have shown that IL-23, but not IL-12, is essential for sustaining the tumor-promoting inflammatory process and counteracting the ability of cytotoxic CD8+ T cells to infiltrate tumors[54].

CONCLUSIONS

Although bacterial virulence factors are important in conditioning the outcome of the *H pylori*-driven infection, it is the host attempt to clear the bacterium that causes an exaggerated and inappropriately counter-regulated immune response that may eventually cause tissue damage. Emerging experimental evidence suggests that IL-23/IL-17 pathway is an important driving force the ongoing gastric inflammation in *H pylori*-infected patients. However, further studies will be required to establish the exact contribution of each of these cytokines in the *H pylori*-associated gastric pathology. The availability of strains of mice deficient either for IL-23 subunits or IL-17 should provide valuable models to specifically address these issues.

REFERENCES

1 **Go MF**. Review article: natural history and epidemiology of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16** Suppl 1: 3-15
2 **Fox JG**, Wang TC. Inflammation, atrophy, and gastric cancer. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 60-69
3 **Covacci A**, Censini S, Bugnoli M, Petracca R, Burroni D, Macchia G, Massone A, Papini E, Xiang Z, Figura N. Molecular characterization of the 128-kDa immunodominant antigen of Helicobacter pylori associated with cytotoxicity and duodenal ulcer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1993; **90**: 5791-5795
4 **Ernst PB**, Gold BD. The disease spectrum of Helicobacter pylori: the immunopathogenesis of gastroduodenal ulcer and gastric cancer. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 2000; **54**: 615-640
5 **Robinson K**, Argent RH, Atherton JC. The inflammatory and immune response to Helicobacter pylori infection. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2007; **21**: 237-259
6 **Davies GR**, Simmonds NJ, Stevens TR, Sheaff MT, Banatvala N, Laurenson IF, Blake DR, Rampton DS. Helicobacter pylori stimulates antral mucosal reactive oxygen metabolite production in vivo. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 179-185
7 **Zhang QB**, Nakashabendi IM, Mokhashi MS, Dawodu JB, Gemmell CG, Russell RI. Association of cytotoxin production and neutrophil activation by strains of Helicobacter pylori isolated from patients with peptic ulceration and chronic gastritis. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 841-845
8 **Innocenti M**, Thoreson AC, Ferrero RL, Strömberg E, Bölin I, Eriksson L, Svennerholm AM, Quiding-Järbrink M. Helicobacter pylori-induced activation of human endothelial cells. *Infect Immun* 2002; **70**: 4581-4590
9 **Sieveking D**, Mitchell HM, Day AS. Gastric epithelial cell CXC chemokine secretion following Helicobacter pylori infection in vitro. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **19**: 982-987
10 **Sharma SA**, Tummuru MK, Miller GG, Blaser MJ. Interleukin-8 response of gastric epithelial cell lines to Helicobacter pylori stimulation in vitro. *Infect Immun* 1995; **63**: 1681-1687
11 **de Jonge R**, Kusters JG, Timmer MS, Gimmel V, Appelmelk BJ, Bereswill S, van Vliet AH, Meuwissen SG, Kist M, Vandenbroucke-Grauls CM, Kuipers EJ. The role of Helicobacter pylori virulence factors in interleukin production by monocytic cells. *FEMS Microbiol Lett* 2001; **196**: 235-238
12 **Nilsson C**, Sillén A, Eriksson L, Strand ML, Enroth H, Normark S, Falk P, Engstrand L. Correlation between cag pathogenicity island composition and Helicobacter pylori-associated gastroduodenal disease. *Infect Immun* 2003; **71**: 6573-6581
13 **Caruso R**, Fina D, Paoluzi AO, Del Vecchio Blanco G, Stolfi C, Fantini MC, Rizzo A, Andrei F, Peluso I, Caprioli F, Pallone F, Monteleone G. IL-23 enhances IL-17 production in H pylori-infected gastric mucosa. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **4** Suppl 2: A-219
14 **Luzza F**, Parrello T, Monteleone G, Sebkova L, Romano M, Zarrilli R, Imeneo M, Pallone F. Up-regulation of IL-17 is associated with bioactive IL-8 expression in Helicobacter pylori-infected human gastric mucosa. *J Immunol* 2000; **165**: 5332-5337
15 **Mizuno T**, Ando T, Nobata K, Tsuzuki T, Maeda O, Watanabe O, Minami M, Ina K, Kusugami K, Peek RM, Goto H. Interleukin-17 levels in Helicobacter pylori-infected gastric mucosa and pathologic sequelae of colonization. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 6305-6311
16 **Sebkova L**, Pellicanò A, Monteleone G, Grazioli B, Guarnieri G, Imeneo M, Pallone F, Luzza F. Extracellular signal-regulated protein kinase mediates interleukin 17 (IL-17)-induced IL-8 secretion in Helicobacter pylori-infected human gastric epithelial cells. *Infect Immun* 2004; **72**: 5019-5026
17 **Jovanovic DV**, Di Battista JA, Martel-Pelletier J, Jolicoeur FC, He Y, Zhang M, Mineau F, Pelletier JP. IL-17 stimulates the production and expression of proinflammatory cytokines, IL-beta and TNF-alpha, by human macrophages. *J Immunol* 1998; **160**: 3513-3521
18 **Bamba S**, Andoh A, Yasui H, Araki Y, Bamba T, Fujiyama Y. Matrix metalloproteinase-3 secretion from human colonic subepithelial myofibroblasts: role of interleukin-17. *J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38**: 548-554
19 **Nagase H**, Woessner JF. Matrix metalloproteinases. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274**: 21491-21494
20 **Kolls JK**, Lindén A. Interleukin-17 family members and inflammation. *Immunity* 2004; **21**: 467-476
21 **Steinman L**. A brief history of T(H)17, the first major revision in the T(H)1/T(H)2 hypothesis of T cell-mediated tissue damage. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 139-145
22 **Park H**, Li Z, Yang XO, Chang SH, Nurieva R, Wang YH, Wang Y, Hood L, Zhu Z, Tian Q, Dong C. A distinct lineage of CD4 T cells regulates tissue inflammation by producing interleukin 17. *Nat Immunol* 2005; **6**: 1133-1141
23 **Weaver CT**, Hatton RD, Mangan PR, Harrington LE. IL-17 family cytokines and the expanding diversity of effector T cell lineages. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2007; **25**: 821-852
24 **Bettelli E**, Carrier Y, Gao W, Korn T, Strom TB, Oukka M, Weiner HL, Kuchroo VK. Reciprocal developmental pathways for the generation of pathogenic effector TH17 and regulatory T cells. *Nature* 2006; **441**: 235-238
25 **Mangan PR**, Harrington LE, O'Quinn DB, Helms WS, Bullard DC, Elson CO, Hatton RD, Wahl SM, Schoeb TR, Weaver CT. Transforming growth factor-beta induces development of the T(H)17 lineage. *Nature* 2006; **441**: 231-234
26 **Oppmann B**, Lesley R, Blom B, Timans JC, Xu Y, Hunte B, Vega F, Yu N, Wang J, Singh K, Zonin F, Vaisberg E, Churakova T, Liu M, Gorman D, Wagner J, Zurawski S, Liu Y, Abrams JS, Moore KW, Rennick D, de Waal-Malefyt R, Hannum C, Bazan JF, Kastelein RA. Novel p19 protein engages IL-12p40 to form a cytokine, IL-23, with biological activities similar as well as distinct from IL-12. *Immunity* 2000; **13**: 715-725
27 **Mitchell P**, Germain C, Fiori PL, Khamri W, Foster GR, Ghosh S, Lechler RI, Bamford KB, Lombardi G. Chronic exposure to Helicobacter pylori impairs dendritic cell function and inhibits Th1 development. *Infect Immun* 2007; **75**: 810-819
28 **D'Elios MM**, Amedei A, Cappon A, Del Prete G, de Bernard M. The neutrophil-activating protein of Helicobacter pylori (HP-NAP) as an immune modulating agent. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2007; **50**: 157-164
29 **Amedei A**, Cappon A, Codolo G, Cabrelle A, Polenghi A, Benagiano M, Tasca E, Azzurri A, D'Elios MM, Del Prete G, de Bernard M. The neutrophil-activating protein of Helicobacter pylori promotes Th1 immune responses. *J Clin Invest* 2006; **116**: 1092-1101
30 **Cho ML**, Kang JW, Moon YM, Nam HJ, Jhun JY, Heo SB, Jin HT, Min SY, Ju JH, Park KS, Cho YG, Yoon CH, Park SH, Sung YC, Kim HY. STAT3 and NF-kappaB signal pathway is required for IL-23-mediated IL-17 production in spontaneous arthritis animal model IL-1 receptor antagonist-deficient mice. *J Immunol* 2006; **176**: 5652-5661
31 **Chen Z**, Laurence A, Kanno Y, Pacher-Zavisin M, Zhu BM, Tato C, Yoshimura A, Hennighausen L, O'Shea JJ. Selective regulatory function of Socs3 in the formation of IL-17-secreting T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 8137-8142
32 **Ivanov II**, McKenzie BS, Zhou L, Tadokoro CE, Lepelley A, Lafaille JJ, Cua DJ, Littman DR. The orphan nuclear receptor RORgammat directs the differentiation program of proinflammatory IL-17+ T helper cells. *Cell* 2006; **126**: 1121-1133
33 **Sutton C**, Brereton C, Keogh B, Mills KH, Lavelle EC. A crucial role for interleukin (IL)-1 in the induction of IL-17-producing T cells that mediate autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Exp Med* 2006; **203**: 1685-1691
34 **Noach LA**, Bosma NB, Jansen J, Hoek FJ, van Deventer SJ, Tytgat GN. Mucosal tumor necrosis factor-alpha, interleukin-1 beta, and interleukin-8 production in patients with Helicobacter pylori infection. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29**: 425-429
35 **Ferretti S**, Bonneau O, Dubois GR, Jones CE, Trifilieff A. IL-17, produced by lymphocytes and neutrophils, is necessary for lipopolysaccharide-induced airway neutrophilia: IL-15 as a possible trigger. *J Immunol* 2003; **170**: 2106-2112
36 **Luzza F**, Parrello T, Monteleone G, Sebkova L, Imeneo M, La Vecchia A, Maletta M, Docimo C, Pallone F. Changes in the mucosal expression of interleukin 15 in Helicobacter pylori-associated gastritis. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 1999; **24**: 233-238

37 **Korn T**, Bettelli E, Gao W, Awasthi A, Jäger A, Strom TB, Oukka M, Kuchroo VK. IL-21 initiates an alternative pathway to induce proinflammatory T(H)17 cells. *Nature* 2007; **448**: 484-487

38 **Nurieva R**, Yang XO, Martinez G, Zhang Y, Panopoulos AD, Ma L, Schluns K, Tian Q, Watowich SS, Jetten AM, Dong C. Essential autocrine regulation by IL-21 in the generation of inflammatory T cells. *Nature* 2007; **448**: 480-483

39 **Caruso R**, Fina D, Peluso I, Fantini MC, Tosti C, Del Vecchio Blanco G, Paoluzi OA, Caprioli F, Andrei F, Stolfi C, Romano M, Ricci V, MacDonald TT, Pallone F, Monteleone G. IL-21 is highly produced in Helicobacter pylori-infected gastric mucosa and promotes gelatinases synthesis. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 5957-5965

40 **D'Elios MM**, Manghetti M, De Carli M, Costa F, Baldari CT, Burroni D, Telford JL, Romagnani S, Del Prete G. T helper 1 effector cells specific for Helicobacter pylori in the gastric antrum of patients with peptic ulcer disease. *J Immunol* 1997; **158**: 962-967

41 **Lehmann FS**, Terracciano L, Carena I, Baeriswyl C, Drewe J, Tornillo L, De Libero G, Beglinger C. In situ correlation of cytokine secretion and apoptosis in Helicobacter pylori-associated gastritis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283**: G481-G488

42 **Mohammadi M**, Nedrud J, Redline R, Lycke N, Czinn SJ. Murine CD4 T-cell response to Helicobacter infection: TH1 cells enhance gastritis and TH2 cells reduce bacterial load. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 1848-1857

43 **Fox JG**, Beck P, Dangler CA, Whary MT, Wang TC, Shi HN, Nagler-Anderson C. Concurrent enteric helminth infection modulates inflammation and gastric immune responses and reduces helicobacter-induced gastric atrophy. *Nat Med* 2000; **6**: 536-542

44 **Smythies LE**, Waites KB, Lindsey JR, Harris PR, Ghiara P, Smith PD. Helicobacter pylori-induced mucosal inflammation is Th1 mediated and exacerbated in IL-4, but not IFN-gamma, gene-deficient mice. *J Immunol* 2000; **165**: 1022-1029

45 **Cui G**, Houghton J, Finkel N, Carlson J, Wang TC. IFN-gamma infusion induces gastric atrophy, metaplasia and dysplasia in the absence of Helicobacter infection-a role for immune response in Helicobacter disease. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124** Suppl 1: A19

46 **Akhiani AA**, Pappo J, Kabok Z, Schön K, Gao W, Franzén LE, Lycke N. Protection against Helicobacter pylori infection following immunization is IL-12-dependent and mediated by Th1 cells. *J Immunol* 2002; **169**: 6977-6984

47 **de Jonge R**, Kuipers EJ, Langeveld SC, Loffeld RJ, Stoof J, van Vliet AH, Kusters JG. The Helicobacter pylori plasticity region locus jhp0947-jhp0949 is associated with duodenal ulcer disease and interleukin-12 production in monocyte cells. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2004; **41**: 161-167

48 **Bergman MP**, Engering A, Smits HH, van Vliet SJ, van Bodegraven AA, Wirth HP, Kapsenberg ML, Vandenbroucke-Grauls CM, van Kooyk Y, Appelmelk BJ. Helicobacter pylori modulates the T helper cell 1/T helper cell 2 balance through phase-variable interaction between lipopolysaccharide and DC-SIGN. *J Exp Med* 2004; **200**: 979-990

49 **Robinson K**, Loughlin MF, Potter R, Jenks PJ. Host adaptation and immune modulation are mediated by homologous recombination in Helicobacter pylori. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **191**: 579-587

50 **Pellicanò A**, Sebkova L, Monteleone G, Guarnieri G, Imeneo M, Pallone F, Luzza F. Interleukin-12 drives the Th1 signaling pathway in Helicobacter pylori-infected human gastric mucosa. *Infect Immun* 2007; **75**: 1738-1744

51 **Hue S**, Ahern P, Buonocore S, Kullberg MC, Cua DJ, McKenzie BS, Powrie F, Maloy KJ. Interleukin-23 drives innate and T cell-mediated intestinal inflammation. *J Exp Med* 2006; **203**: 2473-2483

52 **Kullberg MC**, Jankovic D, Feng CG, Hue S, Gorelick PL, McKenzie BS, Cua DJ, Powrie F, Cheever AW, Maloy KJ, Sher A. IL-23 plays a key role in Helicobacter hepaticus-induced T cell-dependent colitis. *J Exp Med* 2006; **203**: 2485-2494

53 **Navaglia F**, Basso D, Zambon CF, Ponzano E, Caenazzo L, Gallo N, Falda A, Belluco C, Fogar P, Greco E, Di Mario F, Rugge M, Plebani M. Interleukin 12 gene polymorphisms enhance gastric cancer risk in H pylori infected individuals. *J Med Genet* 2005; **42**: 503-510

54 **Langowski JL**, Zhang X, Wu L, Mattson JD, Chen T, Smith K, Basham B, McClanahan T, Kastelein RA, Oft M. IL-23 promotes tumour incidence and growth. *Nature* 2006; **442**: 461-465

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Rippe RA **E- Editor** Li JL

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5552-5559
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

REVIEW

Acute renal dysfunction in liver diseases

Alex P Betrosian, Banwari Agarwal, Emmanuel E Douzinas

Alex P Betrosian, Emmanuel E Douzinas, Third Department of Critical Care, Athens University, Evgenidion Hospital, Papadiamantopoulou 20, Athens 11528, Greece
Banwari Agarwal, Intensive Therapy Unit, Royal Free Hospital, London, United Kingdom
Correspondence to: Alex Betrosian, MD, Third Department of Critical Care, Athens University, Evgenidion Hospital, Papadiamantopoulou 20, Athens 11528, Greece. abetrosian@gmail.com
Telephone: +30-210-7208116
Received: June 24, 2007 Revised: August 19, 2007

Abstract

Renal dysfunction is common in liver diseases, either as part of multiorgan involvement in acute illness or secondary to advanced liver disease. The presence of renal impairment in both groups is a poor prognostic indicator. Renal failure is often multifactorial and can present as pre-renal or intrinsic renal dysfunction. Obstructive or post renal dysfunction only rarely complicates liver disease. Hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) is a unique form of renal failure associated with advanced liver disease or cirrhosis, and is characterized by functional renal impairment without significant changes in renal histology. Irrespective of the type of renal failure, renal hypoperfusion is the central pathogenetic mechanism, due either to reduced perfusion pressure or increased renal vascular resistance. Volume expansion, avoidance of precipitating factors and treatment of underlying liver disease constitute the mainstay of therapy to prevent and reverse renal impairment. Splanchnic vasoconstrictor agents, such as terlipressin, along with volume expansion, and early placement of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) may be effective in improving renal function in HRS. Continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT) and molecular absorbent recirculating system (MARS) in selected patients may be life saving while awaiting liver transplantation.

Key words: Hepatorenal syndrome; Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt; Continuous renal replacement therapy; Molecular absorbent recirculating system; Acute liver failure; Systemic vascular resistance; Renal blood flow

Betrosian AP, Agarwal B, Douzinas EE. Acute renal dysfunction in liver diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5552-5559

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5552.asp

INTRODUCTION

Renal and liver dysfunction often present together, either as part of multiorgan failure in a critically ill patient, or as a result of failure of each organ independently. Three major clinical scenarios can be identified in which liver and renal dysfunction coexist; diseases simultaneously involving the liver and the kidney, or a primary hepatic disorder with secondary renal dysfunction, or vice versa[1]. Concomitant renal and liver dysfunction may share common pathogenetic mechanisms. Renal dysfunction in this setting usually develops gradually, with the exception of certain infections such as leptospirosis, some viral hemorrhagic fevers and toxin-mediated injuries such as acetaminophen poisoning, which cause acute insufficiency of both organs[2]. Renal failure secondary to liver dysfunction is generally functional in nature and occurs in the absence of significant alterations in renal histology (pre-renal). However, intrinsic renal abnormalities can also complicate acute or chronic liver disease (intrinsic renal failure)[3]. Obstructive uropathy that leads to postrenal acute renal failure only rarely develops in chronic liver disease (papillary necrosis in alcoholic liver disease, bleeding in the urinary tract due to severe coagulopathy)[4]. Hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) is a unique form of functional renal failure (pre-renal) that often complicates advanced liver disease, hepatic failure or portal hypertension[5].

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The incidence of renal failure in acute liver failure (ALF) varies from 40% to 85%, depending on the etiology; paracetamol poisoning leads to renal failure in up to 75% of patients[6]. Renal failure following paracetamol overdose may also occur in the absence of ALF, and has a good prognosis[7]. In non-paracetamol cases the incidence of renal failure is usually accompanied by worsening encephalopathy and is associated with a poor outcome[5,6].

Acute renal failure (ARF) in patients with cirrhosis, particularly with advanced liver disease, seems to be common; however, the exact incidence is unknown and is probably underestimated[3]. This may be explained by the fact that patients with cirrhosis tend to have falsely low serum creatinine levels due to decreased hepatic creatinine synthesis and decreased skeletal muscle mass[8]. ARF in patients with cirrhosis frequently accompanies complications such as bacterial peritonitis or other

sepsis, hypovolemia from gastrointestinal bleeding or excessive diuretic therapy, administration of nephrotoxic drugs/contrast agents, or development of HRS[2,3]. The probability of the occurrence of HRS in patients with cirrhosis and ascites at 1 and 5 years is 18% and 39%, respectively, with mortality approaching 100% in type I HRS without specific therapy. The median survival time in these patients without liver transplantation was only 12 d after diagnosis in one study[9]. However, this seems to have improved with terlipressin and albumin therapy[10]. The development of ARF in patients with cirrhosis has significant prognostic importance. In patients with cirrhosis admitted to hospital with acute upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage, development of ARF forms an independent predictive factor for death[11,12].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF RENAL FAILURE IN LIVER DISEASE

The mechanism underlying the development of ARF in advanced liver disease and cirrhosis is complex and includes interactions between changes in the systemic arterial circulation, portal hypertension, activation of vasoconstrictors and suppression of vasodilatory factors acting on the renal circulation[1,3,13]. The pathophysiology of functional renal failure in ALF is similar to that in cirrhosis[6,14], and patients with ALF may develop portal hypertension, but to a lesser degree than in those with cirrhosis[6]. The common pathway of renal dysfunction is the development of intense systemic arterial vasodilation, which follows increased release of endogenous vasodilators, especially nitric oxide, which escapes from the splanchnic to the systemic circulation through portosystemic shunts[1,13-15]. The systemic vasodilation leads to a reduction in systemic vascular resistance (SVR) and consequent high cardiac output and hyperdynamic circulation. However, the increase in cardiac output may be inadequate to compensate for the drop in SVR, especially in ALF, which results in hypotension with mean arterial pressure (MAP) commonly falling to 60-70 mmHg, which is on the pressure-dependent part of the autoregulatory curve of renal blood flow (RBF)[6,16]. In healthy individuals, autoregulation of RBF occurs until the renal perfusion pressure falls below 60-70 mmHg. Altered renal vascular autoregulation, as seen in sepsis, may also be present in the hyperdynamic circulatory failure of ALF, making RBF directly dependent on blood pressure[17]. In some patients with cirrhosis, especially alcoholics, the presence of cardiomyopathy and heart failure may further render them susceptible to renal compromise secondary to hypoperfusion[18].

The normal homeostatic response to vasodilation is activation of several neurohumoral mechanisms, such as the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS), the sympathetic nervous system (SNS), and arginine-vasopressin (AVP) which leads to intense vasoconstriction and salt and water retention, in an attempt to maintain blood pressure and perfusion of vital organs[2,5,14,17]. Other vasoconstrictors, such as eicosanoids, endothelins, thromboxane A2 and leukotrienes may further exacerbate this[6,13,14,19].

RBF is kept within normal limits in the early stage of the liver disease, due to the release of certain local vasodilators such as prostaglandins. However, in situations in which circulatory volume is acutely diminished, as in gastrointestinal hemorrhage, renal hypoperfusion and subsequent pre-renal azotemia may occur. As the liver disease progresses, there is extreme vasoconstriction of the renal vascular bed that predisposes the kidneys to development of HRS[2,20]. The presence of tense ascites may further impair renal perfusion. The continuing vasoconstriction and raised vascular resistance results in contraction of the mesangium, with a reduction in glomerular surface area, which leads to acute tubular necrosis (ATN)[21].

CAUSES OF ACUTE RENAL FAILURE IN LIVER DISEASE

Pre-renal

Patients with advanced liver disease are susceptible to pre-renal azotemia, secondary to the development of relative hypovolemia and reduced effective central blood volume. The initial event is development of portal hypertension, which then leads to splanchnic and systemic vasodilatation mediated by NO and other vasodilators. Vasodilatation seems to be the main mechanism, however, underfilling has also been suggested, which is explained by fluid sequestration in the peritoneal cavity[22-24]. True hypovolemia can further exacerbate renal dysfunction in these patients. It can be induced by gastrointestinal tract hemorrhage from varices, peptic ulcers, gastropathy or other sources, excessive diuresis, vomiting and diarrhea, or can be aggravated by large volume paracentesis without intravascular volume replacement[3,11,13]. Bacterial infections and the use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs can also precipitate pre-renal azotemia in these patients[3,25]. Patients with ALF and cirrhosis are abnormally susceptible to infection. Hemodynamic abnormalities induced by cytokines and vasodilating substances, such as NO in spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, play an important role in the pathogenesis of renal dysfunction. Additionally, development of septic shock further impairs renal function[25,26].

Intrinsic renal

Intrinsic renal disease can either complicate acute liver diseases as a result of exposure to certain drugs, toxins and infections, or be a part of chronic liver disease. The former usually is tubular interstitial in nature and presents as ARF, while the latter predominantly leads to glomerulopathy and is characterized by stable kidney disease. The causes of intrinsic renal involvement in liver diseases are numerous and are beyond the scope of this review. This review will mainly concentrate on acute tubular necrosis (ATN) and HRS, with other causes listed in the Table 1.

ATN

Direct cellular toxicity with ATN and hepatocyte necrosis have been observed in paracetamol intoxication[16]. Despite the nephrotoxic potential of this drug, functional renal failure is also seen secondary to ALF. Renal failure rarely

occurs in the absence of liver failure[7]. Depletion of glutathione is believed to be the cause of both ARF and ALF[36]. Aspirin is another analgesic drug that can cause dose-related liver damage and renal failure in susceptible patients. Of special interest is the association of aspirin, used to treat symptoms of influenza or varicella, with Reye's syndrome[27,37]. The mechanism of renal damage is due to cyclooxygenase inhibition thereby preventing the production of vasodilatory prostaglandins.

ATN with acute renal insufficiency in patients with stable liver disease often follows insults such as hypovolemic shock, major surgical procedures and use of nephrotoxic drugs or contrast agents, infection or sepsis. The functional renal abnormalities associated with advanced liver disease and cirrhosis increase the susceptibility of the kidneys to the development of ATN. These renal abnormalities may either be ischemic or toxic in origin. The mechanism of renal failure is similar in both, and results from a reduction in glomerular filtration rate (GFR) due to impaired glomerular capillary pressure, disrupted integrity of tubular epithelium, and tubular obstruction from casts composed of detached epithelial cells, cellular debris and pigments (hemoglobin and myoglobin)[38]. It should be noted that all causes of pre-renal azotemia might lead to ischemic tubular injury if left untreated[21,39].

The association of obstructive jaundice and ARF is well-established. Susceptibility to renal failure in obstructive jaundice is a combination of cardiovascular instability due to defective vascular reactivity and blunted myocardial contractile response as a result of the deleterious effects of bile constituents. Furthermore, the natriuretic effects of bile acids can cause volume depletion and exaggerate the effective arterial underfilling. However, there is a direct nephrotoxicity of biliary products at very high levels of bilirubin (> 30 mg/dL) in both children and adults[40,41].

Contrast medium is a well-known precipitant of renal failure in hospitalized patients, particularly in the presence of predisposing conditions such as reduced effective blood volume, dehydration and diabetes mellitus. Cirrhosis has been considered a potential predisposing factor. However, a prospective study in euvolemic patients with cirrhosis has shown that administration of contrast medium is not associated with adverse effects on renal function, which suggests that cirrhosis per se should not be considered a risk factor for contrast media nephrotoxicity[42,43]. However, it may play a role in septic cirrhosis, or in patients who have bleeding or who have undergone transarterial embolization for hepatocellular carcinoma.

Table 1 Intrinsic kidney involvement in liver diseases

Tubulo-interstitial involvement
1 Drugs[7] (paracetamol, aspirin, carbon tetrachloride, halogenated hydrocarbons, immunosuppressant agents)
2 Toxins[28-35] (Galerina family of mushrooms, hemoglobin, myoglobin, bilirubin, contrast agents)
3 Infections (leptospirosis, malaria, hepatitis)
4 Hypersensitivity reactions (sulphonamides, salicylates, *etc.*)
Glomerular involvement
1 Drugs[7] (carbon tetrachloride)
2 Hepatitis[28-35] A, B, C
3 Type Ⅱ mixed cryoglobulinemia[28-35]
4 IgA nephropathy[28-35] (alcoholic cirrhosis, HCV cirrhosis)
5 Others (sickle cell disease, hemochromatosis, acute fatty liver and toxemia of pregnancy)
Vascular
1 Vasculitis
2 Toxemia of pregnancy and HELLP syndrome

HRS

HRS is a unique form of functional renal failure that often complicates advanced liver disease, hepatic failure or portal hypertension[3,9,20]. The incidence of HRS in patients with cirrhosis hospitalized for ascites is about 10%. The syndrome is characterized by intense intrarenal vasoconstriction in the presence of vasodilation of systemic and splanchnic circulation, which triggers a reduction in peripheral vascular resistance and a decrease in effective systemic circulatory volume, despite an overall expanded total extracellular fluid volume. The majority of patients have clinical evidence of advanced cirrhosis[20]. However, HRS may occur in patients with fulminant viral and alcoholic hepatitis[36]. Two patterns of HRS can be identified.

Type 1 HRS is characterized by a rapidly progressive reduction of renal function, defined as either doubling of the initial serum creatinine to > 2.5 mg/dL or a 50% reduction in GFR to < 20 mL/min over a 2-wk period. Precipitating factors include spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP), major surgical procedures, and acute alcoholic hepatitis. It follows a fulminant course with development of oliguria, encephalopathy, and marked hyperbilirubinemia, and is associated with very poor prognosis, with death occurring within 1 mo after presentation[27,36].

Type 2 HRS is characterized by a more benign course, with a stable reduction in GFR over weeks to months, accompanying diuretic-resistant ascites and avid sodium retention[36]. The pathogenesis of HRS is incompletely understood. It may be the result of an imbalance between renal vasodilators and vasoconstrictors, with the latter predominating. This interplay between the intrarenal mechanisms is triggered by one of the above-mentioned precipitating factors, which exacerbate the previously diminished cardiac and renal function[14,20].

The diagnostic criteria of HRS as proposed by the International Ascites Club are listed in Table 2[44]. Only the major criteria are necessary for the diagnosis of HRS, while the minor criteria are supportive. The diagnosis of HRS is one of exclusion and depends mainly on the level of serum creatinine, despite the fact it does not provide an accurate reflection of GFR in patients with cirrhosis[8]. Patients with cirrhosis with serum creatinine > 1.5 mg/dL have a GFR (estimated by inulin clearance) of < 30 mL/min, which represents one quarter of the normal GFR for healthy subjects of the same age[45]. HRS is a form of functional renal failure, therefore, the

Table 2 Diagnostic criteria of HRS

Major criteria
1 Chronic or acute liver disease with advanced liver failure and portal hypertension
2 Low GFR, as indicated by a serum creatinine of > 1.5 mg/dL or a 24-h creatinine clearance < 40 mL/min
3 Exclusion of shock, ongoing bacterial infection, volume depletion, and the use of nephrotoxic drugs
4 No improvement in renal function despite stopping diuretics and volume repletion with 1.5 L of saline
5 No proteinuria or ultrasonographic evidence of obstructive uropathy or parenchymal renal disease

Minor criteria[1]
1 Urine volume lower than 500 mg/day
2. Urine sodium lower than 10 mEq/L
3 Urine osmolality > plasma osmolality
4 Urine blood cells < 50 per high-power field
5 Serum sodium concentration lower than 130 mEq/L

[1]Only major criteria are necessary for the diagnosis of hepatorenal syndrome.

characteristics of urine are those of pre-renal azotemia with oliguria, low sodium concentration, and increased osmolality and urine to plasma ratio. These parameters are not considered essential for the diagnosis of HRS because they may overlap with different types of renal failure[44,45].

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF ARF IN LIVER DISEASE

The differential diagnosis of ARF in advanced liver disease includes pre-renal failure, intrinsic renal failure and HRS (Table 3). The diagnostic evaluation relies upon clinical and laboratory data, including examination of urinary sediment and urinary chemistry, as well as appropriate ultrasonographic and radiological investigations[3,14,20]. Renal biopsy generally is not necessary for the diagnosis of ARF in liver disease, but is useful in excluding an intrinsic renal disorder[3]. A history of gastrointestinal hemorrhage, vomiting or diarrhea, exposure to nephrotoxic medication, or features suggestive of sepsis may provide important diagnostic information. Arterial hypertension, which is an unexpected finding in patients with cirrhosis, suggests glomerulonephritis[46]. The course of renal response to fluid challenge or vasoconstrictor therapy can also help differentiate causes of acute azotemia in liver disease. Rapid improvement in renal function denotes pre-renal failure, whereas mild or no improvement represents ATN or HRS[39,44]. Vasoconstrictor agents such as terlipressin or noradrenalin can sometimes be used to differentiate HRS and ATN, with improvement of GFR in favor of HRS[47,48]. Urine indices such as osmolality, sodium concentration, urine:plasma osmolality ratio (U/Posm) and urine:plasma creatinine ratio (U/Pcreat), are useful theoretical tools for differential diagnosis of the three principal causes of ARF in liver disease. However, in reality apart from urinary sediments these are often not clear cut.

Duplex Doppler ultrasonography, is a sensitive method of assessing intrarenal hemodynamics in patients with stable cirrhosis and ascites, in whom the renal artery resistive index is significantly increased and correlated with GFR and plasma renin activity[49]. However, this method is only useful in stable cirrhosis and may not be applied to acute situations.

Table 3 Differential diagnosis of ARF in advanced liver disease

	Prerenal failure	Intrinsic renal failure	HRS
Urine sodium	< 10	> 30	< 10
U/Pcreat	> 30:1	< 20:1	> 30:1
U/Posm	UO > PO	UO = PO	UO > PO
Urine sediment	Normal	Casts, cellular debris	Unremarkable
History disease	Profound volume	Volume contraction	Advanced liver disease
Clinical course (renal response)	Contraction	Nephrotoxic agent sepsis	Tence ascites
Fluid challenge	+	-	-
Vasoconstriction	±	-	+
Ultrasound	Elevated resitive index	Elevated resitive index	Elevated resitive index

MANAGEMENT OF ARF IN LIVER DISEASE

Management of ARF in liver disease should follow the same general principles as for the management of renal failure of any etiology, as well as specific measures for the liver disease. Combined ARF and ALF should ideally be managed in an intensive care or high-dependency setting. Initial management comprises correction of life-threatening abnormalities such as hyperkalemia, hypoglycemia, severe blood gas abnormalities, gross fluid overload and coagulation disorders, which may lead to bleeding and worsening renal function[50]. Although bleeding problems in patients with chronic liver failure are much less than previously thought, as a result of normal thrombin generation, renal failure superimposed on liver failure may have a negative impact on bleeding diathesis and worsening of hemorrhage[51].

Potential nephrotoxic drugs should be discontinued if possible, diuretic therapy interrupted, and infusion of crystalloid or colloid solutions commenced, based on clinical assessment and hemodynamic monitoring. In ALF complicated by intracranial hypertension, in addition to general measures to treat cerebral edema, early continuous renal replacement therapy (CRRT) may be considered, especially when patients are oligo-anuric and are taking mannitol[5,6].

In patients with chronic liver disease, management of ARF must focus on pre-renal failure, HRS and ATN. Upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage needs transfusion of plasma expanders and packed red blood cells, while measures are being taken to identify and treat the bleeding focus[12]. Intestinal and renal fluid losses should be replaced with appropriate fluid. Evidence of sepsis should be meticulously sought and a non-nephrotoxic broad-spectrum antibiotic regimen commenced, regardless of the etiology of sepsis. Current literature does not support the role of low-dose dopamine in the prevention and treatment of sepsis-induced renal vasoconstriction and

failure[52]. Vasopressin and terlipressin provide adequate splanchnic vasoconstriction and have been used not only in patients with cirrhosis and HRS, but also in sepsis in resistant cases[53].

Many different therapeutic approaches have been proposed for the management of HRS[2,13,27,38]. Unfortunately, most treatment measures result in only transient beneficial effects on renal function, and are not consistently associated with improvement in patient survival. Liver transplantation remains the definitive treatment for HRS, but is associated with higher hospital mortality compared to those without HRS who are treated with transplantation[54]. Thus, every attempt should be made to prevent this severe complication or reverse it when managing patients with cirrhosis and ascites. In recent years, new treatment strategies such as the use of vasoconstrictor drugs, along with plasma volume expansion, or insertion of TIPS, have shown some promise[20]. These treatments may prolong survival time and, therefore, act as a bridge to liver transplantation in these patients. Vasoconstrictors used for HRS include vasopressin analogues (ornipressin and terlipressin), somatostatin analogues (octreotide), and alpha-adrenergic agonists (midodrine and noradrenalin)[20]. In type 1 HRS terlipressin in combination with albumin has shown to result in greater improvement in renal function compared to terlipressin alone[10,53]. Pharmacological treatment, when combined with interventional techniques, such as transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS), may further improve renal function in HRS[27,55]. However, TIPS is frequently associated with significant side effects, particularly hepatic encephalopathy and impairment of liver function, and its role in the management of HRS needs to be established by prospective, controlled investigations[56].

The molecular adsorbent recirculating system (MARS) has been used in the treatment of acute decompensation of chronic liver disease (ADCLF), ALF and HRS[57]. This liver support system utilizes either intermittent (6-8 h daily) or continuous hemodialysis with dialysate enriched with 20% human serum albumin as a means to remove albumin-bound toxins (bilirubin, bile acids, fatty acids, tryptophan, aromatic amino acids, and copper). The first randomized trial of MARS evaluated 13 ADCLF patients with type 1 HRS. Five patients treated with hemodiafiltration alone died within 7 d, whereas three of eight patients treated with MARS were alive at 7 d, and two of eight were alive at 30 d[58]. Another recent randomized control trial, which included 24 patients with ADCLF, showed improvement in hyperbilirubinemia and hepatic encephalopathy and 30-d survival in patients treated with MARS. There was also improvement in renal function in the MARS group[59]. Until now, MARS has shown no benefit in improving survival in acute exacerbations of chronic liver failure. Likewise, MARS in the context of ALF has not been studied in control trials.

CRRT

Theoretically, the indications for CRRT in advanced liver disease and renal failure should be similar to those for general population. However, in view of the underlying disease, renal support should only be provided to those with a clear goal of hepatic management and a potential positive outcome i.e., the possibility of hepatic recovery or liver transplantation[60,61]. Measures such as volume expansion with albumin and the use of terlipressin should be tried before considering RRT. In fulminant hepatic failure (FHF), CRRT has become a major part of the routine management. Although there are no randomized trials to prove its efficacy, it can be assumed that it has contributed in part to the improvement in mortality. The continuous form provides greater hemodynamic, and more importantly, greater intracranial pressure ICP stability than the intermittent forms[62]. Continuous techniques (hemofiltration/hemodiafiltration) are preferred since they are associated with greater cardiovascular stability and allow gradual fluid removal, which can be adapted to actual needs and the infusion volume required for drug therapy and nutritional support[61].

PREVENTION OF RENAL FAILURE IN ADVANCED LIVER DISEASE

Two different strategies can be used to prevent HRS. The first is to perform liver transplantation in patients with cirrhosis and ascites before HRS develops. The identification of factors associated with a high risk of developing HRS and the use of duplex Doppler ultrasonography to assess the renal artery resistive index in the follow-up of these patients may be useful for this purpose[9,24,49]. The second strategy is to prevent the development of renal impairment in patients by avoiding the precipitating factors i.e., prompt management of bleeding and infection. A recent study has indicated that the development of HRS in patients with SBP can be effectively prevented by the addition of albumin to antibiotic (cefotaxime) therapy (1.5 g/kg human albumin intravenously at the time of diagnosis of the infection and 1 g/kg intravenously 48 h later). The proportion of patients who developed HRS and the in-hospital mortality was significantly lower in the cefotaxime-plus-albumin group that in the cefotaxime alone[63]. The beneficial effect of albumin is probably related to its ability to prevent circulatory dysfunction and subsequent activation of vasoconstrictor systems that occur during infection[63].

ARF POST LIVER RESECTION AND LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

Liver transplantation is the optimal treatment for patients with end-stage liver disease and ALF. The immediate outcome of orthotopic liver transplantation (OLT) is dependent on several factors, including pretransplant renal function and hemodynamic conditions in the operative and postoperative periods[63]. The prevalence of renal insufficiency in patients before transplantation varies from 10% to 20%, although many of these patients may have HRS, which is potentially a reversible condition.

Pretransplant renal dysfunction is a poor prognostic marker[64]. The reason for the poorer prognosis of these patients may be related to the persistence of the hyperdynamic circulation after liver transplantation, and to the fact that these patients seem to be more susceptible to damage from immunotherapy with cyclosporine or tacrolimus[65]. Additionally, pretransplant renal failure increases the incidence of postoperative sepsis, the need for pre- and postoperative dialysis, the number of days spend in the intensive care unit, and short-term graft and patient survival rates[64,66]. Renal failure is a frequent complication after OLT. It is usually acute, appears early after transplantation, and has an unfavorable effect on prognosis of liver transplant patients. The reported incidence ranges from 12% to 61%, according to the criteria used for defining ARF (serum creatinine ranging from 1.5 to 3 mg/dL or higher)[66,67]. Post-transplant ARF is usually caused by ATN due to perioperative complications (circulatory instability, duration), sepsis, repeated rejection, calcineurin-mediated renal vasoconstriction or nephrotoxic drugs (e.g., aminoglycosides and amphotericin B).

Prevention of renal failure after liver transplantation is not easy. The benefit of RRT with continuous venovenous hemodialysis before and after liver transplantation has been established[68]. Administration of aprotinin, an antifibrinolytic agent may be of benefit in the prevention of renal failure in adult patients undergoing OLT, by reducing intraoperative blood loss. Despite its potential nephrotoxic side effects, the administration of regular doses of aprotinin does not lead to a higher incidence of renal failure in these patients[69].

Treatment of HRS prior to OLT could also be beneficial for the prevention of ARF[63,66]. Finally, a delay in the introduction of nephrotoxic immunosuppresive drugs could be helpful in the prevention of post-transplant ARF, especially in high-risk patients.

CONCLUSION

Acute renal dysfunction is common in patients with acute and chronic liver disease. The presence of renal failure in this group of patients significantly affects mortality. Several advances have occurred in the management of this complication in the last decade. Improvement in the management of ARF in ALF is reflected in our better understanding of the disease process and better hemodynamic and renal replacement support. In advanced liver disease complicated by liver failure, terlipressin and early formation of TIPS have shown some promise. The role of MARS, bioartificial liver support, high-volume hemofiltration, and therapeutic plasma exchange, are still unclear and need further evaluation. Finally, as liver transplant is the definitive treatment, further education to increase the organ donation pool may be the best way forward.

REFERENCES

1 **Epstein M**. Liver disease. In: Massry SG, Glassock RJ. Textbook of nephrology. Baltimore: Williams and Willkins, 1995: 1105-1107
2 **Eckardt KU**. Renal failure in liver disease. *Intensive Care Med* 1999; **25**: 5-14
3 **Moreau R**, Lebrec D. Acute renal failure in patients with cirrhosis: perspectives in the age of MELD. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 233-243
4 **Ifediora O**, Benz RL. Renal papillary necrosis in a hemodialysis patient. *Clin Nephrol* 1993; **39**: 279-281
5 **Guevara M**, Ginès P. Hepatorenal syndrome. *Dig Dis* 2005; **23**: 47-55
6 **Ellis A**, Wendon J. Circulatory, respiratory, cerebral, and renal derangements in acute liver failure: pathophysiology and management. *Semin Liver Dis* 1996; **16**: 379-388
7 **Eguia L**, Materson BJ. Acetaminophen-related acute renal failure without fulminant liver failure. *Pharmacotherapy* 1997; **17**: 363-370
8 **Sherman DS**, Fish DN, Teitelbaum I. Assessing renal function in cirrhotic patients: problems and pitfalls. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2003; **41**: 269-278
9 **Ginès A**, Escorsell A, Ginès P, Saló J, Jiménez W, Inglada L, Navasa M, Clària J, Rimola A, Arroyo V. Incidence, predictive factors, and prognosis of the hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis with ascites. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **105**: 229-236
10 **Ortega R**, Ginès P, Uriz J, Cárdenas A, Calahorra B, De Las Heras D, Guevara M, Bataller R, Jiménez W, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Terlipressin therapy with and without albumin for patients with hepatorenal syndrome: results of a prospective, nonrandomized study. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 941-948
11 **Cárdenas A**, Ginès P, Uriz J, Bessa X, Salmerón JM, Mas A, Ortega R, Calahorra B, De Las Heras D, Bosch J, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Renal failure after upper gastrointestinal bleeding in cirrhosis: incidence, clinical course, predictive factors, and short-term prognosis. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 671-676
12 **Bosch J**, Abraldes JG. Management of gastrointestinal bleeding in patients with cirrhosis of the liver. *Semin Hematol* 2004; **41**: 8-12
13 **Epstein M**. Functional renal abnormalities in cirrhosis: pathophysiology and management. In: Zakim D and Boyer TD. Hepatology: A textbook of liver disease. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1990: 439-452
14 **Arroyo V**, Cardenas A, Campistol JM, Gines P. Acute renal failure in liver disease. In: Davison A, Stewart CJ, Grunfeld JP, Kerr DNS, Ritz E, Winearls CG. Oxford textbook of clinical hepatology. London: Oxford Press, 2005: 1564-1579
15 **Bomzon A**, Blendis LM. The nitric oxide hypothesis and the hyperdynamic circulation in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1994; **20**: 1343-1350
16 **Moore K**, Taylor G, Ward P, Williams R. Aetiology and management of renal failure in acute liver failure. In Williams R, RD Hughes. Acute liver failure: Improved understanding and better therapy. Welwyn Garden City, UK: Smith Klein and French Laboratories, 1991: 47-53
17 **Blantz RC**, Gabbai FB. Physiology of the renal regulation. In: Arroyo V, Gines P, Rodes J, Schrier R. Ascites and renal dysfunction in liver disease. Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment. Oxford: Blackwell Science, Inc, 1999: 143-160
18 **Møller S**, Henriksen JH. Cirrhotic cardiomyopathy: a pathophysiological review of circulatory dysfunction in liver disease. *Heart* 2002; **87**: 9-15
19 **Bernardi M**, Trevisani F, Gasbarrini A, Gasbarrini G. Hepatorenal disorders: role of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. *Semin Liver Dis* 1994; **14**: 23-34
20 **Cárdenas A**. Hepatorenal syndrome: a dreaded complication of end-stage liver disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 460-467
21 **Mandal AK**, Lansing M, Fahmy A. Acute tubular necrosis in hepatorenal syndrome: an electron microscopy study. *Am J Kidney Dis* 1982; **2**: 363-374
22 **Gerbes AL**. Pathophysiology of ascites formation in cirrhosis of the liver. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1991; **38**: 360-364
23 **Gentilini P**, Vizzutti F, Gentilini A, Zipoli M, Foschi M, Romanelli RG. Update on ascites and hepatorenal syndrome. *Dig Liver Dis* 2002; **34**: 592-605
24 **Gines P**, Schrier RW. The arterial vasodilation hypothesis of ascites formation in cirrhosis. In: Arroyo V, Gines P, Rodes

J, Schrier R. Malden. Ascites and renal dysfunction in liver disease. Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment. Oxford: Blackwell Science, Inc, 1999: 411-430
25 **Navasa M**, Rodés J. Bacterial infections in cirrhosis. *Liver Int* 2004; **24**: 277-280
26 **Guarner C**, Runyon BA. Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis: pathogenesis, diagnosis, and management. *Gastroenterologist* 1995; **3**: 311-328
27 **Wong F**. Liver and kidney diseases. *Clin Liver Dis* 2002; **6**: 981-1011
28 **Williams AT**, Burk RF. Carbon tetrachloride hepatotoxicity: an example of free radical-mediated injury. *Semin Liver Dis* 1990; **10**: 279-284
29 **Reichle FM**, Conzen PF. Halogenated inhalational anaesthetics. *Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol* 2003; **17**: 29-46
30 **Jindal RM**, Popescu I. Renal dysfunction associated with liver transplantation. *Postgrad Med J* 1995; **71**: 513-524
31 **Broussard CN**, Aggarwal A, Lacey SR, Post AB, Gramlich T, Henderson JM, Younossi ZM. Mushroom poisoning--from diarrhea to liver transplantation. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 3195-3198
32 **Han SH**. Extrahepatic manifestations of chronic hepatitis B. *Clin Liver Dis* 2004; **8**: 403-418
33 **Meyers CM**, Seeff LB, Stehman-Breen CO, Hoofnagle JH. Hepatitis C and renal disease: an update. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2003; **42**: 631-657
34 **Cheema SR**, Arif F, Charney D, Meisels IS. IgA-dominant glomerulonephritis associated with hepatitis A. *Clin Nephrol* 2004; **62**: 138-143
35 **Abraham KA**, Kennelly M, Dorman AM, Walshe JJ. Pathogenesis of acute renal failure associated with the HELLP syndrome: a case report and review of the literature. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2003; **108**: 99-102
36 **Moore K**. Renal failure in acute liver failure. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **11**: 967-975
37 **Koppes GM**, Arnett FC. Salicylate hepatotoxicity. *Postgrad Med* 1974; **56**: 193-195
38 **Gines P**, Schrier RW. Hepatorenal syndrome and renal dysfunction associated with liver disease. In: Schrier RW, Gottschalk CW. Diseases of the kidney. Boston: Little Brown and company, 1997: 2099-2127
39 **Thadhani R**, Pascual M, Bonventre JV. Acute renal failure. *N Engl J Med* 1996; **334**: 1448-1460
40 **Sitges-Sera A**. Renal dysfunction and postoperative renal failure in obstructive jaundice. In: Arroyo V, Gines P, Rodes J, Schrier R. Ascites and renal dysfunction in liver disease. Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment. Oxford: Blackwell Science, Inc, 1999: 79-98
41 **Sitprija V**, Kashemsant U, Sriratanaban A, Arthachinta S, Poshyachinda V. Renal function in obstructive jaundice in man: cholangiocarcinoma model. *Kidney Int* 1990; **38**: 948-955
42 **Barrett BJ**, Parfrey PS. Prevention of nephrotoxicity induced by radiocontrast agents. *N Engl J Med* 1994; **331**: 1449-1450
43 **Guevara M**, Fernández-Esparrach G, Alessandria C, Torre A, Terra C, Montañà X, Piera C, Alvarez ML, Jiménez W, Ginès P, Arroyo V. Effects of contrast media on renal function in patients with cirrhosis: a prospective study. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 646-651
44 **Arroyo V**, Ginès P, Gerbes AL, Dudley FJ, Gentilini P, Laffi G, Reynolds TB, Ring-Larsen H, Scholmerich J. Definition and diagnostic criteria of refractory ascites and hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. International Ascites Club. *Hepatology* 1996; **23**: 164-176
45 **Bataller R**, Ginès P, Guevara M, Arroyo V. Hepatorenal syndrome. *Semin Liver Dis* 1997; **17**: 233-247
46 **Couser WG**. Glomerulonephritis. *Lancet* 1999; **353**: 1509-1515
47 **Moreau R**, Durand F, Poynard T, Duhamel C, Cervoni JP, Ichaï P, Abergel A, Halimi C, Pauwels M, Bronowicki JP, Giostra E, Fleurot C, Gurnot D, Nouel O, Renard P, Rivoal M, Blanc P, Coumaros D, Ducloux S, Levy S, Pariente A, Perarnau JM, Roche J, Scribe-Outtas M, Valla D, Bernard B, Samuel D, Butel J, Hadengue A, Platek A, Lebrec D, Cadranel JF. Terlipressin in patients with cirrhosis and type 1 hepatorenal syndrome: a retrospective multicenter study. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 923-930
48 **Duvoux C**, Zanditenas D, Hézode C, Chauvat A, Monin JL, Roudot-Thoraval F, Mallat A, Dhumeaux D. Effects of noradrenalin and albumin in patients with type I hepatorenal syndrome: a pilot study. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 374-380
49 **Maroto A**, Ginès A, Saló J, Clària J, Ginès P, Anibarro L, Jiménez W, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Diagnosis of functional kidney failure of cirrhosis with Doppler sonography: prognostic value of resistive index. *Hepatology* 1994; **20**: 839-844
50 **Lameire N**, Van Biesen W, Vanholder R. Acute renal failure. *Lancet* 2005; **365**: 417-430
51 **Tripodi A**, Mannucci PM. Abnormalities of hemostasis in chronic liver disease: reappraisal of their clinical significance and need for clinical and laboratory research. *J Hepatol* 2007; **46**: 727-733
52 **Bellomo R**, Chapman M, Finfer S, Hickling K, Myburgh J. Low-dose dopamine in patients with early renal dysfunction: a placebo-controlled randomised trial. Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society (ANZICS) Clinical Trials Group. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 2139-2143
53 **Solanki P**, Chawla A, Garg R, Gupta R, Jain M, Sarin SK. Beneficial effects of terlipressin in hepatorenal syndrome: a prospective, randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **18**: 152-156
54 **Gonwa TA**, Klintmalm GB, Levy M, Jennings LS, Goldstein RM, Husberg BS. Impact of pretransplant renal function on survival after liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 1995; **59**: 361-365
55 **Arroyo V**. Review article: hepatorenal syndrome--how to assess response to treatment and nonpharmacological therapy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **20** Suppl 3: 49-54; discussion 55-56
56 **Ochs A**. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt. *Dig Dis* 2005; **23**: 56-64
57 **Stange J**, Hassanein TI, Mehta R, Mitzner SR, Bartlett RH. The molecular adsorbents recycling system as a liver support system based on albumin dialysis: a summary of preclinical investigations, prospective, randomized, controlled clinical trial, and clinical experience from 19 centers. *Artif Organs* 2002; **26**: 103-110
58 **Mitzner SR**, Stange J, Klammt S, Risler T, Erley CM, Bader BD, Berger ED, Lauchart W, Peszynski P, Freytag J, Hickstein H, Loock J, Löhr JM, Liebe S, Emmrich J, Korten G, Schmidt R. Improvement of hepatorenal syndrome with extracorporeal albumin dialysis MARS: results of a prospective, randomized, controlled clinical trial. *Liver Transpl* 2000; **6**: 277-286
59 **Heemann U**, Treichel U, Loock J, Philipp T, Gerken G, Malago M, Klammt S, Loehr M, Liebe S, Mitzner S, Schmidt R, Stange J. Albumin dialysis in cirrhosis with superimposed acute liver injury: a prospective, controlled study. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 949-958
60 **Davenport A**. Continuous renal replacement therapy for liver disease. *Hemodial Int* 2003; **7**: 348-352
61 **Howard CS**, Teitelbaum I. Renal replacement therapy in patients with chronic liver disease. *Semin Dial* 2005; **18**: 212-216
62 **Davenport A**, Will EJ, Davison AM. Effect of renal replacement therapy on patients with combined acute renal and fulminant hepatic failure. *Kidney Int Suppl* 1993; **41**: S245-S251
63 **Nair S**, Verma S, Thuluvath PJ. Pretransplant renal function predicts survival in patients undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 1179-1185
64 **Lafayette RA**, Paré G, Schmid CH, King AJ, Rohrer RJ, Nasraway SA. Pretransplant renal dysfunction predicts poorer outcome in liver transplantation. *Clin Nephrol* 1997; **48**: 159-164
65 **Gadano A**, Hadengue A, Widmann JJ, Vachiery F, Moreau R, Yang S, Soupison T, Sogni P, Degott C, Durand F. Hemodynamics after orthotopic liver transplantation: study of associated factors and long-term effects. *Hepatology* 1995; **22**: 458-465
66 **Lima EQ**, Zanetta DM, Castro I, Massarollo PC, Mies S, Machado MM, Yu L. Risk factors for development of acute renal failure after liver transplantation. *Ren Fail* 2003; **25**: 553-560

67 **Lebrón Gallardo M**, Herrera Gutierrez ME, Seller Pérez G, Curiel Balsera E, Fernández Ortega JF, Quesada García G. Risk factors for renal dysfunction in the postoperative course of liver transplant. *Liver Transpl* 2004; **10**: 1379-1385
68 **Lütkes P**, Lutz J, Loock J, Daul A, Broelsch C, Philipp T, Heemann U. Continuous venovenous hemodialysis treatment in critically ill patients after liver transplantation. *Kidney Int Suppl* 1999: S71-S74
69 **Molenaar IQ**, Begliomini B, Grazi GL, Ringers J, Terpstra OT, Porte RJ. The effect of aprotinin on renal function in orthotopic liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 2001; **71**: 247-252

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Kerr C **E- Editor** Lu W

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5560-5570
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Dr, *Series Editor*

Novel genetic markers in inflammatory bowel disease

Lorena Rodríguez-Bores, Gabriela C Fonseca, Marco A Villeda, Jesús K Yamamoto-Furusho

Lorena Rodríguez-Bores, Gabriela C Fonseca, Marco A Villeda, Jesús K Yamamoto-Furusho, IBD Clinic, Department of Gastroenterology, Instituto Nacional de Ciencias Médicas y Nutrición Salvador Zubirán, Vasco de Quiroga 15 colonia Sección XVI, Tlalpan, CP 14000, México
Correspondence to: Jesús K Yamamoto-Furusho, MD, PhD, Head of IBD Clinic, Department of Gastroenterology, Instituto Nacional de Ciencias Médicas y Nutrición Salvador Zubirán, Vasco de Quiroga 15 colonia Sección XVI, Tlalpan, CP 14000, México. kazuofurusho@hotmail.com
Telephone: +52-55-55733418-2705 Fax: +52-55-56550942
Received: April 5, 2007 Revised: August 5, 2007

Abstract

Genetic factors play a significant role in determining inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) susceptibility. Epidemiologic data support genetic contribution to the pathogenesis of IBD, which include familial aggregation, twin studies, racial and ethnic differences in disease prevalence. Linkage studies have identified several susceptibility genes contained in different genomic regions named IBD1 to IBD9. Nucleotide oligomerization domain (NOD2) and human leukocyte antigen (HLA) genes are the most extensively studied genetic regions (IBD1 and IBD3 respectively) in IBD. Mutations of the NOD2 gene are associated with Crohn's disease (CD) and several HLA genes are associated with ulcerative colitis (UC) and CD. Toll like receptors (TLRs) have an important role in the innate immune response against infections by mediating recognition of pathogen-associated microbial patterns. Studying single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in molecules involved in bacterial recognition seems to be essential to define genetic backgrounds at risk of IBD. Recently, numerous new genes have been identified to be involved in the genetic susceptibility to IBD: NOD1/Caspase-activation recruitment domains 4 (CARD4), Chemokine ligand 20 (CCL20), IL-11, and IL-18 among others. The characterization of these novel genes potentially will lead to the identification of therapeutic agents and clinical assessment of phenotype and prognosis in patients with IBD.

Key words: Genetic; Inflammatory bowel disease; Human leukocyte antigen; Nucleotide oligomerization domain; Toll like receptors; Susceptibility

Rodríguez-Bores L, Fonseca GC, Villeda MA, Yamamoto-Furusho JK. Novel genetic markers in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5560-5570

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5560.asp

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) includes ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD) which are characterized by chronic illness of unknown etiology; however, its development is influenced by genetic, environmental and immunological factors[1].

Epidemiological studies suggest that genetic susceptibility is a major contributing factor to IBD. Molecular data from total genome scans and from candidate gene studies have led to the identification of genetic determinants of susceptibility and disease phenotype of UC and CD. The primary goal of genetic research is to identify genetic variants within specific genes which could modify homeostasis and increase disease susceptibility. There is growing attention to the innate immune response and the interaction between genetic factors and bacterial flora, or pathogen-associated molecular patterns in order to understand the contribution of environmental factors to disease susceptibility, as well as the phenotype based on a more precise molecular basis of disease pathogenesis. Clinical impact of the genetic findings has helped in understanding the heterogeneity of IBD in location, age at onset, clinical course and predicting response to conventional treatment.

GENETIC MODEL

Clinical and epidemiological data do not support a simple Mendelian model of inheritance for IBD. In its place CD and UC are considered to be complex polygenic diseases. Two major methods for identification of genes in complex multifactorial diseases are used, the positional cloning method based on association studies and the candidate gene analysis. Linkage analysis allows scanning of the whole genome studying the co-segregation of the disease with a marker within families, constituting an important method where allele sharing between affected sibling pairs is used. An alteration of the observed ratio of sharing contrasting the expected is interpreted as evidence for linkage with a particular marker. On the other hand, the candidate gene analysis attempts to determine the

Table 1 Major regions and genes in IBD

Region	Localization	Involved genes
IBD1	Chromosome 16	NOD2/CARD15, IL-4R, CD11B
IBD2	Chromosome 12	Vitamin D receptor (VDR), STAT6, Interferon γ, β7 integrine.
IBD3	Chromosome 6	Major histocompatibility complex (MHC): Class Ⅰ, Ⅱ, Ⅲ.
IBD4	Chromosome 14	T- Lymphocyte receptor (TCR) and Leukotriene B4
IBD5	Chromosome 5	Organic cations transporter (OCTN), *Drosophila long disc homologue gene 5* (DLG5), *Multidrug resistant gene* (MDR1), IL-6, CD14
IBD6	Chromosome 19	Thromboxane A2, Leukotriene B4, ICAM-1
IBD7	Chromosome 1	Transforming growth factor Beta (TGFβ), TNFα receptors.
IBD8	Chromosome 16	Under research
IBD9	Chromosome 9	CCR-5, CCR9, IL-12

NOD2/CARD15: Nucleotide oligomerization domain 2/Caspase-activation recruitment domains 15; STAT6: signal transducer and activator of transcription-6; ICAM-1: intracellular adhesion molecule 1; CCR5: CC-chemokine receptor5.

importance of specific genes in disease pathogenesis, using case-control cohorts or trios of affected progeny with both parents. The allelic frequencies or the transmission of a single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) towards affected progeny is studied and the differences between patients and controls might point towards the implication of a particular gene in the pathogenesis of the disease under investigation. It also includes positional candidate genes which are found in areas of linkage defined by genome screening. As CD and UC are likely to share some susceptibility genes, it has been proposed a genetic model of UC and CD where the two are polygenic disorders, sharing some susceptibility *loci*, but differing in others[2]. Linkage studies support this concept because some *loci* appear to interfere with susceptibility to IBD, which have also been implicated in the abnormal immune response and those susceptibility genes could interfere with the disease phenotype such as extension, need for procto-colectomy, extraintestinal manifestations, as well as the response to different treatments. From most of the genome-wide scans performed in IBD, a number of susceptibility regions on several chromosomes have been found[3-6] and according to their initial date of reporting and independent confirmations, the regions on such chromosomes have been renamed as IBD1-9 (Table 1).

IBD1

Accurate mapping of the IBD1 locus has led to identification of the underlying gene called the NOD2/Caspase-activation recruitment domains 15 (CARD15) gene located on the pericentromeric region on the long arm of chromosome 16 (16p12.3) extending to 16q13[7-10]. Several studies have demonstrated the identification of NOD2/CARD15 gene within the IBD1 locus as a susceptibility gene in CD, suggesting that approximately 25%-30% of the genetic susceptibility in CD can be explained by mutations in NOD2/CARD5 though most of these studies have shown no association between NOD2 mutations and susceptibility to UC[11,12]. Thirty non-conservative polymorphisms have been identified within the gene that are associated with CD and only three are common (Arg702Trp, Gly908Arg and Leu1007insC). The three common variants, however, account for approximately 82% of the mutated alleles[13]. Nevertheless, these mutations seem to have different effects on the risk of developing CD: Arg702Trp, Gly908Arg and a deletion in the last 33 aminoacids Leu1007finsC, which are present in 43% of the patients with CD (10%-30% is heterozygous and 2%-15% is homozygous for these mutations)[8-10]. These variants in NOD2 have been associated with certain clinical features of CD[14]. The NOD2 contribution seems to be stronger in Ashkenazi Jewish population who has a higher frequency of the Gly908Arg NOD2 variant. In relation to phenotypic expression and translation into the clinic, some associations between NOD2 mutations and earlier-onset disease in adult populations, fistulizing disease, fibrostenosing disease behavior and increased risk of need for surgery in children have been described[15-18].

CARD gene codes for a protein expressed in several cells of innate immunity, epithelial cells and Paneth cells[11,12]. This protein consists of two N-terminal CARD, a central nucleotide-binding domain and a C-terminal leucin-rich-repeat region (LRR). It has been reported that CARD15 is implicated in the recognition of a bacterial product peptidoglycan-derived muramyl dipeptide (MDP) that enters into the cytosol via a transporter protein hPepT1 and interacts with the LRR of NOD2. Mutations within the leucine-rich region are associated with CD, as mutations within the nucleotide-binding domain are associated with granulomatous diseases[19]. Through the recognition of MDP, secretion of alpha-defensins is stimulated for protection against microbial invasion. In CD patients, a diminished expression of alpha-defensins has been found in those carriers with NOD2 mutation[20,21]. It is known that through this recognition of bacterial products the nuclear factor kappa B (NFκB) activation is regulated[10,22].

Evidence show that NOD2 protein acts as an important regulator of NFκB activation in response to the Toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 activation system leading to its down regulation[23,24]. However in carriers of mutant protein, this process does not occur and proinflammatory cytokines are produced with a Th1 profile[25,26].

IBD2

This region is located on chromosome 12 showing greater linkage evidence in UC compared with CD. A number of possible candidate genes have been investigated including signal transducer and activator of transcription-6 (STAT6), INFγ, metalloproteinase (MMP18), Vitamin D receptor (VDR) and β7 integrin family that could be associated with the susceptibility to IBD. Parkes *et al*[27] found that IBD2 appears to make a major contribution to UC susceptibility but has only a relatively minor effect on CD.

Vitamin D receptor

The Vitamin D receptor (VDR) is a member of a steroid receptor family and mediates the effects of the active metabolite 1.25 $(OH)_2$ vitamin D_3 by regulating

transcription of a number of different genes. It is synthesized by activated macrophages. It is expressed by monocytes and activated B and T lymphocytes. It activates monocytes and macrophages but suppresses lymphocyte proliferation and immunoglobulin production, and also inhibits transcription factor NFκB, and the production of IL-2, IL-12 and interferon γ. 1.25 $(OH)_2D_3$ is the form of vitamin D that binds to the VDR and inhibits experimental autoimmunity[28,29]. Vitamin D deficiency and VDR deficiency have been shown to exacerbate chronic IBD in IL-10 knock out mice[29,30]. Absence of the VDR results in mice that are extremely susceptible to chemical injury in the gut[30]. The linked SNPs found at the 3' end of VDR are: *Bsm*I, *Apa*I, *Taq*I, and the exon 2 splice site *Fok*I polymorphism[31,32]. *Fok*I polymorphism has been associated with osteoporosis, *Taq*I polymorphism with the risk of prostate cancer[33] and recently homozygotes for the *Taq*I allele have been shown to have altered susceptibility to a variety of infectious diseases[34]. Simmons *et al*[35] studied 403 European Caucasian patients with IBD, and found significantly more homozygotes for the *Taq*I polymorphism among patients with CD than in patients with UC or controls, providing evidence for a genetic association between CD susceptibility and a gene that lies within one of the candidate regions determined by linkage analysis. Dressner-Pollak *et al*[36] found that *Bsm*I VDR gene polymorphism is associated with increased susceptibility to UC in Israeli Ashkenazi patients with UC contrasting with *Taq*I polymorphisms that favor susceptibility to CD. It seems that in the absence of the VDR, inflammation in the gut is increased, colonic epithelial cell proliferation is dysregulated, and the host tissue fails to satisfactorily maintain gastrointestinal integrity following chemical insult. These data identify vitamin D as a key regulator of gastrointestinal homeostasis and an important player in regulation of the innate immune response.

IFN-γ

IFN-γ seems to be specifically important in CD pathogenesis as suggested by case control studies that showed elevated levels of IFN-γ production in the mucosa in patients with CD, but not in UC[37]. Data indicate that patients with relapsing perianal fistulizing disease have an increased production of IFN-γ measured by *in vitro* cell cultures[38]. Cytokine genotyping study showed that IFN-γ (+874T/A) polymorphism is found in an increased proportion of patients with fistulizing CD[39] probably related to the reduction of tissue repair and migratory potential in fibroblasts apparently influenced by IFN-γ in CD patients[40].

IBD3

Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) genes are located in this region, specifically on the short arm of the human chromosome 6.

With a candidate gene approach the MHC is the most extensively studied region. Two meta-analyses have been carried out to scan for IBD regions that are common for all populations[5,41] in which the highest evidence for linkage to IBD was achieved at the IBD3 locus. There are 3 classes of MHC genes: I, II and III. The antigenic recognizing process in T-lymphocytes from the antigen presenting cells is achieved through the antigenic recognition associated with the MHC gene product[42].

HLA class I

Some not classical genes related to the class I genes such as MHC class I chain-related gene A (MICA) and MHC class I-related chain B (MICB), are expressed in the basolateral cells in the gastric epithelium, fibroblasts, endothelial and dendritic cells. It is known that its expression rises during viral and bacterial infections[43]. Some genetic studies in patients with IBD have found associations with MICA-A6 and HLA-B52 in Japanese patients with UC[44], MICA*010 and HLA-B*1501 in English patients with fistulous CD[23]. MICA and MICB bind to an activating receptor natural killer group 2D (NKG2D) which is expressed on NK cells, T cells and macrophages and the interactions between these receptors may directly stimulate cell cytotoxicity as well as providing costimulation for NK and T cell activation. Several MICA alleles have been shown to alter the binding affinity with NKG2D suggesting they may exert a functional effect on immune activation. In contrast to HLA class II, HLA class I genes show a weak and inconsistent role in IBD. The functional significance of these polymorphisms and the nature of selective forces maintaining them are still being elucidated.

HLA class II

Class II genes are located on the centromeric pole of the short arm of the human chromosome 6 and include HLA-DR, DP and DQ *loci* expressed in a dimeric glycoprotein only in macrophages, activated T-lymphocytes, B-lymphocytes, dendritic, epithelial and endothelial cells, playing a central role in the immune response. Polymorphisms in these molecules are concentrated around specific pockets of the binding groove that interact with critical side-chains or anchor residues of peptides. The different HLA molecules may bind preferentially to different peptides, or bind the same peptide with varying affinities. In IBD the molecular mimicry may exist between the peptides derived from bacterial luminal flora and from self antigens present in the gut, leading to the generation of auto reactive T cells and contributing to disease pathogenesis. The mechanism of cross reactivity is supported by the identification of murine MHC-restricted CD4+ T cells reactive to enteric bacterial antigens that are able to induce colitis by adoptive transfer[45].

In a meta-analysis made by Stokkers *et al*[46], positive associations between UC and HLA-DR2, HLA-DRB1*1502, HLA-DR9 and HLA-DRB1*0103 were found. A study from Mexican population found that HLA-DRB1*0103 allele was associated with UC and its severe manifestations such as colectomy and pancolitis, while HLA-DRB1*15 allele was only associated with pancolitis in Mexican patients with UC.

HLA class III

These genes are located on the 1100 kb section between class I and II genes inside the MHC, and contain about 70

genes. The complement gene block is inherited as a genetic unit known as complotype. Each complotype codifies for the synthesis of complement classic pathway C2, C4A, C4b factors, and alternative pathway B factor, which may suggest that alterations within the region might affect the host's defense system and introduce a complement deficiency. This raises attention when TNFα is thought to play an important role in the pathogenesis of IBD, acting as a potent proinflammatory cytokine with elevated serum and tissue levels in patients with IBD[47-49], and evidence show that there are specific genetic polymorphisms involving TNFα that influence the amount of cytokine produced. Bouma *et al*[50] and Louis *et al*[51] studied the allelic frequency of TNFα gene polymorphisms at -308 position finding that polymorphism in allele 2 was decreased in UC patients as compared to normal controls. It was also found that patients with pancolitis had increased frequency in the TNF-C haplotype[52]. In a Mexican population with UC, the presence of TNF*2 allele was associated with the presence of this disease as compared with healthy subjects (23.7% *vs* 3%, $P = 0.00002$; OR = 10.1; 95% CI = 2.69-26.8)[53]. In Mexican patients with UC, an association was found between complotype SC30 (Bf*S-C2*C-C4A*3-C4B*0) and UC[54], which might suggest that activation of complement system could interfere with the disease pathogenesis.

IBD4

This locus is located on chromosome 14. Evidence for linkage to the adjacent D14S261 and D14S283 *loci* on chromosome 14q11-12 satisfied criteria for confirmed linkage and this region was designated IBD4 locus[55]. Vermeire *et al*[56] in a genome wide scan in a 149 Belgian IBD affected families cohort, demonstrated the existence of IBD4 on 14q11 as a susceptibility *loci*. The IL-25 gene is located within this susceptibility region at 14q11.2. The IL-25 gene is located within this susceptibility region at 14q11.2.

IL-25

Interleukin-25 (IL-25) is a newly identified proinflammatory cytokine that has been shown to promote Th2 responses by inducing cytokines such as IL-4, IL-5 and IL-13, implicated in the initiation of type 2 cytokine-dependent immunity to gastrointestinal infection and limiting proinflammatory cytokine production and chronic intestinal inflammation. IL-25-deficient knockout mice failed to develop a type 2 immune response or eradicate infection. Moreover, chronically infected IL-25 (-/-) mice developed severe infection-induced intestinal inflammation identifying a role for IL-25 in limiting pathologic inflammation at mucosal sites in the gastrointestinal tract[57]. Still more evidence is needed to conclude a precise role of this gene in the IBD susceptibility.

IBD5

The IBD5 locus on chromosome 5q31-33[58] contains the cytokine cluster and is a candidate region for IBD. The IBD5 risk haplotype has been associated with CD, although there have been some suggestions of a weak association with UC as well. Phenotypically this locus has been associated with earlier onset of disease as well as perianal disease[59-62].

Carnitine/Organic cation transporter genes

The organic cation transporter genes OCTN1 and OCTN2 are within a single haplotype block (block 7) of the IBD5 locus and some mutations have been reported within these: L503F (rs1050152) and G-207C (rs2631367) in the *SLC22A4 (OCTN1)* and *SLC22A5 (OCTN2)* genes, respectively, which are associated with the development of CD and also an association with susceptibility to UC has been reported[63]. The presence or combination of these mutations constitutes the TC haplotype, which is associated with ileal, colonic and perianal disease[64,65]. Associations between TC haplotype variants and CD affected sites have been shown in genotype-phenotype studies[66,67]. According to some studies, 1672C→T missense substitution in SLC22A4 and the -207G→C transversion in the SLC22A5 promoter contribute to disease susceptibility by impairing OCTN activity or expression respectively[68]. The risk associated with the OCTN-TC haplotype seems to be only observed in homozygotes and not in heterozygotes[60,63,69], so the carriage of the homozygous OCTN-TC haplotype is likely to be associated with a higher relative risk for colonic disease. The association of the OCTN polymorphisms with CD phenotypes shows a higher frequency of the OCTN-TC haplotype in patients with colonic involvement compared with exclusive ileal disease[60]. It has been reported a moderate increase in the frequency of the TC haplotype among patients without fistulas or stenosis and this is compatible with the negative association with ileal involvement, showing a tendency towards a lower-frequency of ileocecal resection in the presence of at least one OCTN-TC haplotype and might explain the absence of colonic involvement[64]. The impaired eradication of luminal pathogens results in a persistent infection which may constitute a possible mechanism causing IBD.

Drosophila long disc homologue 5 gene

Drosophila long disc homologue 5 gene (DLG5) on chromosome 10q22-23 is a member of the membrane associated guanylate kinase gene family which encodes cell scaffolding proteins and seems to play a role in the maintenance of intestinal epithelial cells, and its mutations have been involved in a rise in intestinal permeability[70]. DLG5 is a widely expressed protein found in many tissues such as the placenta, small bowel, colon, heart, skeletal muscle, liver and pancreas and it is important in signal transduction and epithelial cell integrity. Four haplotypes have been identified associated with IBD in a European cohort[71]. Haplotype A is characterized by the presence of an insertion of thirteen pairs in exon 26. It has been shown to be protective in some case control studies[72], however it is substantially undertransmitted in people with IBD[62]. The haplotype characterized by the haplotype-tagging SNP G113A called Haplotype D, was found substantially overtransmitted in patients with IBD controversially contradictory with another[73] Belgian study where the D haplotype involving the 113A variant was shown to be undertransmitted in flamish patients with

IBD. These apparently contradictory results might yet be compatible with the possibility that DLG5 has a small effect in IBD with heterogeneity in its effect.

ATP-binding cassette or multidrug resistant gene

The multidrug-resistance (MDR1) gene is located on the long arm of chromosome 7 and consists of 29 exons. The total length is 209 kb and 6326 bp. Its product, the P-glycoprotein (Pgp), a member of the ATP binding cassette family, is an integral membrane protein which functions as an energy-dependent efflux pump and reduces the intracellular concentrations of toxins and xenobiotics[74]. Studies show evidence for natural single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) of MDR1 gene and their effects on drug efficiency, toxicity, distribution, absorption and elimination. Two main polymorphisms or variants of this gene have been described, C3435T and G2677T which are associated with IBD in some populations[75,76] and have also been related with the expression of glycoprotein P-170. Variant C3435T was related with the presence of pancolitis in patients with UC in Scotland[77]. However, the frequency of SNPs is low and is different among populations, with the exception of three SNPs in exon 12 (C1236T), exon 20 (G2677T/A) and exon 26 (C3435T), and some of them are correlated with different diseases and clinical characteristics[78]. Glucocorticoid is a potent inhibitor of the T cell activation and a highly effective treatment for IBD[79]. Over-expression produces three molecular mechanisms of glucocorticoid resistance: increase of P-gp and decrease of cytoplasmatic glucocorticoid, dysfunction at the level of glucocorticoid receptor and activation of NFκB, resulting in inhibition of glucocorticoid receptor transcriptional activity. Cucchiara *et al*[80] investigated the predisposition and response to medical therapy of TNFα and MDR1 genes in 200 pediatric patients with CD and 186 UC patients and 347 adults as a control. The 308A allele of the TNF-α gene was increased in both patients with CD and UC, strongly suggesting this polymorphism carries a significant reduction in response to steroid therapy.

IL-6 (-174G/C) polymorphism

IL-6 is a well-studied IBD candidate gene and its polymorphism has been associated with the site of disease in CD. IL-6 levels are higher in patients with active CD as compared to patients with active UC and normal controls[81,82]. A study from Cantor *et al*[39] demonstrated a relationship between IL-6 genotype and the site of CD, showing that patients with the high producer of IL-6 genotype were more likely to have colonic CD. In CD patients IL-6 concentrations also correlate with the disease activity, response to treatment and rate of relapse.

IBD6

In a Canadian linkage scan, a linkage peak of genome-wide scan on chromosome 19p was identified and appeared to confer susceptibility to both CD and UC[61]. Two independent genome-wide linkage studies also determined evidence for linkage to this region and two other meta-analyses of all published genome-wide scans[5,41,83] identified evidence that supports the existence of a locus conferring susceptibility to IBD in chromosomal region 19p, currently known as the IBD6 locus. In order to identify IBD susceptibility alleles in the 19p region two candidate genes DDXL and intracellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM-1) were examined in a case-control study with CD and UC patients but no association with either UC or CD was found in 3 single nucleotide polymorphisms in DDXL gene, however a significant association was found between ICAM-1 K469 homozygosity and CD as well as E469 and fistulating disease[84].

IBD7

Located on the short arm of chromosome 1, IBD7 is thought susceptibility genes are residing in this locus. One of these codifies for the transforming growth factor beta 2 (TGF-beta 2) which is a cytokine present in human and bovine milk and plays a critical role in the development of tolerance, prevention of autoimmunity, and in anti-inflammatory responses and is also a potent inhibitor of intestinal epithelial cell (IEC) growth and stimulates IEC differentiation[85-87]. McKaig and colleagues[88] studied the expression of TGF-beta isoforms in isolated and cultured primary human intestinal myofibroblasts from normal controls as well as from UC and CD patients, and determined the responsiveness of these cells to TGF-beta isoforms. Proliferation of myofibroblasts in CD patients was significantly greater than that of myofibroblasts derived from normal and ulcerative colitis tissue, suggesting that it may be related to the development of intestinal strictures, seen frequently as a major feature in CD. The anti-inflammatory attributes of TGF-β3 may be evidenced in a study of children with active intestinal Crohn's disease, who were treated with an oral polymeric diet rich in TGF-β2 as the sole source of nutrition for eight weeks and it was associated with mucosal healing and a down-regulation of mucosal pro-inflammatory cytokines mRNA in both the terminal ileum and colon[89]. However, further investigation on this locus is needed to determine the level of significance related to the pathogenesis of IBD.

IBD8

This gene is located on the short arm of human chromosome 16. There has been evidence of a second chromosome 16 locus (IBD8) independent of NOD2 that overlaps IBD1 on the pericentromeric short arm[90], but yet no studies have been performed for the identification on this locus.

IBD9

The CC-chemokine receptor 5 *(CCR5)* gene located on chromosome 3p21 coincides with this IBD susceptibility locus identified by genome-wide scanning[91]. The CCR5 is the receptor for regulated and normal T-cell expressed and secreted (RANTES), a natural pro-inflammatory cytokine. A 32-bp deletion (A32) in the CCR5 gene results in a nonfunctional receptor found with a high

frequency in Caucasians. They found an association between CCR5delta32 homozygosity and the presence of anal lesions in CD patients with statistical significance[92]. Several genes located in these regions are still under research (Table 1).

GENES INVOLVED IN THE INNATE IMMUNE RESPONSE

Toll like receptors

Rising evidence suggests an essential role of the enteric bacterial flora in the pathogenesis of IBD. Rather than a passive barrier, the intestinal epithelium is an active participant in the mucosal immune response through its expression of proinflammatory genes, secretion of inflammatory cytokines, and recruitment of inflammatory cells in response to pathogenic bacteria and their products[93]. IBD has been increasingly thought to result from an aberrant interaction between the environment and the genetically susceptible host. Specifically, several lines of evidence point to a deregulation of the immune response to a commensal or uncharacterized pathogenic bacterium in the gut[94]. Animal models have demonstrated that genes involved in the regulation of the immune response are likely to play a crucial role in the genetic predisposition to IBD[95]. The family of Toll-like receptors *(TLR)* recognizes pathogen-associated molecular patterns and activates signal transduction pathways of the innate immune response genes including NFκB[95]. The SNPs involved in bacterial recognition are becoming essential in understanding individual responses to bacterial components and defining genetic backgrounds at risk of IBD.

Toll-like receptor 4: The toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4) gene is located on the long arm of human chromosome 9 and it identifies lipopolysaccharides (LPS) on gram-negative bacteria. It has been found strongly upregulated in IBD, and it binds to LPS together with CD14 and by internalization prevents inappropriate NFκB activation[96]. The TLR4 Asp299Gly polymorphism has been associated with CD and UC in a Belgian study[97]. On the other hand this SNP was exclusively related to CD in other series[97-102] and TLR4 polymorphism Thr399Ile was exclusively associated with UC in others[99]. A lipid A-mimetic CRX-526 with antagonistic activity for TLR4, is known to block the interaction of LPS with the immune system, therefore, CRX-526 can prevent the expression of proinflammatory genes stimulated by LPS *in vitro*. This disturbed activation of the innate immune system by bacterial antigens may be crucial in some patients with IBD.

TLR1, TLR2, and TLR6: Pierik *et al*[100] studied the nonsynonymous polymorphisms in other TLR genes in IBD. They found no SNP was involved in disease susceptibility, and a number of variants influenced the disease phenotype, however, they found a positive association between TLR1 R80T and TLR2 R753G and pancolitis in UC. TLR2 and its cofactors TLR1 and TLR6 are involved in the initial immune response to bacteria and recognition of peptidoglycan. This TLR2 is required for recognition of Gram-positive and mycobacterial pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) including bacterial lipopeptide lipoteichoic acid (LTA), peptidoglycan (PGN) and the mutations associated are involved in severe mycobacterial infections[103-109]. Further studies have shown that combinations of TLR molecules are required for recognition of certain PAMPs and that specifically, combined expression of TLR2 and TLR6 is required for recognition of PGN[110-114].

It is suggested that TLR1 may be regulated diversely in inflammation to down-regulate or enhance the response to certain TLR2 ligands and that a relative absence of TLR2 protein expression may be important in preventing chronic proinflammatory cytokine secretion in response to commensal Gram-positive bacteria in the gut[95].

TLR5: *TLR5* gene is located on the short arm of human chromosome 1 and is responsible for recognizing a protein named flagellin which is found in intestinal bacteria[113]. Lodes *et al*[113] observed through serological studies a strong response to flagellin in multiple animal models of colitis and synergism has been identified between NOD2 and TLR5 signaling[114]. The dominant negative variant of TLR5 (TLR5-stop) seems to protect against the development of CD and results in significant reduction of IgA and IgE circulating antibodies against flagellin[115], suggesting that pharmacological blockade of TLR5 has potential in the treatment of CD.

NOD1/CARD4 gene

Located on chromosome 7p14, *NOD1/CARD4* gene is one of the three human NOD-LLR proteins that has similar structure to NOD2/CARD15, having only one CARD domain, a central NOD domain and a leucine rich repeat region (LLR). Its function is the recognition of gram negative bacterial products such as γ-glutamine diaminopimelic acid and plays a role in colonic epithelial defense against the intracellular pathogens *E.coli* and *Shigella flexeneri*. Its effector domain is associated with Ripk2 (a CARD-containing interleukin-1 beta converting enzyme-associated kinase) mediating NFκB activation. In a recent study of 556 patients with IBD (294 CD and 252 UC), an association between the variant rs695857 in nucleotides 30, 258 and 950 of NOD1 and the development of IBD was found. Another variant known as rs2907748 in nucleotides 30, 246 and 263 was also associated with the presence of UC and CD and even with the early onset of the disease (< 25 years)[116]. These genetic variants of NOD1 have shown to be associated with disease susceptibility supporting that impaired local immunity might influence bacterial proliferation and aberrant immune responses in the host.

CCL20

CC-chemokine ligand 20 (CCL20) gene is located on the short arm of human chromosome 2 and codifies for the CCL20 cytokine ligand, which is responsible for the chemoattraction of immature dendritic cells that express CCR6 receptor on the intestinal epithelium and on Peyer's plaques[117], and also attracts memory T lymphocytes.

Microarray analysis and PCR-RT quantification have shown a rise in the expression of mRNA from IBD biopsies with inflammation compared to normal biopsies[118]. A study made in Korean UC patients showed that the expression of CCL20 was significantly up-regulated in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells compared with those of normal healthy controls. Interestingly, untreated UC groups expressed higher levels of CCL20 mRNA than treated UC and normal control groups, therefore suggesting that CCL20 could be modulated by anti-inflammatory drugs[119].

Interleukin 11

IL-11 mediates anti-inflammatory effects and is able to downregulate LPS-induced NFκB activation. The IL-11 gene is therefore a good candidate involved in genetic predisposition to IBD. Klein *et al*[120] evaluated the role of IL-11 in IBD, finding decreased expression and a failure to downregulate NFκB expression that could play an important role in the pathogenesis of UC.

Interleukin 18

IL-18 is a pleiotropic cytokine that induces the production of IFNγ and also regulates Th2 cytokines. It seems to be an important cytokine involved in the pathogenesis of IBD, apparently because SNPs at the 5'-end of IL-18 gene might be closely related to the etiology of IBD. Takagawa *et al*[121] found that IL-18 gene promoter polymorphisms may be related to the extent of disease in UC patients.

Interleukin 23

IL-23 is a heterodimeric cytokine composed of a p19 subunit and the p40 subunit of IL-12. It is produced by macrophages and dendritic cells, and activates memory T cells. Interleukin-12 (IL-12) is composed of p35 and p40 subunits and acts as an important factor for the differentiation of naive T cells into T-helper type 1 CD4+ lymphocytes secreting interferon-gamma. Therefore it has been reported that IL-12 is crucial for T-cell-dependent immune and inflammatory responses through the use of IL-12 p40 gene-targeted mice and neutralizing antibodies against p40[122-127]. Apparently IL-12 is a key factor driving Th1 responses and IFN production in the initial phases of an immune response, but conversely IL-12 may play a subsequent immunoregulatory role in late-stage inflammation at a point when IL-23 strongly supports the inflammatory process. IL-23 induces the production of IL-17 by a unique subset of memory T cells. IL-17 is known to stimulate fibroblasts, endothelial cells, macrophages and epithelial cells to secrete multiple pro-inflammatory mediators[128] and the local production of IL-17 causes site-specific activation of inflammatory cells[129-132]. Dendritic cells found in the lamina propria of the small intestine were described as constitutively expressing IL-23[131], whereas IL-23 regulates a highly potent T cell-derived cytokine that has major actions on the immune system. IL-23 specifically stimulates memory CD4+T cells contrasting the IL-12 which is a stimulant for naive CD4+ T cells[129,130]. Studies with IL-23 deficient mice show that IL-23 is essential for the manifestation of intestinal inflammation and a dominant role for IL-23 over IL-12 in central nervous system and joint autoimmune inflammation has been described. These findings point to IL-23, but not IL-12, as the necessary mediator for organ specific autoimmune diseases development. Furthermore, the absence of IL-12 results in more severe disease, reflected in elevated and prolonged expression of proinflammatory cytokines. Yen and colleagues[132] reported that the activation of tissue-homing memory T cells by IL-23 is responsible for chronic inflammatory disease.

CONCLUSION

Genetic research in IBD has provided knowledge about the complexity and heterogeneity of the disease and started to correlate the interactions between genetic and environmental risk factors in IBD; however, the complex genetic background that allows the development of IBD is not fully understood.

Understanding the pathways in which genetic factors influence IBD will uncover pathogenesis of the disease, offer more accurate diagnosis and ultimately lead to the breakthrough of better new drugs and therapies. Most of the important advances toward understanding this process have been identification of specific genetic associations with IBD, which will shed new light on future research of IBD.

REFERENCES

1 **Podolsky DK.** Inflammatory bowel disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 417-429

2 **Satsangi J**, Morecroft J, Shah NB, Nimmo E. Genetics of inflammatory bowel disease: scientific and clinical implications. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **17**: 3-18

3 **Hugot JP**, Laurent-Puig P, Gower-Rousseau C, Olson JM, Lee JC, Beaugerie L, Naom I, Dupas JL, Van Gossum A, Orholm M, Bonaiti-Pellie C, Weissenbach J, Mathew CG, Lennard-Jones JE, Cortot A, Colombel JF, Thomas G. Mapping of a susceptibility locus for Crohn's disease on chromosome 16. *Nature* 1996; **379**: 821-823

4 **Hampe J**, Schreiber S, Shaw SH, Lau KF, Bridger S, Macpherson AJ, Cardon LR, Sakul H, Harris TJ, Buckler A, Hall J, Stokkers P, van Deventer SJ, Nürnberg P, Mirza MM, Lee JC, Lennard-Jones JE, Mathew CG, Curran ME. A genomewide analysis provides evidence for novel linkages in inflammatory bowel disease in a large European cohort. *Am J Hum Genet* 1999; **64**: 808-816

5 **Williams CN**, Kocher K, Lander ES, Daly MJ, Rioux JD. Using a genome-wide scan and meta-analysis to identify a novel IBD locus and confirm previously identified IBD loci. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2002; **8**: 375-381

6 **Barmada MM**, Brant SR, Nicolae DL, Achkar JP, Panhuysen CI, Bayless TM, Cho JH, Duerr RH. A genome scan in 260 inflammatory bowel disease-affected relative pairs. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10**: 15-22

7 **Ogura Y**, Bonen DK, Inohara N, Nicolae DL, Chen FF, Ramos R, Britton H, Moran T, Karaliuskas R, Duerr RH, Achkar JP, Brant SR, Bayless TM, Kirschner BS, Hanauer SB, Nuñez G, Cho JH. A frameshift mutation in NOD2 associated with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 603-606

8 **Hugot JP**, Chamaillard M, Zouali H, Lesage S, Cézard JP, Belaiche J, Almer S, Tysk C, O'Morain CA, Gassull M, Binder V, Finkel Y, Cortot A, Modigliani R, Laurent-Puig P, Gower-Rousseau C, Macry J, Colombel JF, Sahbatou M, Thomas G. Association of NOD2 leucine-rich repeat variants with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 599-603

9 **Hampe J**, Cuthbert A, Croucher PJ, Mirza MM, Mascheretti

S, Fisher S, Frenzel H, King K, Hasselmeyer A, MacPherson AJ, Bridger S, van Deventer S, Forbes A, Nikolaus S, Lennard-Jones JE, Foelsch UR, Krawczak M, Lewis C, Schreiber S, Mathew CG. Association between insertion mutation in NOD2 gene and Crohn's disease in German and British populations. *Lancet* 2001; **357**: 1925-1928

10 **Hampe J**, Frenzel H, Mirza MM, Croucher PJ, Cuthbert A, Mascheretti S, Huse K, Platzer M, Bridger S, Meyer B, Nürnberg P, Stokkers P, Krawczak M, Mathew CG, Curran M, Schreiber S. Evidence for a NOD2-independent susceptibility locus for inflammatory bowel disease on chromosome 16p. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99:** 321-326

11 **Lesage S**, Zouali H, Cézard JP, Colombel JF, Belaiche J, Almer S, Tysk C, O'Morain C, Gassull M, Binder V, Finkel Y, Modigliani R, Gower-Rousseau C, Macry J, Merlin F, Chamaillard M, Jannot AS, Thomas G, Hugot JP. CARD15/NOD2 mutational analysis and genotype-phenotype correlation in 612 patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Hum Genet* 2002; **70**: 845-857

12 **Rosenstiel P**, Fantini M, Bräutigam K, Kühbacher T, Waetzig GH, Seegert D, Schreiber S. TNF-alpha and IFN-gamma regulate the expression of the NOD2 (CARD15) gene in human intestinal epithelial cells. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 1001-1009

13 **Gutierrez O**, Pipaon C, Inohara N, Fontalba A, Ogura Y, Prosper F, Nuñez G, Fernandez-Luna JL. Induction of Nod2 in myelomonocytic and intestinal epithelial cells via nuclear factor-kappa B activation. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 41701-41705

14 **Török HP**, Glas J, Lohse P, Folwaczny C. Alterations of the CARD15/NOD2 gene and the impact on management and treatment of Crohn's disease patients. *Dig Dis* 2003; **21**: 339-345

15 **Harton JA**, Linhoff MW, Zhang J, Ting JP. Cutting edge: CATERPILLER: a large family of mammalian genes containing CARD, pyrin, nucleotide-binding, and leucine-rich repeat domains. *J Immunol* 2002; **169**: 4088-4093

16 **Kobayashi KS**, Chamaillard M, Ogura Y, Henegariu O, Inohara N, Nuñez G, Flavell RA. Nod2-dependent regulation of innate and adaptive immunity in the intestinal tract. *Science* 2005; **307**: 731-734

17 **Wehkamp J**, Harder J, Weichenthal M, Schwab M, Schäffeler E, Schlee M, Herrlinger KR, Stallmach A, Noack F, Fritz P, Schröder JM, Bevins CL, Fellermann K, Stange EF. NOD2 (CARD15) mutations in Crohn's disease are associated with diminished mucosal alpha-defensin expression. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1658-1664

18 **Ogura Y**, Inohara N, Benito A, Chen FF, Yamaoka S, Nuñez G. Nod2, a Nod1/Apaf-1 family member that is restricted to monocytes and activates NF-kappaB. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 4812-4818

19 **Hisamatsu T**, Suzuki M, Reinecker HC, Nadeau WJ, McCormick BA, Podolsky DK. CARD15/NOD2 functions as an antibacterial factor in human intestinal epithelial cells. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 993-1000

20 **McDonald C**, Chen FF, Ollendorff V, Ogura Y, Marchetto S, Lécine P, Borg JP, Nuñez G. A role for Erbin in the regulation of Nod2-dependent NF-kappaB signaling. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 40301-40309

21 **Yamamoto-Furusho JK**, Barnich N, Xavier R, Hisamatsu T, Podolsky DK. Centaurin beta1 down-regulates nucleotide-binding oligomerization domains 1- and 2-dependent NF-kappaB activation. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 36060-36070

22 **Watanabe T**, Kitani A, Murray PJ, Strober W. NOD2 is a negative regulator of Toll-like receptor 2-mediated T helper type 1 responses. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 800-808

23 **Ahmad T**, Armuzzi A, Bunce M, Mulcahy-Hawes K, Marshall SE, Orchard TR, Crawshaw J, Large O, de Silva A, Cook JT, Barnardo M, Cullen S, Welsh KI, Jewell DP. The molecular classification of the clinical manifestations of Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 854-866

24 **Büning C**, Genschel J, Bühner S, Krüger S, Kling K, Dignass A, Baier P, Bochow B, Ockenga J, Schmidt HH, Lochs H. Mutations in the NOD2/CARD15 gene in Crohn's disease are associated with ileocecal resection and are a risk factor for reoperation. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 1073-1078

25 **Kugathasan S**, Collins N, Maresso K, Hoffmann RG, Stephens M, Werlin SL, Rudolph C, Broeckel U. CARD15 gene mutations and risk for early surgery in pediatric-onset Crohn's disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **2**: 1003-1009

26 **Sun L**, Roesler J, Rösen-Wolff A, Winkler U, Koch R, Thürigen A, Henker J. CARD15 genotype and phenotype analysis in 55 pediatric patients with Crohn disease from Saxony, Germany. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2003; **37**: 492-497

27 **Parkes M**, Barmada MM, Satsangi J, Weeks DE, Jewell DP, Duerr RH. The IBD2 locus shows linkage heterogeneity between ulcerative colitis and Crohn disease. *Am J Hum Genet* 2000; **67**: 1605-1610

28 **Cantorna MT**, Mahon BD. Mounting evidence for vitamin D as an environmental factor affecting autoimmune disease prevalence. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2004; **229**: 1136-1142

29 **Cantorna MT**, Munsick C, Bemiss C, Mahon BD. 1,25-Dihy droxycholecalciferol prevents and ameliorates symptoms of experimental murine inflammatory bowel disease. *J Nutr* 2000; **130**: 2648-2652

30 **Froicu M**, Weaver V, Wynn TA, McDowell MA, Welsh JE, Cantorna MT. A crucial role for the vitamin D receptor in experimental inflammatory bowel diseases. *Mol Endocrinol* 2003; **17**: 2386-2392

31 **Morrison NA**, Qi JC, Tokita A, Kelly PJ, Crofts L, Nguyen TV, Sambrook PN, Eisman JA. Prediction of bone density from vitamin D receptor alleles. *Nature* 1994; **367**: 284-287

32 **Gross C**, Eccleshall TR, Malloy PJ, Villa ML, Marcus R, Feldman D. The presence of a polymorphism at the translation initiation site of the vitamin D receptor gene is associated with low bone mineral density in postmenopausal Mexican-American women. *J Bone Miner Res* 1996; **11**: 1850-1855

33 **Wood RJ**, Fleet JC. The genetics of osteoporosis: vitamin D receptor polymorphisms. *Annu Rev Nutr* 1998; **18**: 233-258

34 **Ingles SA**, Ross RK, Yu MC, Irvine RA, La Pera G, Haile RW, Coetzee GA. Association of prostate cancer risk with genetic polymorphisms in vitamin D receptor and androgen receptor. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1997; **89**: 166-170

35 **Simmons JD**, Mullighan C, Welsh KI, Jewell DP. Vitamin D receptor gene polymorphism: association with Crohn's disease susceptibility. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 211-214

36 **Dresner-Pollak R**, Ackerman Z, Eliakim R, Karban A, Chowers Y, Fidder HH. The BsmI vitamin D receptor gene polymorphism is associated with ulcerative colitis in Jewish Ashkenazi patients. *Genet Test* 2004; **8**: 417-420

37 **Noguchi M**, Hiwatashi N, Liu Z, Toyota T. Enhanced interferon-gamma production and B7-2 expression in isolated intestinal mononuclear cells from patients with Crohn's disease. *J Gastroenterol* 1995; **30** Suppl 8: 52-55

38 **Agnholt J**, Dahlerup JF, Buntzen S, Tøttrup A, Nielsen SL, Lundorf E. Response, relapse and mucosal immune regulation after infliximab treatment in fistulating Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 703-710

39 **Cantor MJ**, Nickerson P, Bernstein CN. The role of cytokine gene polymorphisms in determining disease susceptibility and phenotype in inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 1134-1142

40 **Leeb SN**, Vogl D, Gunckel M, Kiessling S, Falk W, Göke M, Schölmerich J, Gelbmann CM, Rogler G. Reduced migration of fibroblasts in inflammatory bowel disease: role of inflammatory mediators and focal adhesion kinase. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1341-1354

41 **van Heel DA**, Fisher SA, Kirby A, Daly MJ, Rioux JD, Lewis CM. Inflammatory bowel disease susceptibility loci defined by genome scan meta-analysis of 1952 affected relative pairs. *Hum Mol Genet* 2004; **13**: 763-770

42 **Yamamoto-Furusho JK**. Immunogenetics of chronic ulcerative colitis. *Rev Invest Clin* 2003; **55**: 705-710

43 **Das H**, Groh V, Kuijl C, Sugita M, Morita CT, Spies T, Bukowski JF. MICA engagement by human Vgamma2Vdelta2 T cells enhances their antigen-dependent effector function. *Immunity* 2001; **15**: 83-93

44 **Seki SS**, Sugimura K, Ota M, Matsuzawa J, Katsuyama Y,

Ishizuka K, Mochizuki T, Suzuki K, Yoneyama O, Mizuki N, Honma T, Inoko H, Asakura H. Stratification analysis of MICA triplet repeat polymorphisms and HLA antigens associated with ulcerative colitis in Japanese. *Tissue Antigens* 2001; **58**: 71-76

45 **Powrie F**, Leach MW, Mauze S, Caddle LB, Coffman RL. Phenotypically distinct subsets of CD4+ T cells induce or protect from chronic intestinal inflammation in C. B-17 scid mice. *Int Immunol* 1993; **5**: 1461-1471

46 **Stokkers PC**, Reitsma PH, Tytgat GN, van Deventer SJ. HLA-DR and -DQ phenotypes in inflammatory bowel disease: a meta-analysis. *Gut* 1999; **45**: 395-401

47 **Yamamoto-Furusho JK**, Uscanga LF, Vargas-Alarcón G, Ruiz-Morales JA, Higuera L, Cutiño T, Rodríguez-Pérez JM, Villarreal-Garza C, Granados J. Clinical and genetic heterogeneity in Mexican patients with ulcerative colitis. *Hum Immunol* 2003; **64**: 119-123

48 **Murch SH**, Lamkin VA, Savage MO, Walker-Smith JA, MacDonald TT. Serum concentrations of tumour necrosis factor alpha in childhood chronic inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 913-917

49 **Reimund JM**, Wittersheim C, Dumont S, Muller CD, Baumann R, Poindron P, Duclos B. Mucosal inflammatory cytokine production by intestinal biopsies in patients with ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. *J Clin Immunol* 1996; **16**: 144-150

50 **Bouma G**, Xia B, Crusius JB, Bioque G, Koutroubakis I, Von Blomberg BM, Meuwissen SG, Peña AS. Distribution of four polymorphisms in the tumour necrosis factor (TNF) genes in patients with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). *Clin Exp Immunol* 1996; **103**: 391-396

51 **Louis E**, Satsangi J, Roussomoustakaki M, Parkes M, Fanning G, Welsh K, Jewell D. Cytokine gene polymorphisms in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 1996; **39**: 705-710

52 **Bouma G**, Crusius JB, García-González MA, Meijer BU, Hellemans HP, Hakvoort RJ, Schreuder GM, Kostense PJ, Meuwissen SG, Peña AS. Genetic markers in clinically well defined patients with ulcerative colitis (UC). *Clin Exp Immunol* 1999; **115**: 294-300

53 **Yamamoto-Furusho JK**, Uscanga LF, Vargas-Alarcón G, Rodríguez-Pérez JM, Zuñiga J, Granados J. Polymorphisms in the promoter region of tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-alpha) and the HLA-DRB1 locus in Mexican mestizo patients with ulcerative colitis. *Immunol Lett* 2004; **95**: 31-35

54 **Yamamoto-Furusho JK**, Cantú C, Vargas-Alarcón G, Andrade F, Zúñiga J, Rodriguez J, Boom R, Granados J. Complotype SC30 is associated with susceptibility to develop ulcerative colitis in Mexicans. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1998; **27**: 178-179

55 **Duerr RH**, Barmada MM, Zhang L, Pfützer R, Weeks DE. High-density genome scan in Crohn disease shows confirmed linkage to chromosome 14q11-12. *Am J Hum Genet* 2000; **66**: 1857-1862

56 **Vermeire S**, Rutgeerts P, Van Steen K, Joossens S, Claessens G, Pierik M, Peeters M, Vlietinck R. Genome wide scan in a Flemish inflammatory bowel disease population: support for the IBD4 locus, population heterogeneity, and epistasis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 980-986

57 **Owyang AM**, Zaph C, Wilson EH, Guild KJ, McClanahan T, Miller HR, Cua DJ, Goldschmidt M, Hunter CA, Kastelein RA, Artis D. Interleukin 25 regulates type 2 cytokine-dependent immunity and limits chronic inflammation in the gastrointestinal tract. *J Exp Med* 2006; **203**: 843-849

58 **McGovern DP**, Van Heel DA, Negoro K, Ahmad T, Jewell DP. Further evidence of IBD5/CARD15 (NOD2) epistasis in the susceptibility to ulcerative colitis. *Am J Hum Genet* 2003; **73**: 1465-1466

59 **Rioux JD**, Silverberg MS, Daly MJ, Steinhart AH, McLeod RS, Griffiths AM, Green T, Brettin TS, Stone V, Bull SB, Bitton A, Williams CN, Greenberg GR, Cohen Z, Lander ES, Hudson TJ, Siminovitch KA. Genomewide search in Canadian families with inflammatory bowel disease reveals two novel susceptibility loci. *Am J Hum Genet* 2000; **66**: 1863-1870

60 **Armuzzi A**, Ahmad T, Ling KL, de Silva A, Cullen S, van Heel D, Orchard TR, Welsh KI, Marshall SE, Jewell DP. Genotype-phenotype analysis of the Crohn's disease susceptibility haplotype on chromosome 5q31. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1133-1139

61 **Vermeire S**, Pierik M, Hlavaty T, Claessens G, van Schuerbeeck N, Joossens S, Ferrante M, Henckaerts L, Bueno de Mesquita M, Vlietinck R, Rutgeerts P. Association of organic cation transporter risk haplotype with perianal penetrating Crohn's disease but not with susceptibility to IBD. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 1845-1853

62 **Walters TD**, Silverberg MS. Genetics of inflammatory bowel disease: current status and future directions. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2006; **20**: 633-639

63 **Giallourakis C**, Stoll M, Miller K, Hampe J, Lander ES, Daly MJ, Schreiber S, Rioux JD. IBD5 is a general risk factor for inflammatory bowel disease: replication of association with Crohn disease and identification of a novel association with ulcerative colitis. *Am J Hum Genet* 2003; **73**: 205-211

64 **Török HP**, Glas J, Tonenchi L, Lohse P, Müller-Myhsok B, Limbersky O, Neugebauer C, Schnitzler F, Seiderer J, Tillack C, Brand S, Brünnler G, Jagiello P, Epplen JT, Griga T, Klein W, Schiemann U, Folwaczny M, Ochsenkühn T, Folwaczny C. Polymorphisms in the DLG5 and OCTN cation transporter genes in Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1421-1427

65 **Noble CL**, Nimmo ER, Drummond H, Ho GT, Tenesa A, Smith L, Anderson N, Arnott ID, Satsangi J. The contribution of OCTN1/2 variants within the IBD5 locus to disease susceptibility and severity in Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 1854-1864

66 **Russell RK**, Drummond HE, Nimmo ER, Anderson NH, Noble CL, Wilson DC, Gillett PM, McGrogan P, Hassan K, Weaver LT, Bisset WM, Mahdi G, Satsangi J. Analysis of the influence of OCTN1/2 variants within the IBD5 locus on disease susceptibility and growth indices in early onset inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1114-1123

67 **Peltekova VD**, Wintle RF, Rubin LA, Amos CI, Huang Q, Gu X, Newman B, Van Oene M, Cescon D, Greenberg G, Griffiths AM, St George-Hyslop PH, Siminovitch KA. Functional variants of OCTN cation transporter genes are associated with Crohn disease. *Nat Genet* 2004; **36**: 471-475

68 **Newman B**, Gu X, Wintle R, Cescon D, Yazdanpanah M, Liu X, Peltekova V, Van Oene M, Amos CI, Siminovitch KA. A risk haplotype in the Solute Carrier Family 22A4/22A5 gene cluster influences phenotypic expression of Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 260-269

69 **Mirza MM**, Fisher SA, King K, Cuthbert AP, Hampe J, Sanderson J, Mansfield J, Donaldson P, Macpherson AJ, Forbes A, Schreiber S, Lewis CM, Mathew CG. Genetic evidence for interaction of the 5q31 cytokine locus and the CARD15 gene in Crohn disease. *Am J Hum Genet* 2003; **72**: 1018-1022

70 **Peeters M**, Geypens B, Claus D, Nevens H, Ghoos Y, Verbeke G, Baert F, Vermeire S, Vlietinck R, Rutgeerts P. Clustering of increased small intestinal permeability in families with Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 802-807

71 **Stoll M**, Corneliussen B, Costello CM, Waetzig GH, Mellgard B, Koch WA, Rosenstiel P, Albrecht M, Croucher PJ, Seegert D, Nikolaus S, Hampe J, Lengauer T, Pierrou S, Foelsch UR, Mathew CG, Lagerstrom-Fermer M, Schreiber S. Genetic variation in DLG5 is associated with inflammatory bowel disease. *Nat Genet* 2004; **36**: 476-480

72 **Daly MJ**, Pearce AV, Farwell L, Fisher SA, Latiano A, Prescott NJ, Forbes A, Mansfield J, Sanderson J, Langelier D, Cohen A, Bitton A, Wild G, Lewis CM, Annese V, Mathew CG, Rioux JD. Association of DLG5 R30Q variant with inflammatory bowel disease. *Eur J Hum Genet* 2005; **13**: 835-839

73 **Friedrichs F**, Brescianini S, Annese V, Latiano A, Berger K, Kugathasan S, Broeckel U, Nikolaus S, Daly MJ, Schreiber S, Rioux JD, Stoll M. Evidence of transmission ratio distortion of DLG5 R30Q variant in general and implication of an association with Crohn disease in men. *Hum Genet* 2006; **119**: 305-311

74 **Bodor M**, Kelly EJ, Ho RJ. Characterization of the human MDR1 gene. *AAPS J* 2005; **7**: E1-E5

75 **Brant SR**, Panhuysen CI, Nicolae D, Reddy DM, Bonen DK, Karaliukas R, Zhang L, Swanson E, Datta LW, Moran T,

Ravenhill G, Duerr RH, Achkar JP, Karban AS, Cho JH. MDR1 Ala893 polymorphism is associated with inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Hum Genet* 2003; **73**: 1282-1292

76 **Glas J**, Török HP, Schiemann U, Folwaczny C. MDR1 gene polymorphism in ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 367

77 **Ho GT**, Nimmo ER, Tenesa A, Fennell J, Drummond H, Mowat C, Arnott ID, Satsangi J. Allelic variations of the multidrug resistance gene determine susceptibility and disease behavior in ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 288-296

78 **Wang D**, Sadée W. Searching for polymorphisms that affect gene expression and mRNA processing: example ABCB1 (MDR1). *AAPS J* 2006; **8**: E515-E520

79 **Farrell RJ**, Kelleher D. Glucocorticoid resistance in inflammatory bowel disease. *J Endocrinol* 2003; **178**: 339-346

80 **Cucchiara S**, Latiano A, Palmieri O, Canani RB, D'Incà R, Guariso G, Vieni G, De Venuto D, Riegler G, De'Angelis GL, Guagnozzi D, Bascietto C, Miele E, Valvano MR, Bossa F, Annese V. Polymorphisms of tumor necrosis factor-alpha but not MDR1 influence response to medical therapy in pediatric-onset inflammatory bowel disease. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2007; **44**: 171-179

81 **McAlindon ME**, Mahida YR. Pro-inflammatory cytokines in inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1996; **10** Suppl 2: 72-74

82 **Mahida YR**, Kurlac L, Gallagher A, Hawkey CJ. High circulating concentrations of interleukin-6 in active Crohn's disease but not ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 1531-1534

83 **Ma Y**, Ohmen JD, Li Z, Bentley LG, McElree C, Pressman S, Targan SR, Fischel-Ghodsian N, Rotter JI, Yang H. A genome-wide search identifies potential new susceptibility loci for Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 1999; **5**: 271-278

84 **Low JH**, Williams FA, Yang X, Cullen S, Colley J, Ling KL, Armuzzi A, Ahmad T, Neville MJ, Dechairo BM, Walton R, Lench NJ, Jewell DP. Inflammatory bowel disease is linked to 19p13 and associated with ICAM-1. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10**: 173-181

85 **Marek A**, Brodzicki J, Liberek A, Korzon M. TGF-beta (transforming growth factor-beta) in chronic inflammatory conditions - a new diagnostic and prognostic marker? *Med Sci Monit* 2002; **8**: RA145-RA151

86 **Yamagiwa S**, Gray JD, Hashimoto S, Horwitz DA. A role for TGF-beta in the generation and expansion of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells from human peripheral blood. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 7282-7289

87 **Lee YJ**, Han Y, Lu HT, Nguyen V, Qin H, Howe PH, Hocevar BA, Boss JM, Ransohoff RM, Benveniste EN. TGF-beta suppresses IFN-gamma induction of class II MHC gene expression by inhibiting class II transactivator messenger RNA expression. *J Immunol* 1997; **158**: 2065-2075

88 **McKaig BC**, Hughes K, Tighe PJ, Mahida YR. Differential expression of TGF-beta isoforms by normal and inflammatory bowel disease intestinal myofibroblasts. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2002; **282**: C172-C182

89 **Fell JM**, Paintin M, Arnaud-Battandier F, Beattie RM, Hollis A, Kitching P, Donnet-Hughes A, MacDonald TT, Walker-Smith JA. Mucosal healing and a fall in mucosal pro-inflammatory cytokine mRNA induced by a specific oral polymeric diet in paediatric Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 281-289

90 **Brant SR**, Shugart YY. Inflammatory bowel disease gene hunting by linkage analysis: rationale, methodology, and present status of the field. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10**: 300-311

91 **Satsangi J**, Parkes M, Louis E, Hashimoto L, Kato N, Welsh K, Terwilliger JD, Lathrop GM, Bell JI, Jewell DP. Two stage genome-wide search in inflammatory bowel disease provides evidence for susceptibility loci on chromosomes 3, 7 and 12. *Nat Genet* 1996; **14**: 199-202

92 **Rector A**, Vermeire S, Thoelen I, Keyaerts E, Struyf F, Vlietinck R, Rutgeerts P, Van Ranst M. Analysis of the CC chemokine receptor 5 (CCR5) delta-32 polymorphism in inflammatory bowel disease. *Hum Genet* 2001; **108**: 190-193

93 **De Jager PL**, Franchimont D, Waliszewska A, Bitton A, Cohen A, Langelier D, Belaiche J, Vermeire S, Farwell L, Goris A, Libioulle C, Jani N, Dassopoulos T, Bromfield GP, Dubois B, Cho JH, Brant SR, Duerr RH, Yang H, Rotter JI, Silverberg MS, Steinhart AH, Daly MJ, Podolsky DK, Louis E, Hafler DA, Rioux JD. The role of the Toll receptor pathway in susceptibility to inflammatory bowel diseases. *Genes Immun* 2007; **8**: 387-397

94 **Melmed G**, Thomas LS, Lee N, Tesfay SY, Lukasek K, Michelsen KS, Zhou Y, Hu B, Arditi M, Abreu MT. Human intestinal epithelial cells are broadly unresponsive to Toll-like receptor 2-dependent bacterial ligands: implications for host-microbial interactions in the gut. *J Immunol* 2003; **170**: 1406-1415

95 **Strober W**, Lúdvíksson BR, Fuss IJ. The pathogenesis of mucosal inflammation in murine models of inflammatory bowel disease and Crohn disease. *Ann Intern Med* 1998; **128**: 848-856

96 **Kopp EB**, Medzhitov R. The Toll-receptor family and control of innate immunity. *Curr Opin Immunol* 1999; **11**: 13-18

97 **Ouburg S**, Mallant-Hent R, Crusius JB, van Bodegraven AA, Mulder CJ, Linskens R, Peña AS, Morré SA. The toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4) Asp299Gly polymorphism is associated with colonic localisation of Crohn's disease without a major role for the Saccharomyces cerevisiae mannan-LBP-CD14-TLR4 pathway. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 439-440

98 **Török HP**, Glas J, Tonenchi L, Mussack T, Folwaczny C. Polymorphisms of the lipopolysaccharide-signaling complex in inflammatory bowel disease: association of a mutation in the Toll-like receptor 4 gene with ulcerative colitis. *Clin Immunol* 2004; **112**: 85-91

99 **Fort MM**, Mozaffarian A, Stöver AG, Correia Jda S, Johnson DA, Crane RT, Ulevitch RJ, Persing DH, Bielefeldt-Ohmann H, Probst P, Jeffery E, Fling SP, Hershberg RM. A synthetic TLR4 antagonist has anti-inflammatory effects in two murine models of inflammatory bowel disease. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 6416-6423

100 **Pierik M**, Joossens S, Van Steen K, Van Schuerbeek N, Vlietinck R, Rutgeerts P, Vermeire S. Toll-like receptor-1, -2, and -6 polymorphisms influence disease extension in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2006; **12**: 1-8

101 **Franchimont D**, Vermeire S, El Housni H, Pierik M, Van Steen K, Gustot T, Quertinmont E, Abramowicz M, Van Gossum A, Devière J, Rutgeerts P. Deficient host-bacteria interactions in inflammatory bowel disease? The toll-like receptor (TLR)-4 Asp299gly polymorphism is associated with Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 987-992

102 **Gazouli M**, Mantzaris G, Kotsinas A, Zacharatos P, Papalambros E, Archimandritis A, Ikonomopoulos J, Gorgoulis VG. Association between polymorphisms in the Toll-like receptor 4, CD14, and CARD15/NOD2 and inflammatory bowel disease in the Greek population. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 681-685

103 **Schwandner R**, Dziarski R, Wesche H, Rothe M, Kirschning CJ. Peptidoglycan- and lipoteichoic acid-induced cell activation is mediated by toll-like receptor 2. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274**: 17406-17409

104 **Takeuchi O**, Hoshino K, Kawai T, Sanjo H, Takada H, Ogawa T, Takeda K, Akira S. Differential roles of TLR2 and TLR4 in recognition of gram-negative and gram-positive bacterial cell wall components. *Immunity* 1999; **11**: 443-451

105 **Yoshimura A**, Lien E, Ingalls RR, Tuomanen E, Dziarski R, Golenbock D. Cutting edge: recognition of Gram-positive bacterial cell wall components by the innate immune system occurs via Toll-like receptor 2. *J Immunol* 1999; **163**: 1-5

106 **Lien E**, Sellati TJ, Yoshimura A, Flo TH, Rawadi G, Finberg RW, Carroll JD, Espevik T, Ingalls RR, Radolf JD, Golenbock DT. Toll-like receptor 2 functions as a pattern recognition receptor for diverse bacterial products. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274**: 33419-33425

107 **Opitz B**, Schröder NW, Spreitzer I, Michelsen KS, Kirschning CJ, Hallatschek W, Zähringer U, Hartung T, Göbel UB, Schumann RR. Toll-like receptor-2 mediates Treponema glycolipid and lipoteichoic acid-induced NF-kappaB

translocation. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 22041-22047
108 **Means TK**, Jones BW, Schromm AB, Shurtleff BA, Smith JA, Keane J, Golenbock DT, Vogel SN, Fenton MJ. Differential effects of a Toll-like receptor antagonist on Mycobacterium tuberculosis-induced macrophage responses. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 4074-4082
109 **Jones BW**, Means TK, Heldwein KA, Keen MA, Hill PJ, Belisle JT, Fenton MJ. Different Toll-like receptor agonists induce distinct macrophage responses. *J Leukoc Biol* 2001; **69**: 1036-1044
110 **Ozinsky A**, Smith KD, Hume D, Underhill DM. Co-operative induction of pro-inflammatory signaling by Toll-like receptors. *J Endotoxin Res* 2000; **6**: 393-396
111 **Hajjar AM**, O'Mahony DS, Ozinsky A, Underhill DM, Aderem A, Klebanoff SJ, Wilson CB. Cutting edge: functional interactions between toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 and TLR1 or TLR6 in response to phenol-soluble modulin. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 15-19
112 **Hayashi F**, Smith KD, Ozinsky A, Hawn TR, Yi EC, Goodlett DR, Eng JK, Akira S, Underhill DM, Aderem A. The innate immune response to bacterial flagellin is mediated by Toll-like receptor 5. *Nature* 2001; **410**: 1099-1103
113 **Lodes MJ**, Cong Y, Elson CO, Mohamath R, Landers CJ, Targan SR, Fort M, Hershberg RM. Bacterial flagellin is a dominant antigen in Crohn disease. *J Clin Invest* 2004; **113**: 1296-1306
114. **Netea MG**, Ferwerda G, de Jong DJ, Jansen T, Jacobs L, Kramer M, Naber TH, Drenth JP, Girardin SE, Kullberg BJ, Adema GJ, Van der Meer JW. Nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-2 modulates specific TLR pathways for the induction of cytokine release. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 6518-6523
115 **Gewirtz AT**, Vijay-Kumar M, Brant SR, Duerr RH, Nicolae DL, Cho JH. Dominant-negative TLR5 polymorphism reduces adaptive immune response to flagellin and negatively associates with Crohn's disease. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2006; **290**: G1157-G1163
116 **McGovern DP**, Hysi P, Ahmad T, van Heel DA, Moffatt MF, Carey A, Cookson WO, Jewell DP. Association between a complex insertion/deletion polymorphism in NOD1 (CARD4) and susceptibility to inflammatory bowel disease. *Hum Mol Genet* 2005; **14**: 1245-1250
117 **Iwasaki A**, Kelsall BL. Localization of distinct Peyer's patch dendritic cell subsets and their recruitment by chemokines macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-3alpha, MIP-3beta, and secondary lymphoid organ chemokine. *J Exp Med* 2000; **191**: 1381-1394
118 **Puleston J**, Cooper M, Murch S, Bid K, Makh S, Ashwood P, Bingham AH, Green H, Moss P, Dhillon A, Morris R, Strobel S, Gelinas R, Pounder RE, Platt A. A distinct subset of chemokines dominates the mucosal chemokine response in inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **21**: 109-120
119 **Lee HJ**, Choi SC, Lee MH, Oh HM, Choi EY, Choi EJ, Yun KJ, Seo GS, Kim SW, Lee JG, Han WC, Park KI, Jun CD. Increased expression of MIP-3alpha/CCL20 in peripheral blood mononuclear cells from patients with ulcerative colitis and its down-regulation by sulfasalazine and glucocorticoid treatment. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 1070-1079
120 **Klein W**, Tromm A, Griga T, Fricke H, Folwaczny C, Hocke M, Eitner K, Marx M, Duerig N, Epplen JT. A polymorphism in the IL11 gene is associated with ulcerative colitis. *Genes Immun* 2002; **3**: 494-496
121 **Takagawa T**, Tamura K, Takeda N, Tomita T, Ohda Y, Fukunaga K, Hida N, Ohnishi K, Hori K, Kosaka T, Fukuda Y, Ikeuchi H, Yamamura T, Miwa H, Matsumoto T. Association between IL-18 gene promoter polymorphisms and inflammatory bowel disease in a Japanese population. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 1038-1043
122 **Berg DJ**, Davidson N, Kühn R, Müller W, Menon S, Holland G, Thompson-Snipes L, Leach MW, Rennick D. Enterocolitis and colon cancer in interleukin-10-deficient mice are associated with aberrant cytokine production and CD4(+) TH1-like responses. *J Clin Invest* 1996; **98**: 1010-1020
123 **Davidson NJ**, Hudak SA, Lesley RE, Menon S, Leach MW, Rennick DM. IL-12, but not IFN-gamma, plays a major role in sustaining the chronic phase of colitis in IL-10-deficient mice. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 3143-3149
124 **Neurath MF**, Fuss I, Kelsall BL, Stüber E, Strober W. Antibodies to interleukin 12 abrogate established experimental colitis in mice. *J Exp Med* 1995; **182**: 1281-1290
125 **Cua DJ**, Sherlock J, Chen Y, Murphy CA, Joyce B, Seymour B, Lucian L, To W, Kwan S, Churakova T, Zurawski S, Wiekowski M, Lira SA, Gorman D, Kastelein RA, Sedgwick JD. Interleukin-23 rather than interleukin-12 is the critical cytokine for autoimmune inflammation of the brain. *Nature* 2003; **421**: 744-748
126 **Murphy CA**, Langrish CL, Chen Y, Blumenschein W, McClanahan T, Kastelein RA, Sedgwick JD, Cua DJ. Divergent pro- and antiinflammatory roles for IL-23 and IL-12 in joint autoimmune inflammation. *J Exp Med* 2003; **198**: 1951-1957
127 **Langrish CL**, Chen Y, Blumenschein WM, Mattson J, Basham B, Sedgwick JD, McClanahan T, Kastelein RA, Cua DJ. IL-23 drives a pathogenic T cell population that induces autoimmune inflammation. *J Exp Med* 2005; **201**: 233-240
128 **Fossiez F**, Banchereau J, Murray R, Van Kooten C, Garrone P, Lebecque S. Interleukin-17. *Int Rev Immunol* 1998; **16**: 541-551
129 **Oppmann B**, Lesley R, Blom B, Timans JC, Xu Y, Hunte B, Vega F, Yu N, Wang J, Singh K, Zonin F, Vaisberg E, Churakova T, Liu M, Gorman D, Wagner J, Zurawski S, Liu Y, Abrams JS, Moore KW, Rennick D, de Waal-Malefyt R, Hannum C, Bazan JF, Kastelein RA. Novel p19 protein engages IL-12p40 to form a cytokine, IL-23, with biological activities similar as well as distinct from IL-12. *Immunity* 2000; **13**: 715-725
130 **Trinchieri G**. Proinflammatory and immunoregulatory functions of interleukin-12. *Int Rev Immunol* 1998; **16**: 365-396
131 **Becker C**, Wirtz S, Blessing M, Pirhonen J, Strand D, Bechthold O, Frick J, Galle PR, Autenrieth I, Neurath MF. Constitutive p40 promoter activation and IL-23 production in the terminal ileum mediated by dendritic cells. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **112**: 693-706
132 **Yen D**, Cheung J, Scheerens H, Poulet F, McClanahan T, McKenzie B, Kleinschek MA, Owyang A, Mattson J, Blumenschein W, Murphy E, Sathe M, Cua DJ, Kastelein RA, Rennick D. IL-23 is essential for T cell-mediated colitis and promotes inflammation via IL-17 and IL-6. *J Clin Invest* 2006; **116**: 1310-1316

S- Editor Zhu LH **L- Editor** Alpini GD **E- Editor** Li HY

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5571-5576
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Dr, *Series Editor*

Role of bacteria in the etiopathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease

Nicolas Barnich, Arlette Darfeuille-Michaud

Nicolas Barnich, Arlette Darfeuille-Michaud, Pathogénie Bactérienne Intestinale, Univ Clermont 1, USC INRA 2018, Clermont-Ferrand F-63001 and Institut Universitaire de Technologie en Génie Biologique, Aubière F-63172, France
Supported by grants from Ministère de la Recherche et de la Technologie (EA3844) and INRA (USC 2018), Association F Aupetit, Institut de Recherche des Maladies de l'Appareil Digestif, laboratoire Astra France
Correspondence to: Nicolas Barnich, PhD, Pathogénie Bactérienne Intestinale, USC INRA 2018, Université d'Auvergne, Centre Biomédical de Recherche et Valorisation, 28 Place Henri Dunant, Clermont-Ferrand 63000,
France. nicolas.barnich@u-clermont1.fr
Telephone: +33-4-73177997 Fax: +33-4-73178371
Received: June 22, 2007 Revised: August 28, 2007

Abstract

Increased numbers of mucosa-associated *Escherichia coli* are observed in both of the major inflammatory bowel diseases, Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC). A potential pathophysiological link between the presence of pathogenic invasive bacteria and genetic host susceptibility of patients with ileal CD is suspected. In CD patients, with increased ileal expression of the CEACAM6 molecule acting as a receptor recognized by type 1 pilus bacterial adhesin, and with the identification of mutations in the NOD2-encoding gene, the presence of pathogenic invasive bacteria could be the link between abnormal ileal bacterial colonization and innate immune responses to invasive bacteria. In a susceptible host, the sequential etiological steps of the disease induced by adherent-invasive *E. coli* (AIEC) are: (1) abnormal colonization *via* binding to the CEACAM6 receptor, which is overexpressed in the ileal mucosa of CD patients; (2) ability to adhere to and to invade intestinal epithelial cells, which allows bacteria to cross the mucosal barrier; (3) survival and replication within infected macrophages in the lamina propria; and (4) induction of tumor necrosis factor-α secretion and granuloma formation.

Key words: Adherent-invasive *Escherichia coli*; Crohn's disease; Inflammatory bowel disease; Ulcerative colitis

Barnich N, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Role of bacteria in the etiopathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5571-5576

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5571.asp

INTRODUCTION

Idiopathic inflammatory bowel diseases (IBDs), which include Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC), are chronic disorders of the gastrointestinal tract that have a combined prevalence of approximate 150-200 cases per 100 000 population in Western countries[1]. Several lines of evidence suggest that bacteria play a role in the onset and perpetuation of IBD[2-6]. Intestinal bacteria are essential for the development of intestinal inflammation, and are required for the onset of inflammation in numerous knockout models of IBD[7-9]. The pathogenesis of CD is complex and consists of three interacting elements: genetic susceptibility factors such as NOD2/CARD15 and ileal CEACAM6 expression; priming by enteric microflora; and immune-mediated tissue injury[4,6,10-13]. The role of luminal bacteria in the pathogenesis of CD is strongly supported by observations showing that clinical symptoms of CD improve when luminal bacterial levels decrease following intestinal washes and antibacterial drug administration[14-16]. In addition, postoperative exposure of the terminal ileum to luminal contents is associated with increased inflammation in CD, and diversion of the fecal stream is associated with improvement[17].

Studies of luminal bacterial composition in patients with IBD, using culture and molecular biology techniques, have shown a decrease in the number of beneficial bacteria such as *Bifidobacterium* and *Lactobacillus* spp. and an increase in pathogenic bacteria such as Bacteroides and *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*)[18-20]. Such dysbiosis induces a breakdown in the balance between putative species of protective *vs* harmful intestinal bacteria, and may promote inflammation[21,22]. Patients with IBD have higher numbers of mucosa-associated bacteria than control patients[18], and the generalized or localized dysbiosis observed is due to the presence of low numbers of normal bacteria, high numbers of unusual bacteria, and sometimes, a reduction in biodiversity. CD has features that might be the result of a microbial process in the gut. These include onset of infection in Peyer's patches and lymphoid aggregates, and the presence of ulceration, micro-abscesses, fissures, fistulas, granulomas and lymphangitis. Interestingly, the earliest lesions are aphthous ulcers in the intestine, which also occur in some viral and bacterial infections.

Although a number of organisms have been implicated in CD, only two agents, *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis* and *E. coli*, are presently being actively investigated. The theory that *M. paratuberculosis* has a role in CD has some attractive features[23]. Indeed, there are clinical similarities between Johne's disease, a spontaneous *M. paratuberculosis* infection in ruminants, and CD. *M. paratuberculosis* is detected at a greater frequency in CD than in control patients (UC patients and healthy subjects), by culture and polymerase chain reaction (PCR). This organism has been detected in blood and breast milk of patients with CD[24]. The high levels of *E. coli* colonizing the intestinal mucosa in CD patients strongly suggest that it plays a role in the etiopathogenesis of CD.

E. COLI ABNORMALLY COLONIZES ILEAL MUCOSA OF GENETICALLY PREDISPOSED IBD PATIENTS

Bacterial adhesion to intestinal epithelial cells is the first step in the pathogenicity of many organisms involved in infectious diseases of the gut. Adhesion enables the bacteria to colonize the mucosa and to resist mechanical removal from the intestine. Studies on the adherence properties of *E. coli* in CD have yielded the general conclusion that *E. coli* strains are able to adhere to various human cells or cell lines. Fifty-three to 62% of *E. coli* strains isolated from feces of CD patients were able to adhere to buccal cells, compared to only 5%-6% of those isolated from control subjects[25,26]. The comparison of the adhesive properties of *E. coli* strains isolated from the ileum of CD patients and controls has revealed that 80% of *E. coli* strains associated with the ileal mucosa of CD patients preferentially adhered to differentiated Caco-2 cells, which mimic a mature intestinal cell model[20]. This is consistent with the finding that in patients with CD, crypt epithelial cells, which correspond to immature cells, are rarely involved in early lesions[27]. In addition, a correlation between bacterial adhesion to intestinal cells and intestinal colonization has been observed[20]. The presence of high levels of bacteria creates a biofilm on the surface of the gut mucosa in patients with CD and UC[18]. When bacteriologic samples were taken during surgery for CD, *E. coli* was isolated more frequently from the intestinal serosa and mesenteric nodes of CD patients (27% and 33%, respectively) than from those of control subjects[28,29]. Increased numbers of mucosa-associated *E. coli* are observed in CD and UC[18-20,30-33]. Rectal mucosa-associated *E. coli* counts were also higher in active than in inactive UC and CD and controls, and clusters of *E. coli* were observed in the lamina propria in UC and CD specimens, but not in controls[34]. In a study to assess the predominance of *E. coli* strains associated with the ileal mucosa of CD patients, *E. coli* was recovered from 65% of chronic lesions (resected ileum) and from 100% of the biopsies of early lesions (postoperative endoscopic recurrence)[20]. *E. coli* was abnormally predominant (between 50 and 100% of the total number of aerobes and anaerobes) in early and chronic ileal lesions of CD patients[20]. Moreover, in any given patient, healthy and ulcerated mucosa are colonized by *E. coli* strains having the same ribotype profile, which is indicative of uniform colonization, regardless of the inflammatory state of the mucosa[35].

Abnormal colonization of the ileal mucosa is due to increased expression of CEACAM6, a receptor for adherent–invasive *E. coli* (AIEC)[13]. These bacteria have been isolated from ileal lesions of CD patients, and express the type 1 pilus variant, as opposed to the type 1 pilus expressed by *E. coli* MG1655[36]. CD-associated AIEC strains adhere to the brush border of primary ileal enterocytes isolated from CD patients, but not from control patients without IBD. AIEC adhesion is dependent on type 1 pilus variant expression on the bacterial surface[36] and on abnormal CEACAM6 expression on ileal epithelial cells in CD patients[13]. The significantly increased ileal CEACAM6 expression in the uninvolved ileal mucosa of CD patients compared to that in controls without IBD, suggests that patients expressing a basal level of CEACAM6 are genetically predisposed to express that molecule. Additionally, CEACAM6 expression in cultured intestinal epithelial cells is increased after interferon (IFN)-γ or tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α stimulation, and after infection with AIEC bacteria, which indicates that AIEC can promote its own colonization in CD patients[13]. Accordingly, in patients expressing a basal level of CEACAM6, the presence of AIEC bacteria and the secretion of IFN-γ and TNF-α lead to amplification of colonization and inflammation.

INVASIVES PROPERTIES OF *E. COLI* STRAINS ASSOCIATED WITH CD

Analysis of *E. coli* strains isolated from early or chronic ileal lesions of patients with CD has revealed the presence of true invasive pathogens, since CD-associated bacteria efficiently invade a wide range of human epithelial cell lines, including Hep-2 cells and the intestinal cell lines Intestine-407, Caco-2 and HCT-8[37]. Their uptake is dependent on functioning host-cell actin microfilaments and microtubules[37]. Electron microscopy of epithelial cells infected with CD-associated bacteria has revealed a macropinocytosis-like process of entry, characterized by elongation of the membrane extensions, which surround bacteria at the sites of contact between entering bacteria and epithelial cells. Inside the host cells, CD-associated bacteria survive and replicate in the cytoplasm after lysis of the endocytic vacuole. The invasive process of CD-associated bacteria is unique since it does not possess any of the known genetic invasive determinants described for enteroinvasive, enteropathogenic, and enterotoxigenic *E. coli*, and *Shigella* strains. The major virulence factors of CD-associated AIEC that play a role in their invasive ability are type 1 pili that induce membrane extensions[36], flagella that confer bacterial mobility and down-regulate the expression of type 1 pili[38], outer membrane vesicles that deliver bacterial effector molecules to host cells[39], and outer membrane protein C (OmpC), which regulates the expression of several virulence factors *via* the sigma(E) regulatory pathway[40]. Interestingly, among these virulence

factors, the outer membrane vesicles of *H pylori* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* have been reported to induce pro-inflammatory responses[41,42], and bacterial flagellin can interact with Toll-like receptor (TLR) 5 to activate an innate immune response.

The invasive ability of AIEC strains can allow bacteria to translocate across the human intestinal barrier and move into the deep tissues. Consequently, AIEC can interact with resident macrophages and continuously activate immune cells. In addition, patients with CD are more likely to be sensitive to AIEC infection. Indeed, the *NOD2* gene, located on chromosome 16q12, has been identified as the first susceptibility gene for CD[11,12]. NOD2-deficient mice show loss of protective immunity in response to bacterial muramyl dipeptide, and mice are susceptible to *Listeria* infection *via* the oral route[43]. The 3020insC mutant of NOD2 associated with CD has impaired function as a defensive factor against intracellular bacteria in intestinal epithelial cells[44]. Thus, patients carrying NOD2 mutations are unable to control bacterial infections. The mutated NOD2 receptor does not contribute to pro-inflammatory gene transcription in response to bacteria, which results in an inadequate innate response to bacterial invasion and enables bacteria to accumulate. Such a poor innate response can lead to the formation of granulomas and thus, to the activation and perpetuation of a deregulated secondary adaptive response.

AIEC SURVIVAL AND REPLICATION WITHIN MACROPHAGES AND GRANULOMA FORMATION

The search for infectious agents likely to cause CD has focused mainly on intracellular pathogens that have evolved to resist phagocytosis and to persist within macrophages, and which may be involved in chronic antigenic stimulation leading to T-cell and macrophage activation. AIEC strains isolated from CD patients are able to survive and replicate extensively within murine macrophages[45]. At 48 h post-infection, the number of intracellular AIEC bacteria can increase up to 74-fold compared to the initial infection. In contrast to its behavior within intestinal epithelial cells[37], CD-associated bacterial replication does not require bacterial escape into the cytoplasmic compartment[45]. Within J774-A1 macrophages, AIEC bacteria induce the formation of a single spacious vacuole by fusion of initial phagosomes. The behavior of the AIEC strains within macrophages is different from that of other invasive bacteria. In contrast to most invasive bacteria that induce death of infected macrophages[46], no necrosis or apoptosis of AIEC-infected J774-A1 macrophages is observed even after 24 h post-infection[45]. Moreover, in contrast to many pathogens that escape from the normal endocytic pathway, AIEC bacteria are taken up by macrophages within phagosomes, which mature without diverting from the classical endocytic pathway, and share features with phagolysosomes[47]. To survive and replicate in the harsh environment encountered inside these compartments, including acid pH and proteolytic activity of cathepsin D, AIEC have elaborate adaptation mechanisms, for which acidity constitutes a crucial signal, to activate the expression of virulence genes[48]. The major virulence factors of CD-associated AIEC that have a role in their ability to survive and replicate within macrophages are the *htrA* gene that encodes the stress protein HtrA, essential for intracellular replication within macrophages[48], and the *dsbA* gene that encodes the periplasmic oxidoreductase DsbA, essential for AIEC LF82 to survive within macrophages, irrespective of the loss of flagellum and type 1 pilus expression[49]. LF82-infected macrophages release large amounts of TNF-α[45]. This result is in accordance with the fact that several studies have shown that T helper (Th)1 cytokines, such as IFN-γ, TNF-α, and interleukin (IL)-12, are secreted in excess in CD whereas in UC, an atypical Th2 immune response with secretion of IL-4 or transforming growth factor (TGF)-β was observed[50]. Continuous macrophage activation and TNF-α release in CD patients may be due to the sustained multiplication of intracellular AIEC bacteria within phagosomes, and may be involved in the formation of granulomas. Granulomatous inflammation is a histological hallmark of CD and infection with some intracellular bacteria. *E. coli* DNA is present in 80% of microdissected granulomas in CD patients[51]. Granulomatous responses to *E. coli* have been reported in animals, such as granulomatous colitis of boxer dogs or Hjarre's disease in chickens and turkeys. *E. coli* strains were isolated from 100% of granulomas in boxer dogs with colitis[52], and these bacteria resembled CD-associated AIEC in phylogeny and virulence gene profile[53]. In Hjarre's disease, mucoid *E. coli* has been isolated from tuberculoid lesions of the cecum and liver of chickens and turkeys, while intramuscular inoculation of pure bacterial cultures or triturated diseased tissues reproduced the disease[54-56]. Using an *in vitro* model of human granuloma[57], CD-associated AIEC LF82 were reported to induce aggregation of infected macrophages, some of which fused to form multinucleated giant cells and subsequent recruitment of lymphocytes. Analysis of the cell aggregates indicated that they are very similar to the early stages of epithelioid granulomas[58].

PREVALENCE OF AIEC IN IBD

AIEC strains have been found to be highly associated with ileal mucosa in CD patients[56]. Such pathogenic strains were isolated from ileal specimens of 36.4% of CD patients *vs* 6% of controls. In colonic specimens, AIEC strains were found in 3.7% of CD patients, 0% of UC patients, and 1.9% of controls. These strains are preferentially found in early recurrent lesions after surgery, thus indicating their role in the initiation of inflammation, and not just as secondary invaders. Another study has shown that mucosa-associated *E. coli*, which accounted for 53% of isolates, were more common in CD (43%) than in non-inflamed control patients (17%), while intramucosal *E. coli* were found in 29% of CD patients *vs* 9% of controls[30]. These studies support a central role for mucosa-associated AIEC in the pathogenesis of CD[30,56], since the translocation of these pathogenic bacteria through the intestinal mucosa may be a crucial step in the propagation of the inflammatory process.

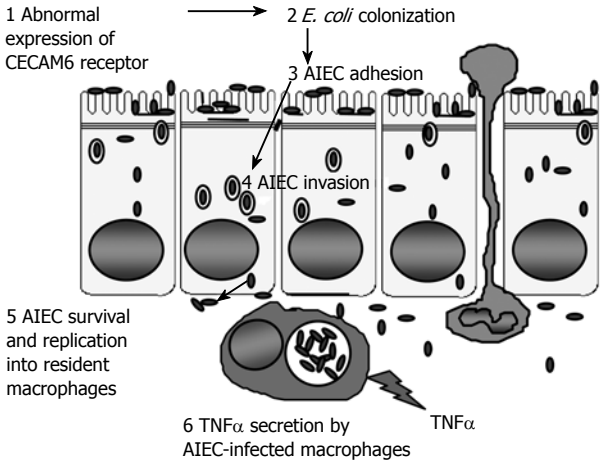


Figure 1 Sequential steps of the mechanisms of disease induced by AIEC bacteria: (1) abnormal expression of CEACAM6 in ileal mucosa of CD, inducing (2) AIEC colonization, (3) adhesion and (4) invasion, which allow the bacteria to cross the mucosal barrier. AIEC bacteria can (5) survive and replicate within infected macrophages in the lamina propria, and (6) induce TNF-α secretion.

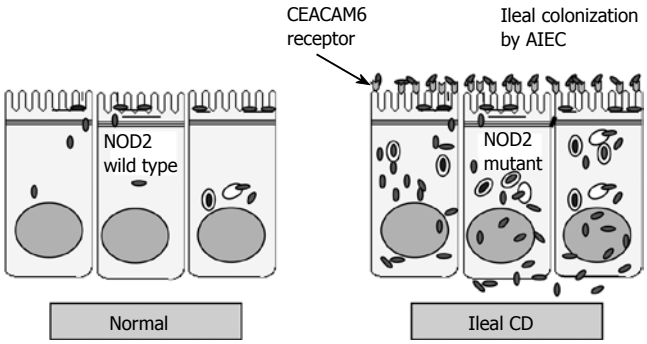


Figure 2 The infection cycle of AIEC may depend upon the ability of these pathogenic bacteria to colonize the gastrointestinal tract of genetically predisposed patients. Patients at high risk for developing severe ileal CD are those who overexpress CEACAM6 in the ileal mucosa, which allows AIEC colonization, and express the NOD2 3020insC mutant which has an impaired function as a defensive factor against intracellular bacteria in intestinal epithelial cells.

CONCLUSION

Various factors lend credence to the theory that AIEC is intimately linked to the etiopathogenesis of ileal CD. The high prevalence of AIEC in patients with ileal CD may be the first step in the establishment of a modified Koch's postulate that takes into account the genetic susceptibility of the host[30,56]. A possible role for AIEC in the etiopathogenesis of CD in susceptible hosts is summarized in Figure 1. The sequential steps involved in the induction of disease by the bacteria are: (1) abnormal colonization *via* binding to the CEACAM6 receptor, which is overexpressed in the ileal mucosa of CD patients[13]; (2) ability to adhere to and to invade intestinal epithelial cells, which allows bacteria to cross the mucosal barrier[37]; (3) survival and replication within infected macrophages in the lamina propria; and (4) induction of TNF-α secretion[45] and granuloma formation[58].

AIEC strains could colonize the ileal mucosa of CD patients by binding to CEACAM6, translocate across the human intestinal barrier to move into deep tissues, and once there, continuously activate immune cells. Patients having a high risk for developing severe ileal CD may be those who, in addition to expressing a variant of the NOD2 intracytoplasmic receptor[11,12], overexpress CEACAM6 at the surface of the ileal mucosa[13] (Figure 2). Host innate immune receptors that can be activated by AIEC components are mainly the transmembrane receptor TLR2 and the intracellular receptor NOD2. NOD2 is a negative regulator of the TLR2-mediated Th1 response, while the NOD2 3020insC mutation associated with CD is unable to inhibit TLR2 signaling, which skews the system toward an overactive Th1-mediated response[59]. This result provides a compelling explanation for why people carrying the NOD2 mutation might develop CD in response to abnormal colonization by AIEC[60]. The treatment of severe ileal CD could evolve from being almost exclusively surgical to management that places much greater emphasis on medical therapy, such as immunomodulators and anti-TNF-α agents, and also on antibiotic or probiotic treatments.

REFERENCES

1 **Loftus EV**, Silverstein MD, Sandborn WJ, Tremaine WJ, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR. Crohn's disease in Olmsted County, Minnesota, 1940-1993: incidence, prevalence, and survival. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 1161-1168
2 **Sartor RB**. Pathogenesis and immune mechanisms of chronic inflammatory bowel diseases. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92**: 5S-11S
3 **Sartor RB**. Intestinal microflora in human and experimental inflammatory bowel disease. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2001; **17**: 324-330
4 **Podolsky DK**. Inflammatory bowel disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 417-429
5 **Farrell RJ**, LaMont JT. Microbial factors in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2002; **31**: 41-62
6 **Shanahan F**. Host-flora interactions in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10** Suppl 1: S16-S24
7 **Sellon RK**, Tonkonogy S, Schultz M, Dieleman LA, Grenther W, Balish E, Rennick DM, Sartor RB. Resident enteric bacteria are necessary for development of spontaneous colitis and immune system activation in interleukin-10-deficient mice. *Infect Immun* 1998; **66**: 5224-5231
8 **Rath HC**, Herfarth HH, Ikeda JS, Grenther WB, Hamm TE, Balish E, Taurog JD, Hammer RE, Wilson KH, Sartor RB. Normal luminal bacteria, especially Bacteroides species, mediate chronic colitis, gastritis, and arthritis in HLA-B27/human beta2 microglobulin transgenic rats. *J Clin Invest* 1996; **98**: 945-953
9 **Dianda L**, Hanby AM, Wright NA, Sebesteny A, Hayday AC, Owen MJ. T cell receptor-alpha beta-deficient mice fail to develop colitis in the absence of a microbial environment. *Am J Pathol* 1997; **150**: 91-97
10 **Elson CO**. Commensal bacteria as targets in Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 254-257
11 **Hugot JP**, Chamaillard M, Zouali H, Lesage S, Cézard JP, Belaiche J, Almer S, Tysk C, O'Morain CA, Gassull M, Binder V, Finkel Y, Cortot A, Modigliani R, Laurent-Puig P, Gower-Rousseau C, Macry J, Colombel JF, Sahbatou M, Thomas G. Association of NOD2 leucine-rich repeat variants with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 599-603
12 **Ogura Y**, Bonen DK, Inohara N, Nicolae DL, Chen FF, Ramos R, Britton H, Moran T, Karaliuskas R, Duerr RH, Achkar JP, Brant SR, Bayless TM, Kirschner BS, Hanauer SB, Nuñez G, Cho JH. A frameshift mutation in NOD2 associated with

susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 603-606
13 **Barnich N**, Carvalho FA, Glasser AL, Darcha C, Jantscheff P, Allez M, Peeters H, Bommelaer G, Desreumaux P, Colombel JF, Darfeuille-Michaud A. CEACAM6 acts as a receptor for adherent-invasive E. coli, supporting ileal mucosa colonization in Crohn disease. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 1566-1574
14 **Rutgeerts P**, Hiele M, Geboes K, Peeters M, Penninckx F, Aerts R, Kerremans R. Controlled trial of metronidazole treatment for prevention of Crohn's recurrence after ileal resection. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: 1617-1621
15 **Sutherland L**, Singleton J, Sessions J, Hanauer S, Krawitt E, Rankin G, Summers R, Mekhjian H, Greenberger N, Kelly M. Double blind, placebo controlled trial of metronidazole in Crohn's disease. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 1071-1075
16 **Ursing B**, Kamme C. Metronidazole for Crohn's disease. *Lancet* 1975; **1**: 775-777
17 **Rutgeerts P**, Goboes K, Peeters M, Hiele M, Penninckx F, Aerts R, Kerremans R, Vantrappen G. Effect of faecal stream diversion on recurrence of Crohn's disease in the neoterminal ileum. *Lancet* 1991; **338**: 771-774
18 **Swidsinski A**, Ladhoff A, Pernthaler A, Swidsinski S, Loening-Baucke V, Ortner M, Weber J, Hoffmann U, Schreiber S, Dietel M, Lochs H. Mucosal flora in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 44-54
19 **Neut C**, Bulois P, Desreumaux P, Membré JM, Lederman E, Gambiez L, Cortot A, Quandalle P, van Kruiningen H, Colombel JF. Changes in the bacterial flora of the neoterminal ileum after ileocolonic resection for Crohn's disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 939-946
20 **Darfeuille-Michaud A**, Neut C, Barnich N, Lederman E, Di Martino P, Desreumaux P, Gambiez L, Joly B, Cortot A, Colombel JF. Presence of adherent Escherichia coli strains in ileal mucosa of patients with Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **115**: 1405-1413
21 **Seksik P**, Sokol H, Lepage P, Vasquez N, Manichanh C, Mangin I, Pochart P, Doré J, Marteau P. Review article: the role of bacteria in onset and perpetuation of inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24** Suppl 3: 11-18
22 **Tamboli CP**, Neut C, Desreumaux P, Colombel JF. Dysbiosis in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1-4
23 **Sartor RB**. Does Mycobacterium avium subspecies paratuberculosis cause Crohn's disease? *Gut* 2005; **54**: 896-898
24 **Naser SA**, Ghobrial G, Romero C, Valentine JF. Culture of Mycobacterium avium subspecies paratuberculosis from the blood of patients with Crohn's disease. *Lancet* 2004; **364**: 1039-1044
25 **Burke DA**, Axon AT. Adhesive Escherichia coli in inflammatory bowel disease and infective diarrhoea. *BMJ* 1988; **297**: 102-104
26 **Giaffer MH**, Holdsworth CD, Duerden BI. Virulence properties of Escherichia coli strains isolated from patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 1992; **33**: 646-650
27 **Sankey EA**, Dhillon AP, Anthony A, Wakefield AJ, Sim R, More L, Hudson M, Sawyerr AM, Pounder RE. Early mucosal changes in Crohn's disease. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 375-381
28 **Laffineur G**, Lescut D, Vincent P, Quandalle P, Wurtz A, Colombel JF. Bacterial translocation in Crohn disease. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 1992; **16**: 777-781
29 **Ambrose NS**, Johnson M, Burdon DW, Keighley MR. Incidence of pathogenic bacteria from mesenteric lymph nodes and ileal serosa during Crohn's disease surgery. *Br J Surg* 1984; **71**: 623-625
30 **Martin HM**, Campbell BJ, Hart CA, Mpofu C, Nayar M, Singh R, Englyst H, Williams HF, Rhodes JM. Enhanced Escherichia coli adherence and invasion in Crohn's disease and colon cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 80-93
31 **Kotlowski R**, Bernstein CN, Sepehri S, Krause DO. High prevalence of Escherichia coli belonging to the B2+D phylogenetic group in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 669-675
32 **Lederman E,** Neut C, Desreumaux P, Klein O, Gambiez L, Cortot A, Quandalle P, Colombel JF. Bacterial overgrowth in the neoterminal ileum after ileocolonic resection for Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 1023
33 **Conte MP**, Schippa S, Zamboni I, Penta M, Chiarini F, Seganti L, Osborn J, Falconieri P, Borrelli O, Cucchiara S. Gut-associated bacterial microbiota in paediatric patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1760-1767
34 **Mylonaki M**, Rayment NB, Rampton DS, Hudspith BN, Brostoff J. Molecular characterization of rectal mucosa-associated bacterial flora in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 481-487
35 **Masseret E**, Boudeau J, Colombel JF, Neut C, Desreumaux P, Joly B, Cortot A, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Genetically related Escherichia coli strains associated with Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 320-325
36 **Boudeau J**, Barnich N, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Type 1 pili-mediated adherence of Escherichia coli strain LF82 isolated from Crohn's disease is involved in bacterial invasion of intestinal epithelial cells. *Mol Microbiol* 2001; **39**: 1272-1284
37 **Boudeau J**, Glasser AL, Masseret E, Joly B, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Invasive ability of an Escherichia coli strain isolated from the ileal mucosa of a patient with Crohn's disease. *Infect Immun* 1999; **67**: 4499-4509
38 **Barnich N**, Boudeau J, Claret L, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Regulatory and functional co-operation of flagella and type 1 pili in adhesive and invasive abilities of AIEC strain LF82 isolated from a patient with Crohn's disease. *Mol Microbiol* 2003; **48**: 781-794
39 **Rolhion N**, Barnich N, Claret L, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Strong decrease in invasive ability and outer membrane vesicle release in Crohn's disease-associated adherent-invasive Escherichia coli strain LF82 with the yfgL gene deleted. *J Bacteriol* 2005; **187**: 2286-2296
40 **Rolhion N**, Carvalho FA, Darfeuille-Michaud A. OmpC and the sigma(E) regulatory pathway are involved in adhesion and invasion of the Crohn's disease-associated Escherichia coli strain LF82. *Mol Microbiol* 2007; **63**: 1684-1700
41 **Ismail S**, Hampton MB, Keenan JI. Helicobacter pylori outer membrane vesicles modulate proliferation and interleukin-8 production by gastric epithelial cells. *Infect Immun* 2003; **71**: 5670-5675
42 **Bauman SJ**, Kuehn MJ. Purification of outer membrane vesicles from Pseudomonas aeruginosa and their activation of an IL-8 response. *Microbes Infect* 2006; **8**: 2400-2408
43 **Kobayashi KS**, Chamaillard M, Ogura Y, Henegariu O, Inohara N, Nuñez G, Flavell RA. Nod2-dependent regulation of innate and adaptive immunity in the intestinal tract. *Science* 2005; **307**: 731-734
44 **Hisamatsu T**, Suzuki M, Reinecker HC, Nadeau WJ, McCormick BA, Podolsky DK. CARD15/NOD2 functions as an antibacterial factor in human intestinal epithelial cells. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 993-1000
45 **Glasser AL**, Boudeau J, Barnich N, Perruchot MH, Colombel JF, Darfeuille-Michaud A. Adherent invasive Escherichia coli strains from patients with Crohn's disease survive and replicate within macrophages without inducing host cell death. *Infect Immun* 2001; **69**: 5529-5537
46 **Navarre WW**, Zychlinsky A. Pathogen-induced apoptosis of macrophages: a common end for different pathogenic strategies. *Cell Microbiol* 2000; **2**: 265-273
47 **Bringer MA**, Glasser AL, Tung CH, Méresse S, Darfeuille-Michaud A. The Crohn's disease-associated adherent-invasive Escherichia coli strain LF82 replicates in mature phagolysosomes within J774 macrophages. *Cell Microbiol* 2006; **8**: 471-484
48 **Bringer MA**, Barnich N, Glasser AL, Bardot O, Darfeuille-Michaud A. HtrA stress protein is involved in intramacrophagic replication of adherent and invasive Escherichia coli strain LF82 isolated from a patient with Crohn's disease. *Infect Immun* 2005; **73**: 712-721
49 **Bringer MA**, Rolhion N, Glasser AL, Darfeuille-Michaud A. The oxidoreductase DsbA plays a key role in the ability of the Crohn's disease-associated adherent-invasive Escherichia coli strain LF82 to resist macrophage killing. *J Bacteriol* 2007; **189**: 4860-4871

50 **Peluso I**, Pallone F, Monteleone G. Interleukin-12 and Th1 immune response in Crohn's disease: pathogenetic relevance and therapeutic implication. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 5606-5610

51 **Ryan P**, Kelly RG, Lee G, Collins JK, O'Sullivan GC, O'Connell J, Shanahan F. Bacterial DNA within granulomas of patients with Crohn's disease--detection by laser capture microdissection and PCR. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 1539-1543

52 **Van Kruiningen HJ**, Civco IC, Cartun RW. The comparative importance of E. coli antigen in granulomatous colitis of Boxer dogs. *APMIS* 2005; **113**: 420-425

53 **Simpson KW**, Dogan B, Rishniw M, Goldstein RE, Klaessig S, McDonough PL, German AJ, Yates RM, Russell DG, Johnson SE, Berg DE, Harel J, Bruant G, McDonough SP, Schukken YH. Adherent and invasive Escherichia coli is associated with granulomatous colitis in boxer dogs. *Infect Immun* 2006; **74**: 4778-4792

54 **SCHOFIELD FW**. Hjarre and Wramby disease in turkeys (coli-granuloma). Can J Comp Med Vet Sci 1947; **11**: 141-143

55 **Morishita TY**, Bickford AA. Pyogranulomatous typhlitis and hepatitis of market turkeys. *Avian Dis* 1992; **36**: 1070-1075

56 **Darfeuille-Michaud A**, Boudeau J, Bulois P, Neut C, Glasser AL, Barnich N, Bringer MA, Swidsinski A, Beaugerie L, Colombel JF. High prevalence of adherent-invasive Escherichia coli associated with ileal mucosa in Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 412-421

57 **Puissegur MP**, Botanch C, Duteyrat JL, Delsol G, Caratero C, Altare F. An in vitro dual model of mycobacterial granulomas to investigate the molecular interactions between mycobacteria and human host cells. *Cell Microbiol* 2004; **6**: 423-433

58 **Meconi S**, Vercellone A, Levillain F, Payré B, Al Saati T, Capilla F, Desreumaux P, Darfeuille-Michaud A, Altare F. Adherent-invasive Escherichia coli isolated from Crohn's disease patients induce granulomas in vitro. *Cell Microbiol* 2007; **9**: 1252-1261

59 **Watanabe T**, Kitani A, Murray PJ, Strober W. NOD2 is a negative regulator of Toll-like receptor 2-mediated T helper type 1 responses. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 800-808

60 **Bamias G**, Sugawara K, Pagnini C, Cominelli F. The Th1 immune pathway as a therapeutic target in Crohn's disease. *Curr Opin Investig Drugs* 2003; **4**: 1279-1286

S- Editor Ma N **L- Editor** Kerr C **E- Editor** Yin DH

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5577-5580
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Dr, *Series Editor*

Innate immunity in inflammatory bowel disease

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Daniel K Podolsky

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Daniel K Podolsky, Gastrointestinal Unit and Center for the Study of Inflammatory Bowel Disease, Massachusetts General Hospital and Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA 02114, United States
Correspondence to: Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, MD, PhD, Gastrointestinal Unit, Massachusetts General Hospital, 55 Fruit Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02114, United States. kazuofurusho@hotmail.com
Telephone: +1-617-7267411 Fax: +1-617-7242136
Received: April 4, 2007 Revised: May 25, 2007

Abstract

The human intestinal tract is home to an enormous bacterial flora. The host defense against microorganisms can be divided into innate and adaptive immunity. The former is the most immediate line of response to immunologic challenges presented by bacteria, viruses, and fungi. The mucosal immune system has evolved to balance the need to respond to pathogens while co-existing with commensal bacteria and food antigens. In inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), this hyporesponsiveness or tolerance breaks down and inflammation supervenes driven by the intestinal microbial flora. Bacteria contain compounds and are recognized by a variety of receptors, including Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and NODs (a family of intracellular bacterial sensors) and are potent stimuli of innate immune responses. Several mutations in these receptors have been associated with development of IBD.

Key words: Innate; Immunity; Toll-like receptors; Inflammatory bowel disease

Yamamoto-Furusho JK, Podolsky DK. Innate immunity in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5577-5580

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5577.asp

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) comprises two major forms of chronic inflammation of the intestine, Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC).

IBD is currently presumed to result from the complex effect of diverse genes conferring risk of disease and environmental factors, which when combined lead to an aberrant inflammation response. Recent evidence suggests that innate immune responses play an important role in initiating the inflammatory cascade and subsequent characteristic pathological adaptive immune responses[1]. The innate immune response is the first line of defense for microbial infections. In addition to genetic factors in IBD, numerous studies have implicated a key role of the intestinal microbiota in patients with IBD[2-4]. The contribution of luminal microbes to the pathogenesis of IBD is highlighted by reports that surgical diversion of the fecal stream effectively resolves CD inflammation distal to the surgical site[2].

The human intestinal tract mucosa is exposed to an enormous microbial flora. A single layer of epithelial cells separates the host tissues from luminal bacteria. Innate immune mechanisms are involved in this relationship, and likely contribute significantly to the protection of the host from invasion by luminal bacteria and provide a rapid response to pathogens. Immediate activation of innate immunity relies on the detection by the host of conserved microbial motifs known as pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), comprising diverse molecules from bacteria and viruses such as lipopolysaccharide, peptidoglycan, flagellin and lipoproteins[5].

Understanding of innate immunity has accelerated enormously with the discovery of many microbial sensors called "pattern recognition receptors" (PRRs). The toll-like receptor (TLR) and NOD receptor families of PRRs appear to play essential roles in mucosal homeostasis and alterations contribute to the pathogenesis of IBD.

THE TLR FAMILY

The mammalian TLR family consists of 13 mammalian members: each TLR having its intrinsic signaling pathway and inducing specific biological responses against microorganisms. Recognition of microbial components by TLRs triggers activation of signal transduction pathways, which then induce dendritic cell maturation and cytokine production, resulting in development of adaptive immunity[5].

Table 1 summarizes TLRs and the different molecular patterns associated with a broad range of microbes that they recognize. The activation of TLR signaling pathways originates from the cytoplasmic TIR domains. Four TIR domain-containing adaptors (MyD88, TIRAP/MAL, TRIF, and TRAM) play an important role in TLR signaling

Table 1 Molecular pattern recognition of NODs and TLRs

Receptor	Microbial motifs
NLR family	
NOD1	Lanthionine meso-diaminopimelic acid (meso-DAP) γ-D-Glu-meso-diaminopimelic acid (iE-DAP)
NOD2	Muramyldipeptide (MDP)
TLR family	
TLR1	Triacyl lipopeptides
TLR2	Lipoprotein, lipopeptides ($Pam_3CysSerLys_4$)
TLR3	dsRNA
TLR4	LPS
TLR5	Flagellin
TLR6	Diacyl lipopeptides
TLR7/TLR8	ssRNA
TLR9	Non-methylated CpG DNA
TLR11	Component of uropathogenic bacteria

pathway. These adaptors are associated with TLRs through homophilic interaction of TIR domains. Each TLR mediates distinctive responses in association with a different combination of these adapters[6].

THE NLR FAMILY

The mammalian NLR family comprises more than 20 members whose defining molecular characteristic is a C-terminal leucine-rich repeat (LRR) domain, a central nucleotide-binding NACHT domain and an N-terminal protein-protein interaction domain composed of a CARD (caspase activation and recruitment domain). Several studies have shown that several NLRs are necessary sensors of specific PAMPs.

The first NLRs reported to have a direct function as intracellular PRRs were NOD1 (CARD4) and NOD2 (CARD15). NOD2 detects muramyl dipeptide, the largest molecular motif common to Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria[7,8]. In contrast, NOD1 senses peptidoglycan containing meso-diaminopimelic acid (meso-DAP), which is more commonly found in Gram-negative bacteria[9,10].

NALP3 is a pyrin domain-containing NLR that activates the caspase-1 leading to interleukin 1β (IL-1β) and IL-18 processing, this protein is involved in sensing microbial components. In addition to NODs and NALP3 proteins, Ipaf (CARD12) and Nalp1 are intracellular sensors that detect intracellular flagellin, leading to inflammasome activation through a TLR5-independent pathway[11].

The signaling pathways downstream of NLRs include the NF-κB pathway, for NOD1 and NOD2, and activation of the caspase 1 inflammasome, for NAPLPs, Ipaf and Naip. NOD1 and NOD2 rapidly form oligomers and then transiently recruit receptor-interacting protein 2 (RIP2) through CARD-CARD interactions. The complex NOD-RIP2 then recruits the inhibitor of NF-κB kinase complex, which leads to activation of NF-κB. Several studies have shown that Ipaf and Naip can participate in the formation of inflammasomes (NALP1, NALP3 and Ipaf) that form in response to the detection of specific molecular motifs. It has been speculated that the formation of large protein complexes in a given inflammasome is sufficient to trigger caspase-1 activation[12].

NLRs are important in macrophage-mediated detection and control of bacterial infection *in vitro*. Ipaf is required for caspase-1 activation and IL-1β secretion in macrophages exposed to Gram-negative pathogen *Salmonella typhimurium*[13]. Cytosolic recognition of *Salmonella typhimurium* and *Legionella pneumophila* flagellins by Ipaf results in the induction of macrophage cell death and IL-1β secretion.

CONNECTION OF NOD AND TLR PATHWAYS

Intersection between TLR and NOD2 pathways is suggested by reports of synergistic induction of proinflammatory cytokines such as TNFα and IL-1β upon costimulation with MDP and specific TLR ligands[14,15]. MDP also substantially upregulated secretion of TNFα and IL-1β induced by ligands to five different TLRs ligands, TLRs 2, 4, 5, 7 and 9: ($Pam_3CysSerLys_4$, LPS, Flagellin, MALP-2 and R-848, respectively). Of note, these effects were observed in the presence of the most common NOD2 mutants associated with CD. In studies using mice lacking NOD2, Watanabe *et al* observed reduced responses to MDP, but enhanced responses to the TLR2 ligand peptidoglycan e.g., increases in IL-12. They interpreted these findings to suggest that the NOD2 signaling pathways normally down-regulate the TLR2 pathways. In their model, loss of function mutation of NOD2 together with TLR2 signals delivered by other bacterial products could result in enhanced cytokine responses to commensal bacteria by macrophages[16]. These findings suggest that interaction between NOD2 and specific TLR pathways may represent an important modulatory mechanism of innate immune responses, which is altered in some patients with CD.

TLRS IN IBD

TLRs are abundantly expressed on the surface of monocytes, macrophages, dendritic and epithelial cells. Alterations of TLR3 and TLR4 expression by intestinal epithelial cells have been described in IBD[17], suggesting that there is differential expression of TLR family members. Thus, primary intestinal epithelial cells of normal, non-diseased mucosa constitutively express TLR3 and TLR5, whereas TLR2 and TLR4 are present in much lower amounts. In active IBD, the expression of TLR3 and TLR4 was differentially modulated in the intestinal epithelium. TLR3 was significantly down-regulated in active CD but not in UC. In contrast, TLR4 was strongly up-regulated in both UC and CD. TLR2 and TLR5 expression remained unchanged in IBD.

Two common polymorphisms of TLR4 (Asp299Gly and Thr399Ile) have been described in humans. Asp299Gly has been associated with reduced responsiveness following lipopolysaccharide stimulation[18]. These polymorphisms have been associated with the development of CD and UC in Caucasian populations[19-21].

Recently, Pierik *et al*[22] showed that TLR1 R80T and TLR2 R753G polymorphisms were associated with pancolitis in UC patients, while a negative association

was observed between TLR6 S249P and proctitis in patients with UC. These results suggest that TLR2 and its co-receptors TLR1 and TLR6 are involved in the initial immune response to bacteria in the pathogenesis of IBD.

An important immune stimulatory effect mediated by the TLR family (TLR9) is induced by non-methylated CpG motifs found in bacterial DNA. In animal models of colitis, administration of CpG was able to ameliorate disease activity[23].

NODS IN IBD

Specific mutations of the NOD2 gene have been definitively associated with increased susceptibility to ileal Crohn's disease in Western (but not Asian) populations: Arg702Trp, Gly908Arg, and leu1007fsinsC (a frameshift mutation that truncates the carboxy terminal 33 amino acids)[24,25]. Heterozygous carriage of the risk alleles confers a 2-4 fold increased risk, and homozygotes or compound heterozygotes have a 20-40 fold increased risk[26]. More than 90% of all CD associated mutations are located in the LRR domain, suggesting that these may affect the function of NOD2 with respect to bacterial recognition and signaling. Transient transfection experiments indicate that CD-associated NOD2 mutants no longer activate NF-κB in response to MDP[27,28], which suggests that defective NF-κB activation facilitates infection of the lamina propria by enteric bacteria.

NOD2 mutants produce selective functional defects in leukocytes of patients with CD as shown by van Heel *et al*[8] who analyzed cytokine expression of peripheral blood mononuclear cells after exposure to MDP. In PBMC from CD patients the NOD2 ligand induced little TNFα and IL-1β, but strong IL-8 secretion. Furthermore, monocytes isolated from CD patients carrying the 1007fs (3020insC) mutation were reported to exhibit defects in the production of the proinflammatory cytokines, TNFα, IL-6 and IL-8, as well as the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10[29]. Dendritic cells derived from CD patients homozygous for leu1007fsinsC also fail to up-regulate the costimulatory molecules CD80 and CD86 in response to MDP and lack production of cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-12 and IL-10[30].

Evidence that NOD2 functions as an antibacterial factor in intestinal epithelial cells was demonstrated in Caco-2 cells stably expressing wild type NOD2 when infected with *Salmonella typhimurium*. This protective effect was absent in cells expressing a most common mutant NOD2 associated with CD (3020insC)[31].

NOD2 mutations in CD patients are also associated with diminished mucosal α-defensin expression[32]. Decreased β-defensin 1 and the lack of induction of both inducible antimicrobial peptides β-defensins 2 and 3 in CD could result in enhanced bacterial invasion and perhaps survival[33].

A study of 556 patients with IBD (294 CD and 252 UC) reported an association between the variant (rs695857) in nucleotides 30, 258 and 950 of the *NOD1* gene and the development of IBD. Another variant known as rs2907748 in nucleotides 30, 246 and 263 was also associated with the presence of UC and CD, particularly early onset of the disease (< 25 years)[34].

CROHN´S DISEASE

Marks *et al*[35] have provided provocative evidence that CD patients possess a generalized impaired innate immune response as reflected by diminished response to intradermal injection of killed bacteria as well as trauma of the skin or the intestine. When killed bacteria were injected into the forearms of CD patients, there was less blood flow to the injection site than non-CD patients. They also found that CD patients had reduced neutrophil accumulation and interleukin-8 (IL-8) production at sites of tissue trauma in the intestine and skin, although these findings need corroboration. This study supports the idea that CD may in some way be associated with relative inability to mount an acute inflammatory response compared to normal individuals.

Recent studies have suggested that the CD-associated NOD2 mutants might confer a milder defect in innate immune response than well-described innate immune deficiencies such as chronic granulomatous disease[8]. Rather than suppressing the secondary T-cell response, a different approach aims to normalize innate immune function through qualitative augmentation of neutrophil, macrophage and dendritic cell function. Clinical trials of granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF, specifically filgrastim) and GM-CSF (sargramostim) have suggested a benefit, although definitive evidence is not yet available[36,37]. However, G-CSF has a more limited effect on the innate immune system, acting primarily on neutrophils. GM-CSF is more widely and potently active, targeting a variety of cell types including not only neutrophils and monocytes as effector cells, but also intestinal epithelial cells that have receptors for GM-CSF.

CONCLUSION

The innate immune system is the first line of defense and provides a rapid response to pathogens. Elicitation of an innate immune response to bacterial products is mediated through families of pattern recognition receptors including the cell surface TLRs and cytosolic NODs that mediate the activation of NF-κB. Some mutations, TLRs, and NODs produce defects in sensing of pathogens and predispose the host to recurrent infections as well as perpetuation of chronic intestinal inflammation.

REFERENCES

1 **Podolsky DK**. Inflammatory bowel disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 417-429
2 **Rutgeerts P**, Goboes K, Peeters M, Hiele M, Penninckx F, Aerts R, Kerremans R, Vantrappen G. Effect of faecal stream diversion on recurrence of Crohn's disease in the neoterminal ileum. *Lancet* 1991; **338**: 771-774
3 **Darfeuille-Michaud A**, Boudeau J, Bulois P, Neut C, Glasser AL, Barnich N, Bringer MA, Swidsinski A, Beaugerie L, Colombel JF. High prevalence of adherent-invasive Escherichia coli associated with ileal mucosa in Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 412-421
4 **Sartor RB**. Therapeutic manipulation of the enteric microflora in inflammatory bowel diseases: antibiotics, probiotics, and prebiotics. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1620-1633
5 **Akira S**, Uematsu S, Takeuchi O. Pathogen recognition and innate immunity. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 783-801

6 **Uematsu S**, Akira S. Toll-like receptors and innate immunity. *J Mol Med (Berl)* 2006; **84**: 712-725
7 **Girardin SE**, Boneca IG, Viala J, Chamaillard M, Labigne A, Thomas G, Philpott DJ, Sansonetti PJ. Nod2 is a general sensor of peptidoglycan through muramyl dipeptide (MDP) detection. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 8869-8872
8 **van Heel DA**, Ghosh S, Butler M, Hunt KA, Lundberg AM, Ahmad T, McGovern DP, Onnie C, Negoro K, Goldthorpe S, Foxwell BM, Mathew CG, Forbes A, Jewell DP, Playford RJ. Muramyl dipeptide and toll-like receptor sensitivity in NOD2-associated Crohn's disease. *Lancet* 2005; **365**: 1794-1796
9 **Hisamatsu T**, Suzuki M, Podolsky DK. Interferon-gamma augments CARD4/NOD1 gene and protein expression through interferon regulatory factor-1 in intestinal epithelial cells. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 32962-32968
10 **Girardin SE**, Boneca IG, Carneiro LA, Antignac A, Jéhanno M, Viala J, Tedin K, Taha MK, Labigne A, Zähringer U, Coyle AJ, DiStefano PS, Bertin J, Sansonetti PJ, Philpott DJ. Nod1 detects a unique muropeptide from gram-negative bacterial peptidoglycan. *Science* 2003; **300**: 1584-1587
11 **Franchi L**, Amer A, Body-Malapel M, Kanneganti TD, Ozören N, Jagirdar R, Inohara N, Vandenabeele P, Bertin J, Coyle A, Grant EP, Núñez G. Cytosolic flagellin requires Ipaf for activation of caspase-1 and interleukin 1beta in salmonella-infected macrophages. *Nat Immunol* 2006; **7**: 576-582
12 **Martinon F**, Tschopp J. Inflammatory caspases: linking an intracellular innate immune system to autoinflammatory diseases. *Cell* 2004; **117**: 561-574
13 **Miao EA**, Alpuche-Aranda CM, Dors M, Clark AE, Bader MW, Miller SI, Aderem A. Cytoplasmic flagellin activates caspase-1 and secretion of interleukin 1beta via Ipaf. *Nat Immunol* 2006; **7**: 569-575
14 **Strober W**, Murray PJ, Kitani A, Watanabe T. Signalling pathways and molecular interactions of NOD1 and NOD2. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2006; **6**: 9-20
15 **Netea MG**, Kullberg BJ, de Jong DJ, Franke B, Sprong T, Naber TH, Drenth JP, Van der Meer JW. NOD2 mediates anti-inflammatory signals induced by TLR2 ligands: implications for Crohn's disease. *Eur J Immunol* 2004; **34**: 2052-2059
16 **Watanabe T**, Kitani A, Murray PJ, Strober W. NOD2 is a negative regulator of Toll-like receptor 2-mediated T helper type 1 responses. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 800-808
17 **Cario E**, Podolsky DK. Differential alteration in intestinal epithelial cell expression of toll-like receptor 3 (TLR3) and TLR4 in inflammatory bowel disease. *Infect Immun* 2000; **68**: 7010-7017
18 **Arbour NC**, Lorenz E, Schutte BC, Zabner J, Kline JN, Jones M, Frees K, Watt JL, Schwartz DA. TLR4 mutations are associated with endotoxin hyporesponsiveness in humans. *Nat Genet* 2000; **25**: 187-191
19 **Franchimont D**, Vermeire S, El Housni H, Pierik M, Van Steen K, Gustot T, Quertinmont E, Abramowicz M, Van Gossum A, Devière J, Rutgeerts P. Deficient host-bacteria interactions in inflammatory bowel disease? The toll-like receptor (TLR)-4 Asp299gly polymorphism is associated with Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 987-992
20 **Arnott ID**, Ho GT, Nimmo ER, Satsangi J. Toll-like receptor 4 gene in IBD: further evidence for genetic heterogeneity in Europe. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 308; author reply 309
21 **Lakatos PL**, Lakatos L, Szalay F, Willheim-Polli C, Osterreicher C, Tulassay Z, Molnar T, Reinisch W, Papp J, Mozsik G, Ferenci P. Toll-like receptor 4 and NOD2/CARD15 mutations in Hungarian patients with Crohn's disease: phenotype-genotype correlations. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 1489-1495
22 **Pierik M**, Joossens S, Van Steen K, Van Schuerbeek N, Vlietinck R, Rutgeerts P, Vermeire S. Toll-like receptor-1, -2, and -6 polymorphisms influence disease extension in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2006; **12**: 1-8
23 **Rachmilewitz D**, Katakura K, Karmeli F, Hayashi T, Reinus C, Rudensky B, Akira S, Takeda K, Lee J, Takabayashi K, Raz E. Toll-like receptor 9 signaling mediates the anti-inflammatory effects of probiotics in murine experimental colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 520-528
24 **Ogura Y**, Bonen DK, Inohara N, Nicolae DL, Chen FF, Ramos R, Britton H, Moran T, Karaliuskas R, Duerr RH, Achkar JP, Brant SR, Bayless TM, Kirschner BS, Hanauer SB, Nunez G, Cho JH. A frameshift mutation in NOD2 associated with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 603-606
25 **Hugot JP**, Chamaillard M, Zouali H, Lesage S, Cézard JP, Belaiche J, Almer S, Tysk C, O'Morain CA, Gassull M, Binder V, Finkel Y, Cortot A, Modigliani R, Laurent-Puig P, Gower-Rousseau C, Macry J, Colombel JF, Sahbatou M, Thomas G. Association of NOD2 leucine-rich repeat variants with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 599-603
26 **Cuthbert AP**, Fisher SA, Mirza MM, King K, Hampe J, Croucher PJ, Mascheretti S, Sanderson J, Forbes A, Mansfield J, Schreiber S, Lewis CM, Mathew CG. The contribution of NOD2 gene mutations to the risk and site of disease in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 867-874
27 **Inohara N**, Ogura Y, Fontalba A, Gutierrez O, Pons F, Crespo J, Fukase K, Inamura S, Kusumoto S, Hashimoto M, Foster SJ, Moran AP, Fernandez-Luna JL, Nuñez G. Host recognition of bacterial muramyl dipeptide mediated through NOD2. Implications for Crohn's disease. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 5509-5512
28 **Girardin SE**, Travassos LH, Hervé M, Blanot D, Boneca IG, Philpott DJ, Sansonetti PJ, Mengin-Lecreulx D. Peptidoglycan molecular requirements allowing detection by Nod1 and Nod2. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 41702-41708
29 **van Heel DA**, Ghosh S, Butler M, Hunt KA, Lundberg AM, Ahmad T, McGovern DP, Onnie C, Negoro K, Goldthorpe S, Foxwell BM, Mathew CG, Forbes A, Jewell DP, Playford RJ. Muramyl dipeptide and toll-like receptor sensitivity in NOD2-associated Crohn's disease. *Lancet* 2005; **365**: 1794-1796
30 **Netea MG**, Ferwerda G, de Jong DJ, Jansen T, Jacobs L, Kramer M, Naber TH, Drenth JP, Girardin SE, Kullberg BJ, Adema GJ, Van der Meer JW. Nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-2 modulates specific TLR pathways for the induction of cytokine release. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 6518-6523
31 **Kramer M**, Netea MG, de Jong DJ, Kullberg BJ, Adema GJ. Impaired dendritic cell function in Crohn's disease patients with NOD2 3020insC mutation. *J Leukoc Biol* 2006; **79**: 860-866
32 **Hisamatsu T**, Suzuki M, Reinecker HC, Nadeau WJ, McCormick BA, Podolsky DK. CARD15/NOD2 functions as an antibacterial factor in human intestinal epithelial cells. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 993-1000
33 **Wehkamp J**, Harder J, Weichenthal M, Schwab M, Schäffeler E, Schlee M, Herrlinger KR, Stallmach A, Noack F, Fritz P, Schröder JM, Bevins CL, Fellermann K, Stange EF. NOD2 (CARD15) mutations in Crohn's disease are associated with diminished mucosal alpha-defensin expression. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1658-1664
34 **Fellermann K**, Wehkamp J, Herrlinger KR, Stange EF. Crohn's disease: a defensin deficiency syndrome? *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **15**: 627-634
35 **McGovern DP**, Hysi P, Ahmad T, van Heel DA, Moffatt MF, Carey A, Cookson WO, Jewell DP. Association between a complex insertion/deletion polymorphism in NOD1 (CARD4) and susceptibility to inflammatory bowel disease. *Hum Mol Genet* 2005; **14**: 1245-1250
36 **Marks DJ**, Harbord MW, MacAllister R, Rahman FZ, Young J, Al-Lazikani B, Lees W, Novelli M, Bloom S, Segal AW. Defective acute inflammation in Crohn's disease: a clinical investigation. *Lancet* 2006; **367**: 668-678
37 **Dieckgraefe BK**, Korzenik JR. Treatment of active Crohn's disease with recombinant human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor. *Lancet* 2002; **360**: 1478-1480
38 **Korzenik JR**, Dieckgraefe BK. An open-labelled study of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor in the treatment of active Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **21**: 391-400

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Alpini GD **E- Editor** Yin DH

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5581-5593
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Dr, *Series Editor*

Insights from advances in research of chemically induced experimental models of human inflammatory bowel disease

Mayumi Kawada, Atsuko Arihiro, Emiko Mizoguchi

Mayumi Kawada, Atsuko Arihiro, Emiko Mizoguchi, Gastrointestinal Unit, Department of Medicine, Massachusetts General Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA 02114, United States
Emiko Mizoguchi, Center for the Study of Inflammatory Bowel Disease, Massachusetts General Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA 02114, United States
Supported by National Institute of Health grants, No. DK64289, DK74454, and DK43351), IBD grants from the Eli and Edythe Broad Medical Foundation
Correspondence to: Emiko Mizoguchi, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor, Harvard Medical School, Gastrointestinal Unit, GRJ 702, Massachusetts General Hospital, 55 Fruit Street, Boston, MA 02114, United States. emizoguchi@partners.org
Telephone: +1-617-7267892 Fax: +1-617-7263673
Received: June 12, 2007 Revised: August 13, 2007

Abstract

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), the most important being Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis, results from chronic dysregulation of the mucosal immune system in the gastrointestinal tract. Although the pathogenesis of IBD remains unclear, it is widely accepted that genetic, environmental, and immunological factors are involved. Recent studies suggest that intestinal epithelial defenses are important to prevent inflammation by protecting against microbial pathogens and oxidative stresses. To investigate the etiology of IBD, animal models of experimental colitis have been developed and are frequently used to evaluate new anti-inflammatory treatments for IBD. Several models of experimental colitis that demonstrate various pathophysiological aspects of the human disease have been described. In this manuscript, we review the characteristic features of IBD through a discussion of the various chemically induced experimental models of colitis (e.g., dextran sodium sulfate-, 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-, oxazolone-, acetic acid-, and indomethacin-induced models). We also summarize some regulatory and pathogenic factors demonstrated by these models that can, hopefully, be exploited to develop future therapeutic strategies against IBD.

Key words: Inflammatory bowel disease; Experimental colitis; Dextran sodium sulfate; Trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid; Oxazolone; Pathogenesis

Kawada M, Arihiro A, Mizoguchi E. Insights from advances in research of chemically induced experimental models of human inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5581-5593

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5581.asp

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), including ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD), represents a chronic, relapsing and remitting inflammatory condition that affects individuals throughout life[1]. No completely effective therapeutic strategy has been established because the etiology of IBD remains largely unknown, although there has been extensive research on its pathogenesis. However, recent advances in the understanding of the pathophysiology of IBD have provided some clues for developing potentially helpful therapeutic tools.

Within the past two decades, several models of experimental colitis have been reported that demonstrate various pathophysiological aspects of human IBD. While no model serves as a complete surrogate for the human disease, some characteristically pathological features are open for investigation, depending on the method used to induce the experimental colitis. Experimental models of colitis enable us to dissect the pathogenic components during different phases of colitis, including acute, recovery and chronic phases. They also enable us to identify some pivotal immunological processes, as well as novel genes that are intimately involved in disease susceptibility.

In this review, we mainly focus on the role of functionally distinct factors, including immune cells, cytokines/chemokines, receptors/ligands, transcriptional factors, and enzymes/hormones, which maintain the homeostatic balance in the colon during the development of acute and chronic inflammation.

DSS-INDUCED COLITIS

The dextran sodium sulfate (DSS) model, originally reported by Okayasu *et al*[2] has been used to investigate the role of leukocytes in the development of colitis. Oral administration of 5% DSS in drinking water can induce not only acute, but also chronic colitis. One cycle of 3%-5% DSS administration for 5-7 d, followed by

regular water, results in extensive injury with complete crypt depletion (mainly basal crypt) and relatively slow regeneration of colonic epithelium. This regeneration is much slower than in other acute injury models, which use toxic substances such as acetic acid and ethanol[3]. The clinical features of this model include weight loss, loose stools/diarrhea, and rectal bleeding. Histopathological analysis typically reveals extensive crypt and epithelial cell damage, significant infiltration of granulocytes and mononuclear immune cells, and tissue edema, often accompanied with severe ulceration. In fact, because of the massive edema and subsequent ulceration during the acute phase, some researchers have wrongly used the DSS-induced colitis model by interpreting it as a model for human UC; however, this colitis is a simple model of acute chemical injury rather than chronic inflammation. Pathological scoring is generally performed on the distal segment of the colon, which is the most severely affected portion[3]. Histopathology, by hematoxylin and eosin staining, is scored based on three parameters: severity of inflammation (none, mild, moderate, severe), extent of inflammation (none, mucosa, mucosa and submucosa, transmural), and crypt damage (none, basal one-third damaged, basal two-thirds damaged, crypt lost but surface epithelium present, crypt and surface epithelium lost). It is noteworthy that long-term DSS administration produces colorectal carcinoma, which is similar to the dysplasia-carcinoma sequence seen in the course of cancer development in human UC[4].

Acute mucosal damage can be observed in both wild-type and severely combined immunodeficiency (scid) mice, which indicates that acquired immune responses are not involved in the induction of DSS-induced colitis[5]. The lesions observed in scid mice have been associated with increased production of macrophage-derived proinflammatory cytokines, such as interleukin (IL)-1β, IL-6, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α. While the role of luminal bacteria in the pathogenesis of DSS-induced colitis is unclear, this colitis can be ameliorated by treatment with antibiotics that are clinically effective in patients with IBD[1], which suggests the importance of commensal bacteria in the development of colitis[6]. Although the earliest change of acute DSS-induced colitis is a progressive disruption of colonic crypts during the chronic phase (14 d after stopping DSS), macrophages and $CD4^+$ T cells are more prominent in areas of wound healing in the basal portions of the lamina propria (LP). These $CD4^+$ T cells secrete increased levels of interferon (IFN)-γ and IL-4, which suggests that chronic immune activation mediated by both Th1 and Th2 cells play a pathogenic role in chronic DSS-induced colitis[7].

2,4,6-TRINITROBENZE SULFONIC ACID (TNBS)-INDUCED COLITIS

In 1995, Neurath *et al* described a novel murine model of intestinal inflammation induced by intrarectal administration of hapten reagent TNBS in ethanol solution. Simultaneous administration of TNBS and ethanol is required to induce TNBS colitis, because ethanol disrupts the epithelial layer and exposes the underlying LP to bacterial components. Intestinal inflammation induced by intrarectal administration of TNBS has many of the characteristic features of CD in humans, including severe transmural inflammation associated with diarrhea, rectal prolapse, weight loss, and induction of an IL-12-driven inflammation with a massive Th1-mediated response[8]. Interestingly, prior oral administration of TNBS in the form of trinitrophenol-haptenated colonic protein (TNP-CP) prevents colitis induced by intrarectal administration of TNBS[9,10]. The preventive effect is due to the induction in the LP of regulatory cells consisting of $CD4^+$ T cells that produce transforming growth factor (TGF)-β after oral administration of TNP-CP[10].

The susceptibility to TNBS colitis varies between different mouse strains; SJL and BALB/c are susceptible, whereas C57Bl/6 and 10 mice are resistant. The susceptibility has been shown to be related to a genetically determined high IL-12 response to the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) locus on chromosome 11 in SJL/J mice[11]. In a recent study, te Velde and colleagues compared gene expression profiles in the colons of three different models of colitis (DSS, TNBS and $CD45RB^{high}$ T-cell transfer models)[12]. As a result, a restricted number of genes were either up- or down-regulated in the TNBS colitis (21 genes) model compared to DSS-induced colitis (387 genes) and $CD45RB^{high}$ transfer model (582 genes)[12]. Of the 32 genes known to change transcriptional activity in IBD (*TNF, IFN-γ, Lt*β*, IL-6, IL-16, IL-18R1, IL-22, CCR2* and *7, CCL2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 11, 17* and *20, CXCR3, CXCL1, 5* and *10, Mmp3, 7, 9* and *14, Timp1, Reg3*γ*, Pap, S-100a8, S-100a9, Abcb1,* and *Ptgs2*), two (*Mmp14* and *Timp1*) are up-regulated in TNBS, 15 (*IL-6, IL-16, IL-22, CCL2, 3* and *11, CXCL1* and *5, Mmp3* and *14, Timp1, Reg3*γ*, Pap, S-100a9,* and *Ptgs2*) are up- or down-regulated in DSS, and 30 (except for *CCL11 and Timp1*) are up- or down-regulated in the CD45RB transfer colitis models. The study suggests that the pattern of gene expression in these colitis models closely reflects altered gene expression in human IBD[12].

OXAZOLONE COLITIS

In contrast to TNBS, which leads to colitis driven by a Th1-polarized type of T-cell response, administration of another haptenating agent, oxazolone, leads to a colitis associated with a Th2-polarized type of response. This model is induced by the rectal administration of oxazolone suspended in an ethanol vehicle. Although the SJL/J strain of mice was utilized in the original description[13], over half of the later studies have been performed using the C57Bl/6 strain. The induction of colitis in the C57 strain requires a presensitizing treatment, since this strain is resistant to haptenating agents[14]. For presensitization, 4.5 mg - 6 mg of oxazolone in 100% ethanol is injected into the abdominal wall of mice, followed by intrarectal administration of various doses of oxazolone in 50% ethanol after 5 d.

Oxazolone colitis is limited to the distal part of the colon, in contrast to TNBS colitis that is characterized as pan-colitic. Microscopically, the inflammation of oxazolone colitis manifests as relatively superficial ulceration[13]. An IL-4-driven Th2-type of response is predominant and is

Table 1 Pathogenesis of IBD models in DSS colitis

Pathogenic factors	
Categories	Factors (References)
Chemokines/cytokines	Migration inhibitory factor[114], LIX[115], L-18[33], CCR5[116], IL-1[117]
Adhesion molecules	CD98[118], β2 integrins (CD18/11a)[83], Integrin α1β1[81], VCAM-1[119]
Transcriptional factors	STAT3[74]
Toll like receptors and ligands	CpG motifs[92], Flagellin/TLR5[90]
Enzymes	Chitinase 3-like-1[102], Carbonic anhydrase Ⅳ[100], Eosinophil peroxidase[120], Caspase-1[105]
Hormones	Adiponectin[112], Resistin-like molecule β[121], Leptin[113], Osteopontin[122], Activins[123]
Others	Galanin-1 receptor[124]
Regulatory factors	
Categories	Factors (References)
T cells	γδT cells[23,24]
Cytokines/chemokines	BFGF[51], FGF2[125], TGF-α[46], TFF2[53], ITF[54], HGF[47,49]
Transcription factors	SOCS3[74], Nrf2[126], PPARγ[76,77], PPARδ[76]
Adhesion molecules	B2 integrins (CD11β)[83]
Receptors	TLR4[87], PG receptor EP-4[95], Pregnane X Receptor[127]
Enzymes	COX-2[94,96], COX-1[94], Matrix metalloproteinase-2[128]
Hormones	Estrogen[129], Growth hormone[130], Adiponectin[110]
Neuronal factors	Vagus nerve[131], IRE1β[132], Neurotensin[133]
Lipid-associated molecules	Lipoxin A4[134], Apolipoprotein A-Ⅳ[135]
Others	Dietary glycine[136], Follistatin[123], Bacterial superantigens[137], Thioredoxin-1[138]

characterized by increased IL-4/IL-5, but normal IFN-γ production. The inflammation is prevented by the systemic co-administration of intraperitoneal anti-IL-4 antibody. The proinflammatory Th2-dominant cytokine response is regulated by TGF-β, which limits both the extent and duration of the disease. The histological features and inflammatory distribution of oxazolone colitis resemble human UC[13].

OTHER CHEMICALLY-INDUCED COLITIS MODELS

In a search for novel experimental models of acute IBD, MacPherson and colleagues have found that intrarectal administration of 3%-5% acetic acid induces acute colitis in the distal part of the colon in rats[15]. The initial injury consists of epithelial necrosis and edema that variably extends into the LP, submucosa, or external muscle layers. Epithelial injury is mainly caused by organic acids specifically because hydroxyl chloride (pH 2.3) does not generally induce acute colitis[4]. In mice, administration of acetic acid within 4 h results in colonic epithelial destruction without inflammation, which is then followed by an influx of acute inflammatory cells, and reaches its maximum intensity at 12 h. The inflammatory response is caused by non-specific factors after disruption of the epithelial barrier. The chemical injury heals within days in mice or 2-3 wk in rats[16].

Whereas acetic acid produces acute inflammation restricted to the colon, another pro-inflammatory agent, indomethacin, has been used to induce acute ileitis. Fasted rats are treated subcutaneously with indomethacin 7.5 mg/kg in sterile sodium bicarbonate, which leads to an acute inflammatory response characterized by multiple deep, longitudinal ulcers in the distal jejunum and proximal ileum. This acute response reaches its maximum intensity at 24 h and is completely resolved within 7 d, whereas two daily subcutaneous injections of indomethacin produce a chronic inflammation that lasts at least 2 wk[17]. Luminal bacteria and their products significantly contribute to the exacerbation and perpetuation of the chronic phase of indomethacin-induced inflammation.

These models have the advantage of being easy to initiate and therefore would be useful in the initial screening of new drugs for acute epithelial injury. However, the injury in the first 24 h is nonimmunologic and thus is not suitable for drug therapy trials for human IBD.

FACTORS INVOLVED IN THE PATHOGENESIS OF THE MAIN CHEMICALLY INDUCED COLITIS MODELS

In the following section, we focus more on the factors involved in the fine balance between pathogenic and regulatory factors in the pathogenesis of DSS- (Table 1), TNBS- (Table 2), and oxazolone- (Table 3) induced colitis.

T cells

$CD4^+$ T cells play a key role in the development of most T-cell-mediated IBD models. For example, the increased production of IFN-γ, mainly produced by $CD4^+$ T cells, is detected in most models of Th1-mediated colitis[18]. By contrast, IL-4 and IL-13, produced by natural killer (NK) T cells, have been shown to play a key role in the pathogenesis of Th2-mediated colitis, including oxazolone-induced colitis[19]. NK1.1 positive lymphocytes are also essential for alleviation of TNBS-induced colitis in the presence of peripheral tolerance[20].

Although $CD8^+$ T cells represent a major T-cell subset, there is little information available regarding the role of $CD8^+$ T cells in the pathogenesis of colitis. $CD8^+$ T cell receptor (TCR)-positive $V\beta14^+$ T cells, which are increased in the LP and have a cytotoxic effect[21], have a pathogenic role in the development of TNBS-induced colitis.

By contrast, TCRγδ T cells are an evolutionarily

Table 2 Pathogenesis of IBD models in TNBS colitis

Pathogenic factors	
Categories	Factors (References)
T cells	Th1[8], $CD8^+$ TCR $V\beta14^+$ T cell[21], CEACAM1[27]
Cytokines/chemokines	IL-12[8,30], IFN-γ[8,34], IL-18[31,32,139], IL-6[73], IL-16[140], IL-17[38], TNF-α[29,141], MIP-α[142], MIP-3α[143]
Receptors	CD40[57,58], CD44v7[144], FcεRI[145], GITR[63,64], Complement receptor 3[146]
Transcription factors	NF-κB p65[65,67,147], RICK[69,70], MAPK p38[70], Smad7[72], Smad3[148]
Adhesion molecules	Integrinα1β1[80]
Enzymes	Poly (ADP-ribose) synthetase[149,150], Inducible nitric oxide synthase[151], Angiotensinogen[152], Vanin-1[107]
Hormones	Leptin[113], Ghrelin[153], Adiponectin[112]
Others	Geneticfactors[11], Glycolipid[154]
Regulatory factors	
Categories	Factors (References)
T cells	TCRγδ[25,26], NK1.1[20,155,156]
Cytokines/chemokines	TGF-β[10,44,45], IL-10[44,157,158], IL12 p40[34], IL12 p40-IgG2b[159], IL-2-IgG2b[160], IL-23[39], HGF[48], BFGF[51]
Receptors	PAR-2[61], TNFR1[56]
Transcription factors	STAT5b[161], Interferon regulatory factor-1[162], PPARγ[75]
Enzymes	Indoleamine 2, 3-dioxygenase[163]
Hormones	Adrenocortical hormones[164,165], NCX-101[166]
Neurotransmitters	Vasoactive intestinal peptide[167,168], μopioid receptor[169]
Lipid mediators	Lipoxin A4[170], Marine[171]
Bacteria and parasite related factors	Yersinia pseudotuberculosis[172], Lactic acid bacteria[173,174], Schistosome eggs[175], Cholera toxin subunit B[176,177]
Others	Galectin-1[178], Curcumin[179], Catalposide[180], Follistatin[123], Phex gene[181], FTY720[182], Matrine[183]

Table 3 Pathogenesis of IBD models in oxazolone colitis

Pathogenic factors	
Categories	Factors (References)
T cells	NKT[19], CEACAM1[27], Major basic protein[184], MHC class Ⅱ transactivator[185]
Cytokines/chemokines	IL-4[13], IL-13[19,40], EBI3[42]
Transcription factors	Smad7[72], NF-κB[67,68]
Others	Glycolipid[154]
Regulatory factors	
Categories	Factors (References)
T cells	Regulatory T cells[28]
Cytokines/chemokines	TGF-β[13]
Receptors	PAR-1[60]
Others	Budesonide[186]

conserved minor T-cell subset with characteristic properties that help maintain the homeostasis of epithelial cells, by providing a barrier between the luminal bacterial contents and underlying immune cells[22]. A regulatory role has been shown for TCRγδ T cells in DSS-[23,24] and TNBS-induced colitis models[25,26].

In addition to these populations, carcinoembryonic antigen-related cellular adhesion molecule 1 (CEACAM1; also known as CD66a) is a cell surface molecule that has been proposed to negatively regulate T cell function, and is associated with the regulation of T-bet-mediated Th1 cytokine signaling in TNBS- and oxazolone-induced colitis models[27].

Finally, regulatory T cells express the antigen non-specific suppressor factors transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) and IL-10. Boirivant *et al* have shown that TNP-CP feeding cross-protects mice from an inflammatory response to a different hapten, oxazolone. This protective effect is associated with the appearance of mononuclear cells that produce regulatory cytokines[28]. This phenomenon of cross-protection could be exploited in designing novel treatments for IBD, because it demonstrates that an orally-administered antigen can induce production of regulatory cells that are able to suppress inflammation induced by a different type of antigen.

Cytokines/chemokines/growth factors

TNBS injection results in a transmural infiltrative colitis associated with an IL-12-mediated Th1-immune response[8]. In most cases, a single dose of TNBS is administered at the starting point of the experiment. In subsequent studies of IL-12, it has been reported that mucosal TNF-α is necessary for the initiation and perpetuation of TNBS colitis, since TNF-α-deficient mice are resistant to TNBS, and the colitis is extremely severe in mice that over-express TNF-α[29]. This result suggests that TNFα acts as a proximal co-factor for IL-12 or IL-18 production. One possible mechanism of amelioration by anti-IL-12 antibody treatment is through the induction of Fas-mediated apoptosis of Th1 cells[30].

Watanabe and colleagues have shown that TNBS-induced colitis is mediated by macrophage-derived IL-18[31]. In fact, neutralization with anti-IL-18 antibody results in dramatic attenuation of mucosal inflammation, and the administration of TNBS fails to induce significant colitis in IL-18 knockout (KO) mice. These results have been confirmed by another group who have demonstrated that recombinant human IL-18 binding protein isoform (rhIL-18BPa) leads to a significant reduction in TNBS-induced colitis, by decreasing local TNF-α production[32]. Interestingly, IL-18 is also a primary mediator of the inflammation in DSS-induced colitis, while neutralization of IL-18 attenuates intestinal damage in that colitis model[33].

In Th1-mediated colitis, the use of agents that block IL-12 secretion or activity provides the most direct approach for attenuating inflammation because IL-12 is critical for regulation of differentiation and activation of Th1 cells[8,30]. It has been demonstrated that IL-12p40 KO mice develop severe TNBS-induced colitis. Moreover, administration of IL-12p40 neutralizing antibody increases pathology in IL-12p35 KO mice, which suggests that IL-12p40, in contrast

to IL-12p70, exerts the major regulatory function in TNBS-induced colitis[34]. However, IL-12p40 forms heterodimers, not only with IL-12p35 (IL12p35p40; IL-12p70), but also with IL-23p19 (IL-23p19p40); a finding that raises the possibility that activity previously ascribed to IL-12 may be attributable to IL-23. Recently, it has been revealed that IL-23 is a key effector cytokine in the immune system of the intestine[35]. IL-23 specifically expands a pathogenic population of $CD4^+$ T cells called Th-17 cells, which produce IL-17A, IL-17F, IL-6 and TNF-α[36,37]. Indeed, IL-17R KO mice are protected against TNBS-induced colitis[38]. By contrast, Becker *et al*[39] have reported that IL-23 cross-regulates IL-12 production in T-cell-mediated TNBS colitis, since mice lacking the p19 subunit of IL-23 are highly susceptible to TNBS-induced colitis, and inhibition of IL-12p40 rescues IL-23p19 KO mice from lethal disease. These discrepancies regarding the role of IL-23 may result from different experimental models; therefore, further characterization should help in developing new therapeutic treatments for patients.

As for the Th2-type responses, oxazolone colitis is associated with increased production of IL-4/IL-5, and is prevented by the systemic co-administration of anti-IL-4 antibody[13]. Heller *et al*[19] have shown that IL-13, mainly produced by NK T cells, is a significant pathogenic factor in this model, since its neutralization by the decoy receptor IL-13Rα2-Fc prevents disease. As well, IL-13 induces TGF-β1, generally considered to be an anti-inflammatory cytokine, through IL-13Rα2 in oxazolone-induced colitis, and prevention of IL-13Rα2 expression leads to the marked down-regulation of TGF-β1 production and collagen deposition in bleomycin-induced lung fibrosis, during prolonged inflammation[40].

As an IL-12p40-related protein, it has been reported that Epstein-Barr virus-induced gene 3 (EBI3) dimerizes with a novel p28 subunit (which has homology to IL-12p35) to form the cytokine IL-27[41]. IL-27 has been shown to function as a proliferation factor for naïve, but not memory, $CD4^+$ T cells, and to synergize with IL-12 to stimulate IFN-γ production[41]. That EBI3 KO mice have been found to be resistant to oxazolone-induced colitis suggests that this molecule plays a crucial role in the induction of Th2-type immune responses[42].

Several families of growth factors regulate a wide spectrum of processes integral to IBD; including protection of the intestinal mucosa and activation, as well as regulation of the intestinal immune system. These factors mediate mucosal repair, restitution, remodeling and resolution of inflammation following tissue damage[43]. It is now widely accepted that TGF-β has an important function in regulating inflammation and tissue repair. Fuss *et al*[44] have elegantly demonstrated the relationship between TGF-β and IL-10 in the regulation of Th1-mediated inflammation in TNBS-induced colitis, by performing a study in which mice were fed a haptenated colonic protein and then administered either anti-TGF-β or anti-IL-10 antibody, at the time of subsequent rectal administration of TNBS. Anti-TGF-β antibody administration prevents TGF-β secretion, but leaves IL-10 secretion intact, whereas anti-IL-10 antibody administration inhibits both TGF-β and IL-10 secretion. Their data suggest that TGF-β alone is the primary mediator of counter-regulatory Th1-type mucosal inflammation, and that IL-10 is necessary as a secondary factor that facilitates TGF-β production, but does not act as a suppressor cytokine by itself. Interestingly, Kitani *et al*[45] have shown that single intranasal administration of DNA encoding active TGF-β prevents the development of Th1-mediated TNBS colitis. This study shows that following treatment, TGF-β-producing T cells and macrophages are found in the LP and spleen, in which they hypothetically act to prevent induction of TNBS colitis. Therapeutic strategies involving TGF-β-encoding DNA may provide beneficial effects in treating intestinal inflammation.

The role of TGF-α in the small intestine and colon has not been studied as extensively as it has been in the gastric mucosa. In DSS colitis, TGF-α is a mediator of protection and/or healing in the colon, which is demonstrated by the absence of disease in TGF-α-KO mice[46].

Hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) may be a critical regulatory factor in IBD since HGF activator-KO mice are unable to survive after DSS or acetic acid-induced colitis[47]. HGF promotes migration of gastrointestinal epithelial cells and accelerates wound repair by mucosal cells. The importance of HGF has been confirmed by the intrarectal administration of HGF-expressing adenovirus in TNBS-treated mice, which leads to significant improvements in mucosal damage[48]. The same group has also demonstrated the therapeutic effects of naked gene therapy of HGF in the DSS-induced colitis model[49]. Taking these results together, HGF gene delivery may be very useful as a therapeutic strategy for human IBD.

As well as HGF, basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF or FGF-2) also improves mucosal damage by enhancing epithelial cell restitution and proliferation in the gastrointestinal tract[50]. In fact, rectal administration of human recombinant bFGF (hrbFGF) ameliorates DSS-induced colitis by significantly reducing the gene expression level of TNF-α[51]. Not only DSS-, but also TNBS-induced colitis is improved by the administration of hrbFGF, which not only enhances survival rate, but also up-regulates levels of cyclooxygenase (COX)-2, TGF-β, intestinal trefoil factor (ITF), and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in the colon[51].

Lastly, the trefoil factor family is comprised of three peptides; trefoil factor family 1 (TFF1), spasmolytic polypeptide (SP also known TFF2), and ITF (also known as TFF3). TFF2 is a low-molecular-weight protein that is up-regulated in gastric tissues infected with *Helicobacter* or affected by other inflammatory conditions[52]. TFF2 KO mice are susceptible to DSS-induced colitis, with prolonged colonic hemorrhage and persistent weight loss[53]. The importance of ITF in the modulation of inflammation, wound healing, and protection of the intestinal mucosa is supported by experiments in ITF KO mice, which have shown increased susceptibility and delayed wound healing during DSS- and acetic acid-induced colitis[54].

Receptors

TNF-α plays a central role in the pathology of Th1-mediated colitis such as CD; however, the role of its receptors, TNF receptor-type I (TNFR1) and -type Ⅱ

(TNFR2) in mediating pathology has not been fully explored. TNFR2 expression and signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT) 3 activation in colonic epithelial cells (CECs) are markedly up-regulated during the recovery phase of DSS-induced acute colitis[55]. Recently, it has been reported that TNFR1 KO mice lose more weight and have increased mortality compared with wild-type mice, while TNFR2 KO mice lose less weight and have an improved survival rate compared to wild-type mice in TNBS-induced colitis. These results suggest that TNF-α signaling through TNFR1, but not TNFR2, is protective in mouse models of IBD[56].

As for Th1-type responses, CD40L-CD40 interaction is crucial for the priming of Th1 cells *via* the stimulation of IL-12 secretion by antigen-presenting cells (APC) in TNBS-induced colitis. The administration of anti-CD40L antibody prevents IFN-γ production and TNBS-induced colitis, which suggests that the Th1 response may be mediated by CD40L-CD40 interactions[57,58].

Recent studies have demonstrated that the proteinase-activated receptors (PARs), a family of G protein-coupled receptors activated by serine proteinases, have an important anti-inflammatory role in the colon. PAR-1 and -2 are highly expressed in CECs and neuronal elements, and are involved in regulating secretion by the epithelial cells of salivary glands, stomach, pancreas and the intestine[59]. Intracolonic administration of PAR-1 agonist in oxazolone-treated mice efficiently inhibits colitis[59]. By contrast, the inflammatory responses in PAR1 KO or PAR-1 antagonist-treated mice are exacerbated in oxazolone-induced colitis[60]. As well, PAR-2 activation prevents the development of TNBS-induced colitis[61].

Finally, the glucocorticoid-induced TNFR (GITR)-related gene is a member of the TNFR superfamily that is constitutively expressed at high levels on $CD4^+$ $CD25^+$ regulatory T cells, and at low levels on unstimulated T cells, B cells and macrophages[62]. GITR signalling in $CD4^+$ T cells is involved in the development and progression of colitis[63], while deletion of GITR protects against TNBS-induced colitis by reducing innate immune responses and effector T-cell activity[64].

Transcription factors

Nuclear factor (NF)-κB is the key transcription factor for pro-inflammatory responses, and is thought to be important in the initiation and progression of both human IBD and animal models of colitis[65,66]. Disease activity in mice with TNBS-induced colitis is inhibited by antisense oligonucleotides that inhibit the p65 subunit of NF-κB, which suggests a critical role for NF-κB in mediating inflammatory responses[65]. Attempts to control mucosal inflammation by the use of agents that block the NF-κB pathway have had some success in murine models. For example, it has been shown that administration of NF-κB decoy oligodeoxynucleotides (decoy ODNs) encapsulated in a viral envelope prevents the development of TNBS- and oxazolone-induced colitis by inhibiting production of IL-23/IL-17[67]. De Vry *et al* have used a chemically modified, non-viral NF-κB decoy and have shown that the NF-κB decoy ameliorates disease severity in TNBS-, DSS- and oxazolone- induced colitis. These studies suggest that NF-κB decoy ODNs are effective in attenuating Th1- as well as Th2-mediated colitis, and this would be a potentially useful therapeutic strategy for human IBD[68]. In addition to NF-κB, mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) p38 is also a crucial mediator of inflammation. Inhibition of NF-κB and MAPK p38 by SB203580 is able to attenuate the inflammatory response in TNBS-induced colitis models[69,70].

By contrast, TGF-β1 functions as a negative regulator of T-cell immune responses, signaling target cells through the Smad family of proteins. Smad7, an inhibitor of TGF-β1 signaling, is over-expressed in the intestinal mucosa and purified mucosal T cells isolated from patients with IBD[71]. Oral administration of antisense oligonucleotide of Smad7 also ameliorates inflammation in TNBS- and oxazolone-induced colitis, by restoring TGF-β1 signaling *via* Smad3[72].

It has been demonstrated that cytokines exert their biological functions through Janus tyrosine kinases and STAT transcription factors. An experiment blocking the IL-6 receptor has demonstrated that IL-6 plays an important role in the development of Th1-mediated TNBS-induced colitis by activating the STAT3 signaling pathway[73]. Indeed, STAT3 was most strongly tyrosine-phosphorylated in human UC and CD patients and in DSS-induced colitis in mice[74]. These results suggest that the IL-6/STAT3 pathway plays a crucial role in the development and perpetuation of DSS-induced colitis.

Lastly, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ (PPARγ) is a lipid-activated transcription factor, and PPARγ heterozygous mice are highly susceptible to TNBS-[75] and DSS-induced colitis[76]. It has also been reported that mice with a targeted disruption of PPARγ in macrophages display an increased susceptibility to DSS-induced colitis[77]. Therefore, activation of PPARγ may potentially protect against human IBD.

Adhesion molecules

Trafficking, activation and retention of leukocytes within inflamed tissues are mediated by several classes of specialized adhesion glycoproteins[78]. Collagens represent the most abundant extracellular matrix protein, and the major cell surface receptors for collagens are integrins[78,79]. The collagen-binding integrin α1β1 mediates inflammation in TNBS-[80] and DSS-induced colitis[81], which suggests the importance of α1β1-mediated adhesive leukocyte/matrix interactions in regulating mucosal inflammatory responses. Leukocyte β2 integrins are heterodimeric adhesion molecules consisting of a common β subunit (CD18) and different α subunits (CD11a-d)[82]. In DSS-induced colitis, leukocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1, CD11a/CD18) seems to have a pathogenic role, whereas Integrin alpha M (Mac-1α, CD11b/CD18) serves in a regulatory capacity[83]. Much attention has been focused on the role of α4 integrin in IBD, but it has recently been reported that neutralization therapy may result in undesirable complications such as multifocal leukoencephalopathy[84].

Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and their ligands

It is widely suspected that IBD arises from a dysregulated mucosal immune response to luminal bacteria. TLRs,

which are pattern-recognition receptors expressed by both immune and non-immune cells, play a pivotal role in host/microbial interactions and have two distinct functions-protection from infection and control of tissue homeostasis, depending on the recognition of pathogens or commensals[85-88]. TLRs send intracellular signals in response to intestinal commensal or pathogenic microbes that contain or release conserved molecular patterns, such as LPS, bacterial lipoprotein, bacterial cytosine-guanosine dinucleotide (CpG) DNA, and bacterial flagellin. Activation of TLRs results in the activation of the innate and/or adaptive immune response[85]. In this context, TLRs play an important role in the maintenance of intestinal homeostasis. TLR4 recognizes LPS, and transduces a proinflammatory signal through the adapter molecule myeloid differentiation marker 88 (MyD88)[86]. DSS treatment of TLR4 KO and MyD88 KO mice has been shown to induce earlier and more severe colitis compared to that in wild-type mice, which suggests that TLR4 signaling through MyD88 is an important suppressor of the inflammatory response to chemical injury[87].

Bacterial flagellin specifically stimulates TLR5 and activates MAPK and NF-κB-related signaling pathways, which leads to the production of macrophage inflammatory protein 3α (MIP3α) and IL-8[89]. Flagellin exposure exacerbates inflammation in DSS-induced colitis, but not in the intact colon[88]. By contrast, a TLR2 specific agonist, peptidoglycan or lipoteichoic acid, does not cause any inflammatory response[90].

Lastly, TLR9 is critical for the recognition of the CpG motif of bacterial DNA[91]. DSS-induced colitis is less severe in TLR-9 KO mice[92], and treatment of mice with an adenovirus expressing CpG-ODN that is known to block CpG effects results in significant amelioration of DSS-induced colitis[92], which indicates that ODN inhibition of the immune-stimulating properties of bacterial DNA may offer a novel and specific tool for the treatment of IBD.

Enzymes

Although intestinal epithelial cells constitutively express COX-1, COX-2 is induced only during inflammatory conditions. Enzymatic activity of these COX isoforms produces prostaglandins (PGs) that have proinflammatory roles mediating fever, hyperalgesia, vascular permeability and edema. However, PGs also have a protective role against gastrointestinal injury[93]. The linkage between COX-2 and PGE2 for protection against colitis has been highlighted in various studies. For example, COX-2 KO mice are more susceptible to DSS-induced colitis, which correlates with their inability to produce PGE2[94]. Kabashima *et al*[95] have used mice deficient in prostaglandin receptor EP4 and examined the roles of prostanoids in DSS-induced colitis; their mice developed severe colitis, which suggests that EP4 maintains intestinal homeostasis by keeping mucosal integrity and down-regulating immune responses. It has also been shown that COX-2-derived PGE2 is important in TLR4-related mucosal repair[96], and that COX-2 has a protective effect against acetic-acid-induced colitis[97,98]. These results suggest that COX-2 has a pivotal role in the maintenance of mucosal homeostasis. However, there is controversy about whether COX-2 inhibitors worsen symptoms of human IBD[99].

Through the use of DNA microarray analysis, our group has demonstrated that several detoxification-associated molecules, which contribute to the prevention of inflammation by regulating physiological balance under normal conditions, are highly down-regulated in CECs in chronic colitis[100]. Among the up-regulated detoxification-associated molecules, carbonic anhydrase (CAR)-Ⅳ is an important enzyme involved in the suppression of acidification, by regulating mucosal bicarbonate concentration[101]. Unexpectedly, inhibition of CAR-Ⅳ suppresses the severity of DSS-induced colitis but enhances CEC proliferation, which raises the possibility that CAR-Ⅳ may have a pathogenic role under inflammatory conditions. Microarray analysis also identifies chitinase 3-like-1 (CHI3L1) as being specifically up-regulated in inflamed mucosa[102]. The expression of CHI3L1 protein is detectable in LP and CECs in several murine colitis models, and also in IBD patients, but is absent in normal controls. Anti-CHI3L1 antibody administration significantly ameliorates DSS-induced colitis, which suggests that inhibition of CHI3L1 activity may be a novel therapeutic approach for IBD. Our group is currently investigating this possibility by utilizing murine models of chronic colitis.

As well, IL-1β-converting enzyme (ICE), also known as caspase-1, is an intracellular protease that cleaves the precursors of IL-1β and IL-18 into active cytokines[103,104]. ICE deficiency results in protection from DSS-induced colitis, accompanied by the reduced release of the proinflammatory cytokines IL-18, IL-1β and IFN-γ[105].

Lastly, recent studies have identified Vanin-1 as being involved in the regulation of innate immunity. Vanin-1 is an epithelial ectoenzyme with pantetheinase activity, which is involved in the metabolic pathway of pantothenate (vitamin B5), and provides cysteamine to tissues[106]. Vanin-1 deficiency protects from TNBS-induced colitis. Additionally, by antagonizing PPARγ, Vanin-1 promotes the production of inflammatory mediators by intestinal epithelial cells[107]. This study suggests that Vanin-1 is an epithelial sensor of stress that exerts control over innate immune responses in tissues. As such, it has been proposed as a potential new therapeutic target for IBD.

Hormones

It has been demonstrated that adipose tissue secretes a variety of biologically active molecules[108]. Adiponectin (APN) is an adipose tissue-derived hormone and is considered to be a member of the expanding family of adipokines[109]. APN has a protective role against DSS-induced murine colitis, but not TNBS-induced disease[110], by inhibiting the production of chemokines such as monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 and MIP-2 in CECs, and the subsequent inflammatory response. However, a proinflammatory role for APN in synovial fibroblasts[111] and CECs[112] has recently been suggested. APN exerts proinflammatory activity in the colon by producing proinflammatory cytokines and inhibiting the bioactivity of protective growth factors such as bFGF and heparin-

binding epidermal growth factor. It is interesting to note that APN KO mice are highly protected from both DSS- and TNBS-induced colitis[112].

Finally, leptin, a regulator of food intake and energy expenditure, can also modulate immune and inflammatory responses. Leptin-deficient (ob/ob) mice exhibit less severe colitis compared to wild-type mice in DSS and TNBS models, while replacement of leptin in ob/ob mice converts disease resistance to susceptibility, which indicates that leptin deficiency accounts for the resistance to acute DSS- and TNBS-induced colitis[113]. It has also been shown that phosphorylation of STAT3 and induction of COX-2 are absent in the colon of ob/ob mice[113]. Therefore, leptin represents a functional link between the endocrine and immune systems.

CONCLUSION

Dysregulated immune responses initiated by microbial-host interactions contribute to the development and perpetuation of both murine colitis and, most likely, to human IBD. In this process, intestinal epithelial cells play important roles linking innate and acquired immune responses. In this review, we have focused primarily on the role of functionally distinct factors in the pathogenesis of chemically-induced models of intestinal inflammation during acute, recovery and chronic phases. The increasing clinical use of biological therapy in human IBD illustrates the potential benefits that may be derived from molecular analysis of immunopathogenesis. However, the long-term effects of such therapy have still not been determined, and concerns regarding potentially increased risks of infection or tumor development have been raised, given the essential roles of innate and acquired immunity in host defense. In this respect, topical treatment would have the advantage of selectively targeting local immune responses while sparing systemic immune protective mechanisms. Therefore, we need to find agents that have more targeted effects or take advantage of local delivery systems that target diseased lesions, such as is seen with oligonucleotide-based therapeutics. The different animal models provide an easy means to study factors involved in pathogenesis and to test new therapeutic agents for human IBD.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Dr. Deanna Nguyen is thanked for her critical comments and helpful discussion and Ms. Sarah Murphy for her secretarial assistance in preparing this review article.

REFERENCES

1 **Podolsky DK**. Inflammatory bowel disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 417-429
2 **Okayasu I**, Hatakeyama S, Yamada M, Ohkusa T, Inagaki Y, Nakaya R. A novel method in the induction of reliable experimental acute and chronic ulcerative colitis in mice. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 694-702
3 **Cooper HS**, Murthy SN, Shah RS, Sedergran DJ. Clinicopathologic study of dextran sulfate sodium experimental murine colitis. *Lab Invest* 1993; **69**: 238-249
4 **Yamada Y**, Marshall S, Specian RD, Grisham MB. A comparative analysis of two models of colitis in rats. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 1524-1534
5 **Dieleman LA**, Ridwan BU, Tennyson GS, Beagley KW, Bucy RP, Elson CO. Dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis occurs in severe combined immunodeficient mice. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 1643-1652
6 **Rath HC**, Schultz M, Freitag R, Dieleman LA, Li F, Linde HJ, Schölmerich J, Sartor RB. Different subsets of enteric bacteria induce and perpetuate experimental colitis in rats and mice. *Infect Immun* 2001; **69**: 2277-2285
7 **Dieleman LA**, Palmen MJ, Akol H, Bloemena E, Peña AS, Meuwissen SG, Van Rees EP. Chronic experimental colitis induced by dextran sulphate sodium (DSS) is characterized by Th1 and Th2 cytokines. *Clin Exp Immunol* 1998; **114**: 385-391
8 **Neurath MF**, Fuss I, Kelsall BL, Stüber E, Strober W. Antibodies to interleukin 12 abrogate established experimental colitis in mice. *J Exp Med* 1995; **182**: 1281-1290
9 **Elson CO**, Beagley KW, Sharmanov AT, Fujihashi K, Kiyono H, Tennyson GS, Cong Y, Black CA, Ridwan BW, McGhee JR. Hapten-induced model of murine inflammatory bowel disease: mucosa immune responses and protection by tolerance. *J Immunol* 1996; **157**: 2174-2185
10 **Neurath MF**, Fuss I, Kelsall BL, Presky DH, Waegell W, Strober W. Experimental granulomatous colitis in mice is abrogated by induction of TGF-beta-mediated oral tolerance. *J Exp Med* 1996; **183**: 2605-2616
11 **Bouma G**, Kaushiva A, Strober W. Experimental murine colitis is regulated by two genetic loci, including one on chromosome 11 that regulates IL-12 responses. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 554-565
12 **te Velde AA**, de Kort F, Sterrenburg E, Pronk I, ten Kate FJ, Hommes DW, van Deventer SJ. Comparative analysis of colonic gene expression of three experimental colitis models mimicking inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2007; **13**: 325-330
13 **Boirivant M**, Fuss IJ, Chu A, Strober W. Oxazolone colitis: A murine model of T helper cell type 2 colitis treatable with antibodies to interleukin 4. *J Exp Med* 1998; **188**: 1929-1939
14 **Elson CO**, Sartor RB, Tennyson GS, Riddell RH. Experimental models of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 1344-1367
15 **MacPherson BR**, Pfeiffer CJ. Experimental production of diffuse colitis in rats. *Digestion* 1978; **17**: 135-150
16 **Dieleman LA**, Elson CO, Tennyson GS, Beagley KW. Kinetics of cytokine expression during healing of acute colitis in mice. *Am J Physiol* 1996; **271**: G130-G136
17 **Yamada T**, Deitch E, Specian RD, Perry MA, Sartor RB, Grisham MB. Mechanisms of acute and chronic intestinal inflammation induced by indomethacin. *Inflammation* 1993; **17**: 641-662
18 **Strober W**, Fuss IJ, Blumberg RS. The immunology of mucosal models of inflammation. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2002; **20**: 495-549
19 **Heller F**, Fuss IJ, Nieuwenhuis EE, Blumberg RS, Strober W. Oxazolone colitis, a Th2 colitis model resembling ulcerative colitis, is mediated by IL-13-producing NK-T cells. *Immunity* 2002; **17**: 629-638
20 **Trop S**, Samsonov D, Gotsman I, Alper R, Diment J, Ilan Y. Liver-associated lymphocytes expressing NK1.1 are essential for oral immune tolerance induction in a murine model. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 746-755
21 **Nitta T**, Iwata H, Mori Y, Takagi H, Hirota T, Kanetake K, Iida Y, Sakamoto K, Yamada T, Saio M, Hirose H. Specific CTL activity of CD8+ TCR Vbeta14+ T cell in mouse 2, 4, 6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-induced colitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48**: 2095-2103
22 **Komano H**, Fujiura Y, Kawaguchi M, Matsumoto S, Hashimoto Y, Obana S, Mombaerts P, Tonegawa S, Yamamoto H, Itohara S. Homeostatic regulation of intestinal epithelia by intraepithelial gamma delta T cells. Proc *Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995; **92**: 6147-6151
23 **Chen Y**, Chou K, Fuchs E, Havran WL, Boismenu R. Protection of the intestinal mucosa by intraepithelial gamma delta T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 14338-14343
24 **Tsuchiya T**, Fukuda S, Hamada H, Nakamura A, Kohama Y, Ishikawa H, Tsujikawa K, Yamamoto H. Role of gamma delta T cells in the inflammatory response of experimental colitis mice. *J Immunol* 2003; **171**: 5507-5513
25 **Hoffmann JC**, Peters K, Henschke S, Herrmann B, Pfister

K, Westermann J, Zeitz M. Role of T lymphocytes in rat 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulphonic acid (TNBS) induced colitis: increased mortality after gammadelta T cell depletion and no effect of alphabeta T cell depletion. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 489-495

26 **Inagaki-Ohara K**, Chinen T, Matsuzaki G, Sasaki A, Sakamoto Y, Hiromatsu K, Nakamura-Uchiyama F, Nawa Y, Yoshimura A. Mucosal T cells bearing TCRgammadelta play a protective role in intestinal inflammation. *J Immunol* 2004; **173**: 1390-1398

27 **Iijima H**, Neurath MF, Nagaishi T, Glickman JN, Nieuwenhuis EE, Nakajima A, Chen D, Fuss IJ, Utku N, Lewicki DN, Becker C, Gallagher TM, Holmes KV, Blumberg RS. Specific regulation of T helper cell 1-mediated murine colitis by CEACAM1. *J Exp Med* 2004; **199**: 471-482

28 **Boirivant M**, Strober W, Fuss IJ. Regulatory cells induced by feeding TNP-haptenated colonic protein cross-protect mice from colitis induced by an unrelated hapten. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 48-55

29 **Neurath MF**, Fuss I, Pasparakis M, Alexopoulou L, Haralambous S, Meyer zum Büschenfelde KH, Strober W, Kollias G. Predominant pathogenic role of tumor necrosis factor in experimental colitis in mice. *Eur J Immunol* 1997; **27**: 1743-1750

30 **Fuss IJ**, Marth T, Neurath MF, Pearlstein GR, Jain A, Strober W. Anti-interleukin 12 treatment regulates apoptosis of Th1 T cells in experimental colitis in mice. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 1078-1088

31 **Kanai T**, Watanabe M, Okazawa A, Sato T, Yamazaki M, Okamoto S, Ishii H, Totsuka T, Iiyama R, Okamoto R, Ikeda M, Kurimoto M, Takeda K, Akira S, Hibi T. Macrophage-derived IL-18-mediated intestinal inflammation in the murine model of Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 875-888

32 **Ten Hove T**, Corbaz A, Amitai H, Aloni S, Belzer I, Graber P, Drillenburg P, van Deventer SJ, Chvatchko Y, Te Velde AA. Blockade of endogenous IL-18 ameliorates TNBS-induced colitis by decreasing local TNF-alpha production in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 1372-1379

33 **Sivakumar PV**, Westrich GM, Kanaly S, Garka K, Born TL, Derry JM, Viney JL. Interleukin 18 is a primary mediator of the inflammation associated with dextran sulphate sodium induced colitis: blocking interleukin 18 attenuates intestinal damage. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 812-820

34 **Camoglio L**, Juffermans NP, Peppelenbosch M, te Velde AA, ten Kate FJ, van Deventer SJ, Kopf M. Contrasting roles of IL-12p40 and IL-12p35 in the development of hapten-induced colitis. *Eur J Immunol* 2002; **32**: 261-269

35 **Uhlig HH**, McKenzie BS, Hue S, Thompson C, Joyce-Shaikh B, Stepankova R, Robinson N, Buonocore S, Tlaskalova-Hogenova H, Cua DJ, Powrie F. Differential activity of IL-12 and IL-23 in mucosal and systemic innate immune pathology. *Immunity* 2006; **25**: 309-318

36 **Harrington LE**, Hatton RD, Mangan PR, Turner H, Murphy TL, Murphy KM, Weaver CT. Interleukin 17-producing CD4+ effector T cells develop via a lineage distinct from the T helper type 1 and 2 lineages. *Nat Immunol* 2005; **6**: 1123-1132

37 **Park H**, Li Z, Yang XO, Chang SH, Nurieva R, Wang YH, Wang Y, Hood L, Zhu Z, Tian Q, Dong C. A distinct lineage of CD4 T cells regulates tissue inflammation by producing interleukin 17. *Nat Immunol* 2005; **6**: 1133-1141

38 **Zhang Z**, Zheng M, Bindas J, Schwarzenberger P, Kolls JK. Critical role of IL-17 receptor signaling in acute TNBS-induced colitis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2006; **12**: 382-388

39 **Becker C**, Dornhoff H, Neufert C, Fantini MC, Wirtz S, Huebner S, Nikolaev A, Lehr HA, Murphy AJ, Valenzuela DM, Yancopoulos GD, Galle PR, Karow M, Neurath MF. Cutting edge: IL-23 cross-regulates IL-12 production in T cell-dependent experimental colitis. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 2760-2764

40 **Fichtner-Feigl S**, Strober W, Kawakami K, Puri RK, Kitani A. IL-13 signaling through the IL-13alpha2 receptor is involved in induction of TGF-beta1 production and fibrosis. *Nat Med* 2006; **12**: 99-106

41 **Pflanz S**, Timans JC, Cheung J, Rosales R, Kanzler H, Gilbert J, Hibbert L, Churakova T, Travis M, Vaisberg E, Blumenschein WM, Mattson JD, Wagner JL, To W, Zurawski S, McClanahan TK, Gorman DM, Bazan JF, de Waal Malefyt R, Rennick D, Kastelein RA. IL-27, a heterodimeric cytokine composed of EBI3 and p28 protein, induces proliferation of naive CD4+ T cells. *Immunity* 2002; **16**: 779-790

42 **Nieuwenhuis EE**, Neurath MF, Corazza N, Iijima H, Trgovcich J, Wirtz S, Glickman J, Bailey D, Yoshida M, Galle PR, Kronenberg M, Birkenbach M, Blumberg RS. Disruption of T helper 2-immune responses in Epstein-Barr virus-induced gene 3-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 16951-16956

43 **Beck PL**, Podolsky DK. Growth factors in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 1999; **5**: 44-60

44 **Fuss IJ**, Boirivant M, Lacy B, Strober W. The interrelated roles of TGF-beta and IL-10 in the regulation of experimental colitis. *J Immunol* 2002; **168**: 900-908

45 **Kitani A**, Fuss IJ, Nakamura K, Schwartz OM, Usui T, Strober W. Treatment of experimental (Trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid) colitis by intranasal administration of transforming growth factor (TGF)-beta1 plasmid: TGF-beta1-mediated suppression of T helper cell type 1 response occurs by interleukin (IL)-10 induction and IL-12 receptor beta2 chain downregulation. *J Exp Med* 2000; **192**: 41-52

46 **Egger B**, Procaccino F, Lakshmanan J, Reinshagen M, Hoffmann P, Patel A, Reuben W, Gnanakkan S, Liu L, Barajas L, Eysselein VE. Mice lacking transforming growth factor alpha have an increased susceptibility to dextran sulfate-induced colitis. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 825-832

47 **Itoh H**, Naganuma S, Takeda N, Miyata S, Uchinokura S, Fukushima T, Uchiyama S, Tanaka H, Nagaike K, Shimomura T, Miyazawa K, Yamada G, Kitamura N, Koono M, Kataoka H. Regeneration of injured intestinal mucosa is impaired in hepatocyte growth factor activator-deficient mice. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 1423-1435

48 **Mukoyama T**, Kanbe T, Murai R, Murawaki Y, Shimomura T, Hashiguchi K, Saeki T, Ichiba M, Yoshida Y, Tanabe N, Kurimasa A, Harada K, Yashima K, Hisatome I, Ito H, Murawaki Y, Shiota G. Therapeutic effect of adenoviral-mediated hepatocyte growth factor gene administration on TNBS-induced colitis in mice. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2005; **329**: 1217-1224

49 **Kanbe T**, Murai R, Mukoyama T, Murawaki Y, Hashiguchi K, Yoshida Y, Tsuchiya H, Kurimasa A, Harada K, Yashima K, Nishimuki E, Shabana N, Kishimoto Y, Kojyo H, Miura K, Murawaki Y, Kawasaki H, Shiota G. Naked gene therapy of hepatocyte growth factor for dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis in mice. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006; **345**: 1517-1525

50 **Dignass AU**, Tsunekawa S, Podolsky DK. Fibroblast growth factors modulate intestinal epithelial cell growth and migration. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **106**: 1254-1262

51 **Matsuura M**, Okazaki K, Nishio A, Nakase H, Tamaki H, Uchida K, Nishi T, Asada M, Kawasaki K, Fukui T, Yoshizawa H, Ohashi S, Inoue S, Kawanami C, Hiai H, Tabata Y, Chiba T. Therapeutic effects of rectal administration of basic fibroblast growth factor on experimental murine colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 975-986

52 **Sands BE**, Podolsky DK. The trefoil peptide family. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1996; **58**: 253-273

53 **Kurt-Jones EA**, Cao L, Sandor F, Rogers AB, Whary MT, Nambiar PR, Cerny A, Bowen G, Yan J, Takaishi S, Chi AL, Reed G, Houghton J, Fox JG, Wang TC. Trefoil family factor 2 is expressed in murine gastric and immune cells and controls both gastrointestinal inflammation and systemic immune responses. *Infect Immun* 2007; **75**: 471-480

54 **Mashimo H**, Wu DC, Podolsky DK, Fishman MC. Impaired defense of intestinal mucosa in mice lacking intestinal trefoil factor. *Science* 1996; **274**: 262-265

55 **Mizoguchi E**, Mizoguchi A, Takedatsu H, Cario E, de Jong YP, Ooi CJ, Xavier RJ, Terhorst C, Podolsky DK, Bhan AK. Role of tumor necrosis factor receptor 2 (TNFR2) in colonic epithelial hyperplasia and chronic intestinal inflammation in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 134-144

56 **Ebach DR**, Newberry R, Stenson WF. Differential role of tumor necrosis factor receptors in TNBS colitis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 533-540

57 **Stuber E**, Strober W, Neurath M. Blocking the CD40L-CD40 interaction in vivo specifically prevents the priming of T

helper 1 cells through the inhibition of interleukin 12 secretion. *J Exp Med* 1996; **183**: 693-698
58 **Kelsall BL**, Stüber E, Neurath M, Strober W. Interleukin-12 production by dendritic cells. The role of CD40-CD40L interactions in Th1 T-cell responses. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1996; **795**: 116-126
59 **MacNaughton WK**. Epithelial effects of proteinase-activated receptors in the gastrointestinal tract. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2005; **100** Suppl 1: 211-215
60 **Cenac N**, Cellars L, Steinhoff M, Andrade-Gordon P, Hollenberg MD, Wallace JL, Fiorucci S, Vergnolle N. Proteinase-activated receptor-1 is an anti-inflammatory signal for colitis mediated by a type 2 immune response. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 792-798
61 **Fiorucci S**, Mencarelli A, Palazzetti B, Distrutti E, Vergnolle N, Hollenberg MD, Wallace JL, Morelli A, Cirino G. Proteinase-activated receptor 2 is an anti-inflammatory signal for colonic lamina propria lymphocytes in a mouse model of colitis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 13936-13941
62 **Shimizu J**, Yamazaki S, Takahashi T, Ishida Y, Sakaguchi S. Stimulation of CD25(+)CD4(+) regulatory T cells through GITR breaks immunological self-tolerance. *Nat Immunol* 2002; **3**: 135-142
63 **Lee SK**, Choi BK, Kim YH, Kang WJ, Kim KH, Sakaguchi S, Suh JH, Kim TY, Kwon BS. Glucocorticoid-induced tumour necrosis factor receptor family-related receptor signalling exacerbates hapten-induced colitis by CD4+ T cells. *Immunology* 2006; **119**: 479-487
64 **Santucci L**, Agostini M, Bruscoli S, Mencarelli A, Ronchetti S, Ayroldi E, Morelli A, Baldoni M, Riccardi C. GITR modulates innate and adaptive mucosal immunity during the development of experimental colitis in mice. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 52-60
65 **Neurath MF**, Pettersson S, Meyer zum Büschenfelde KH, Strober W. Local administration of antisense phosphorothioate oligonucleotides to the p65 subunit of NF-kappa B abrogates established experimental colitis in mice. *Nat Med* 1996; **2**: 998-1004
66 **Fichtner-Feigl S**, Fuss IJ, Preiss JC, Strober W, Kitani A. Treatment of murine Th1- and Th2-mediated inflammatory bowel disease with NF-kappa B decoy oligonucleotides. *J Clin Invest* 2005; **115**: 3057-3071
67 **Schreiber S**, Nikolaus S, Hampe J. Activation of nuclear factor kappa B inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 1998; **42**: 477-484
68 **De Vry CG**, Prasad S, Komuves L, Lorenzana C, Parham C, Le T, Adda S, Hoffman J, Kahoud N, Garlapati R, Shyamsundar R, Mai K, Zhang J, Muchamuel T, Dajee M, Schryver B, McEvoy LM, Ehrhardt RO. Non-viral delivery of nuclear factor-kappaB decoy ameliorates murine inflammatory bowel disease and restores tissue homeostasis. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 524-533
69 **ten Hove T**, van den Blink B, Pronk I, Drillenburg P, Peppelenbosch MP, van Deventer SJ. Dichotomal role of inhibition of p38 MAPK with SB 203580 in experimental colitis. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 507-512
70 **Hollenbach E**, Vieth M, Roessner A, Neumann M, Malfertheiner P, Naumann M. Inhibition of RICK/nuclear factor-kappaB and p38 signaling attenuates the inflammatory response in a murine model of Crohn disease. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 14981-14988
71 **Monteleone G**, Kumberova A, Croft NM, McKenzie C, Steer HW, MacDonald TT. Blocking Smad7 restores TGF-beta1 signaling in chronic inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **108**: 601-609
72 **Boirivant M**, Pallone F, Di Giacinto C, Fina D, Monteleone I, Marinaro M, Caruso R, Colantoni A, Palmieri G, Sanchez M, Strober W, MacDonald TT, Monteleone G. Inhibition of Smad7 with a specific antisense oligonucleotide facilitates TGF-beta1-mediated suppression of colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 1786-1798
73 **Atreya R**, Mudter J, Finotto S, Müllberg J, Jostock T, Wirtz S, Schütz M, Bartsch B, Holtmann M, Becker C, Strand D, Czaja J, Schlaak JF, Lehr HA, Autschbach F, Schürmann G, Nishimoto N, Yoshizaki K, Ito H, Kishimoto T, Galle PR, Rose-John S, Neurath MF. Blockade of interleukin 6 trans signaling suppresses T-cell resistance against apoptosis in chronic intestinal inflammation: evidence in crohn disease and experimental colitis in vivo. *Nat Med* 2000; **6**: 583-588
74 **Suzuki A**, Hanada T, Mitsuyama K, Yoshida T, Kamizono S, Hoshino T, Kubo M, Yamashita A, Okabe M, Takeda K, Akira S, Matsumoto S, Toyonaga A, Sata M, Yoshimura A. CIS3/SOCS3/SSI3 plays a negative regulatory role in STAT3 activation and intestinal inflammation. *J Exp Med* 2001; **193**: 471-481
75 **Desreumaux P**, Dubuquoy L, Nutten S, Peuchmaur M, Englaro W, Schoonjans K, Derijard B, Desvergne B, Wahli W, Chambon P, Leibowitz MD, Colombel JF, Auwerx J. Attenuation of colon inflammation through activators of the retinoid X receptor (RXR)/peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma (PPARgamma) heterodimer. A basis for new therapeutic strategies. *J Exp Med* 2001; **193**: 827-838
76 **Bassaganya-Riera J**, Reynolds K, Martino-Catt S, Cui Y, Hennighausen L, Gonzalez F, Rohrer J, Benninghoff AU, Hontecillas R. Activation of PPAR gamma and delta by conjugated linoleic acid mediates protection from experimental inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 777-791
77 **Shah YM**, Morimura K, Gonzalez FJ. Expression of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma in macrophage suppresses experimentally induced colitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2007; **292**: G657-G666
78 **Springer TA**. Traffic signals for lymphocyte recirculation and leukocyte emigration: the multistep paradigm. *Cell* 1994; **76**: 301-314
79 **Hemler ME**. VLA proteins in the integrin family: structures, functions, and their role on leukocytes. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1990; **8**: 365-400
80 **Fiorucci S**, Mencarelli A, Palazzetti B, Sprague AG, Distrutti E, Morelli A, Novobrantseva TI, Cirino G, Koteliansky VE, de Fougerolles AR. Importance of innate immunity and collagen binding integrin alpha1beta1 in TNBS-induced colitis. *Immunity* 2002; **17**: 769-780
81 **Krieglstein CF**, Cerwinka WH, Sprague AG, Laroux FS, Grisham MB, Koteliansky VE, Senninger N, Granger DN, de Fougerolles AR. Collagen-binding integrin alpha1beta1 regulates intestinal inflammation in experimental colitis. *J Clin Invest* 2002; **110**: 1773-1782
82 **Harris ES**, McIntyre TM, Prescott SM, Zimmerman GA. The leukocyte integrins. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 23409-23412
83 **Abdelbaqi M**, Chidlow JH, Matthews KM, Pavlick KP, Barlow SC, Linscott AJ, Grisham MB, Fowler MR, Kevil CG. Regulation of dextran sodium sulfate induced colitis by leukocyte beta 2 integrins. *Lab Invest* 2006; **86**: 380-390
84 **Podolsky DK**. Selective adhesion-molecule therapy and inflammatory bowel disease--a tale of Janus? *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 1965-1968
85 **Pasare C**, Medzhitov R. Toll-like receptors: linking innate and adaptive immunity. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 2005; **560**: 11-18
86 **Medzhitov R**, Preston-Hurlburt P, Kopp E, Stadlen A, Chen C, Ghosh S, Janeway CA Jr. MyD88 is an adaptor protein in the hToll/IL-1 receptor family signaling pathways. *Mol Cell* 1998; **2**: 253-258
87 **Fukata M**, Michelsen KS, Eri R, Thomas LS, Hu B, Lukasek K, Nast CC, Lechago J, Xu R, Naiki Y, Soliman A, Arditi M, Abreu MT. Toll-like receptor-4 is required for intestinal response to epithelial injury and limiting bacterial translocation in a murine model of acute colitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **288**: G1055-G1065
88 **Rakoff-Nahoum S**, Paglino J, Eslami-Varzaneh F, Edberg S, Medzhitov R. Recognition of commensal microflora by toll-like receptors is required for intestinal homeostasis. *Cell* 2004; **118**: 229-241
89 **Rhee SH**, Keates AC, Moyer MP, Pothoulakis C. MEK is a key modulator for TLR5-induced interleukin-8 and MIP3alpha gene expression in non-transformed human colonic epithelial cells. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 25179-25188
90 **Rhee SH**, Im E, Riegler M, Kokkotou E, O'brien M, Pothoulakis C. Pathophysiological role of Toll-like receptor 5 engagement by bacterial flagellin in colonic inflammation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 13610-13615

91 **Hemmi H**, Takeuchi O, Kawai T, Kaisho T, Sato S, Sanjo H, Matsumoto M, Hoshino K, Wagner H, Takeda K, Akira S. A Toll-like receptor recognizes bacterial DNA. *Nature* 2000; **408**: 740-745

92 **Obermeier F**, Dunger N, Strauch UG, Hofmann C, Bleich A, Grunwald N, Hedrich HJ, Aschenbrenner E, Schlegelberger B, Rogler G, Schölmerich J, Falk W. CpG motifs of bacterial DNA essentially contribute to the perpetuation of chronic intestinal inflammation. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 913-927

93 **Hoult JR**, Moore PK. Sulphasalazine is a potent inhibitor of prostaglandin 15-hydroxydehydrogenase: possible basis for therapeutic action in ulcerative colitis. *Br J Pharmacol* 1978; **64**: 6-8

94 **Morteau O**, Morham SG, Sellon R, Dieleman LA, Langenbach R, Smithies O, Sartor RB. Impaired mucosal defense to acute colonic injury in mice lacking cyclooxygenase-1 or cyclooxygenase-2. *J Clin Invest* 2000; **105**: 469-478

95 **Kabashima K**, Saji T, Murata T, Nagamachi M, Matsuoka T, Segi E, Tsuboi K, Sugimoto Y, Kobayashi T, Miyachi Y, Ichikawa A, Narumiya S. The prostaglandin receptor EP4 suppresses colitis, mucosal damage and CD4 cell activation in the gut. *J Clin Invest* 2002; **109**: 883-893

96 **Fukata M**, Chen A, Klepper A, Krishnareddy S, Vamadevan AS, Thomas LS, Xu R, Inoue H, Arditi M, Dannenberg AJ, Abreu MT. Cox-2 is regulated by Toll-like receptor-4 (TLR4) signaling: Role in proliferation and apoptosis in the intestine. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 862-877

97 **Ohara K**, Kono T, Chisato N, Asama T, Yoneda M, Kasai S. Acetic acid-derived prostaglandin-dependent colonic adaptive cytoprotection is preserved in chronic colitis: role of cyclo-oxygenase. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2003; **18**: 260-266

98 **Karmeli F**, Cohen P, Rachmilewitz D. Cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitors ameliorate the severity of experimental colitis in rats. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2000; **12**: 223-231

99 **Matuk R**, Crawford J, Abreu MT, Targan SR, Vasiliauskas EA, Papadakis KA. The spectrum of gastrointestinal toxicity and effect on disease activity of selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10**: 352-356

100 **Mizoguchi E**, Xavier RJ, Reinecker HC, Uchino H, Bhan AK, Podolsky DK, Mizoguchi A. Colonic epithelial functional phenotype varies with type and phase of experimental colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 148-161

101 **Charney AN**, Wagner JD, Birnbaum GJ, Johnstone JN. Functional role of carbonic anhydrase in intestinal electrolyte transport. *Am J Physiol* 1986; **251**: G682-G687

102 **Mizoguchi E**. Chitinase 3-like-1 exacerbates intestinal inflammation by enhancing bacterial adhesion and invasion in colonic epithelial cells. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 398-411

103 **Ghayur T**, Banerjee S, Hugunin M, Butler D, Herzog L, Carter A, Quintal L, Sekut L, Talanian R, Paskind M, Wong W, Kamen R, Tracey D, Allen H. Caspase-1 processes IFN-gamma-inducing factor and regulates LPS-induced IFN-gamma production. *Nature* 1997; **386**: 619-623

104 **Gu Y**, Kuida K, Tsutsui H, Ku G, Hsiao K, Fleming MA, Hayashi N, Higashino K, Okamura H, Nakanishi K, Kurimoto M, Tanimoto T, Flavell RA, Sato V, Harding MW, Livingston DJ, Su MS. Activation of interferon-gamma inducing factor mediated by interleukin-1beta converting enzyme. *Science* 1997; **275**: 206-209

105 **Siegmund B**, Lehr HA, Fantuzzi G, Dinarello CA. IL-1 beta -converting enzyme (caspase-1) in intestinal inflammation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 13249-13254

106 **Pitari G**, Malergue F, Martin F, Philippe JM, Massucci MT, Chabret C, Maras B, Duprè S, Naquet P, Galland F. Pantetheinase activity of membrane-bound Vanin-1: lack of free cysteamine in tissues of Vanin-1 deficient mice. *FEBS Lett* 2000; **483**: 149-154

107 **Berruyer C**, Pouyet L, Millet V, Martin FM, LeGoffic A, Canonici A, Garcia S, Bagnis C, Naquet P, Galland F. Vanin-1 licenses inflammatory mediator production by gut epithelial cells and controls colitis by antagonizing peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma activity. *J Exp Med* 2006; **203**: 2817-2827

108 **Friedman JM**. Obesity in the new millennium. *Nature* 2000; **404**: 632-634

109 **Kim JY**, Scherer PE. Adiponectin, an adipocyte-derived hepatic insulin sensitizer regulation during development. *Pediatr Endocrinol Rev* 2004; **1** Suppl 3: 428-431

110 **Nishihara T**, Matsuda M, Araki H, Oshima K, Kihara S, Funahashi T, Shimomura I. Effect of adiponectin on murine colitis induced by dextran sulfate sodium. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 853-861

111 **Ehling A**, Schäffler A, Herfarth H, Tarner IH, Anders S, Distler O, Paul G, Distler J, Gay S, Schölmerich J, Neumann E, Müller-Ladner U. The potential of adiponectin in driving arthritis. *J Immunol* 2006; **176**: 4468-4478

112 **Fayad R**, Pini M, Sennello JA, Cabay RJ, Chan L, Xu A, Fantuzzi G. Adiponectin deficiency protects mice from chemically induced colonic inflammation. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 601-614

113 **Siegmund B**, Lehr HA, Fantuzzi G. Leptin: a pivotal mediator of intestinal inflammation in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 2011-2025

114 **Ohkawara T**, Nishihira J, Takeda H, Hige S, Kato M, Sugiyama T, Iwanaga T, Nakamura H, Mizue Y, Asaka M. Amelioration of dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis by anti-macrophage migration inhibitory factor antibody in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 256-270

115 **Kwon JH**, Keates AC, Anton PM, Botero M, Goldsmith JD, Kelly CP. Topical antisense oligonucleotide therapy against LIX, an enterocyte-expressed CXC chemokine, reduces murine colitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **289**: G1075-G1083

116 **Andres PG**, Beck PL, Mizoguchi E, Mizoguchi A, Bhan AK, Dawson T, Kuziel WA, Maeda N, MacDermott RP, Podolsky DK, Reinecker HC. Mice with a selective deletion of the CC chemokine receptors 5 or 2 are protected from dextran sodium sulfate-mediated colitis: lack of CC chemokine receptor 5 expression results in a NK1.1+ lymphocyte-associated Th2-type immune response in the intestine. *J Immunol* 2000; **164**: 6303-6312

117 **Arai Y**, Takanashi H, Kitagawa H, Okayasu I. Involvement of interleukin-1 in the development of ulcerative colitis induced by dextran sulfate sodium in mice. *Cytokine* 1998; **10**: 890-896

118 **Kucharzik T**, Lugering A, Yan Y, Driss A, Charrier L, Sitaraman S, Merlin D. Activation of epithelial CD98 glycoprotein perpetuates colonic inflammation. *Lab Invest* 2005; **85**: 932-941

119 **Soriano A**, Salas A, Salas A, Sans M, Gironella M, Elena M, Anderson DC, Piqué JM, Panés J. VCAM-1, but not ICAM-1 or MAdCAM-1, immunoblockade ameliorates DSS-induced colitis in mice. *Lab Invest* 2000; **80**: 1541-1551

120 **Forbes E**, Murase T, Yang M, Matthaei KI, Lee JJ, Lee NA, Foster PS, Hogan SP. Immunopathogenesis of experimental ulcerative colitis is mediated by eosinophil peroxidase. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 5664-5675

121 **McVay LD**, Keilbaugh SA, Wong TM, Kierstein S, Shin ME, Lehrke M, Lefterova MI, Shifflett DE, Barnes SL, Cominelli F, Cohn SM, Hecht G, Lazar MA, Haczku A, Wu GD. Absence of bacterially induced RELMbeta reduces injury in the dextran sodium sulfate model of colitis. *J Clin Invest* 2006; **116**: 2914-2923

122 **Zhong J**, Eckhardt ER, Oz HS, Bruemmer D, de Villiers WJ. Osteopontin deficiency protects mice from Dextran sodium sulfate-induced colitis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2006; **12**: 790-796

123 **Dohi T**, Ejima C, Kato R, Kawamura YI, Kawashima R, Mizutani N, Tabuchi Y, Kojima I. Therapeutic potential of follistatin for colonic inflammation in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 411-423

124 **Marrero JA**, Matkowskyj KA, Yung K, Hecht G, Benya RV. Dextran sulfate sodium-induced murine colitis activates NF-kappaB and increases galanin-1 receptor expression. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2000; **278**: G797-G804

125 **Jeffers M**, McDonald WF, Chillakuru RA, Yang M, Nakase H, Deegler LL, Sylander ED, Rittman B, Bendele A, Sartor RB, Lichenstein HS. A novel human fibroblast growth factor treats experimental intestinal inflammation. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**:

1151-1162
126 **Khor TO**, Huang MT, Kwon KH, Chan JY, Reddy BS, Kong AN. Nrf2-deficient mice have an increased susceptibility to dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 11580-11584
127 **Shah YM**, Ma X, Morimura K, Kim I, Gonzalez FJ. Pregnane X receptor activation ameliorates DSS-induced inflammatory bowel disease via inhibition of NF-kappaB target gene expression. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2007; **292**: G1114-G1122
128 **Garg P**, Rojas M, Ravi A, Bockbrader K, Epstein S, Vijay-Kumar M, Gewirtz AT, Merlin D, Sitaraman SV. Selective ablation of matrix metalloproteinase-2 exacerbates experimental colitis: contrasting role of gelatinases in the pathogenesis of colitis. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 4103-4112
129 **Verdú EF**, Deng Y, Bercik P, Collins SM. Modulatory effects of estrogen in two murine models of experimental colitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283**: G27-G36
130 **Williams KL**, Fuller CR, Dieleman LA, DaCosta CM, Haldeman KM, Sartor RB, Lund PK. Enhanced survival and mucosal repair after dextran sodium sulfate-induced colitis in transgenic mice that overexpress growth hormone. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: 925-937
131 **Ghia JE**, Blennerhassett P, Kumar-Ondiveeran H, Verdu EF, Collins SM. The vagus nerve: a tonic inhibitory influence associated with inflammatory bowel disease in a murine model. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 1122-1130
132 **Bertolotti A**, Wang X, Novoa I, Jungreis R, Schlessinger K, Cho JH, West AB, Ron D. Increased sensitivity to dextran sodium sulfate colitis in IRE1beta-deficient mice. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **107**: 585-593
133 **Brun P**, Mastrotto C, Beggiao E, Stefani A, Barzon L, Sturniolo GC, Palù G, Castagliuolo I. Neuropeptide neurotensin stimulates intestinal wound healing following chronic intestinal inflammation. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **288**: G621-G629
134 **Gewirtz AT**, Collier-Hyams LS, Young AN, Kucharzik T, Guilford WJ, Parkinson JF, Williams IR, Neish AS, Madara JL. Lipoxin a4 analogs attenuate induction of intestinal epithelial proinflammatory gene expression and reduce the severity of dextran sodium sulfate-induced colitis. *J Immunol* 2002; **168**: 5260-5267
135 **Vowinkel T**, Mori M, Krieglstein CF, Russell J, Saijo F, Bharwani S, Turnage RH, Davidson WS, Tso P, Granger DN, Kalogeris TJ. Apolipoprotein A-IV inhibits experimental colitis. *J Clin Invest* 2004; **114**: 260-269
136 **Tsune I**, Ikejima K, Hirose M, Yoshikawa M, Enomoto N, Takei Y, Sato N. Dietary glycine prevents chemical-induced experimental colitis in the rat. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 775-785
137 **Lu J**, Wang A, Ansari S, Hershberg RM, McKay DM. Colonic bacterial superantigens evoke an inflammatory response and exaggerate disease in mice recovering from colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1785-1795
138 **Tamaki H**, Nakamura H, Nishio A, Nakase H, Ueno S, Uza N, Kido M, Inoue S, Mikami S, Asada M, Kiriya K, Kitamura H, Ohashi S, Fukui T, Kawasaki K, Matsuura M, Ishii Y, Okazaki K, Yodoi J, Chiba T. Human thioredoxin-1 ameliorates experimental murine colitis in association with suppressed macrophage inhibitory factor production. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 1110-1121
139 **Maerten P**, Shen C, Colpaert S, Liu Z, Bullens DA, van Assche G, Penninckx F, Geboes K, Vanham G, Rutgeerts P, Ceuppens JL. Involvement of interleukin 18 in Crohn's disease: evidence from in vitro analysis of human gut inflammatory cells and from experimental colitis models. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2004; **135**: 310-317
140 **Keates AC**, Castagliuolo I, Cruickshank WW, Qiu B, Arseneau KO, Brazer W, Kelly CP. Interleukin 16 is up-regulated in Crohn's disease and participates in TNBS colitis in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 972-782
141 **Shen C**, de Hertogh G, Bullens DM, Van Assche G, Geboes K, Rutgeerts P, Ceuppens JL. Remission-inducing effect of anti-TNF monoclonal antibody in TNBS colitis: mechanisms beyond neutralization? *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2007; **13**: 308-316
142 **Pender SL**, Chance V, Whiting CV, Buckley M, Edwards M, Pettipher R, MacDonald TT. Systemic administration of the chemokine macrophage inflammatory protein 1alpha exacerbates inflammatory bowel disease in a mouse model. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1114-1120
143 **Katchar K**, Kelly CP, Keates S, O'brien MJ, Keates AC. MIP-3alpha neutralizing monoclonal antibody protects against TNBS-induced colonic injury and inflammation in mice. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2007; **292**: G1263-G1271
144 **Wittig B**, Schwärzler C, Föhr N, Günthert U, Zöller M. Curative treatment of an experimentally induced colitis by a CD44 variant V7-specific antibody. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 1069-1073
145 **Dombrowicz D**, Nutten S, Desreumaux P, Neut C, Torpier G, Peeters M, Colombel JF, Capron M. Role of the high affinity immunoglobulin E receptor in bacterial translocation and intestinal inflammation. *J Exp Med* 2001; **193**: 25-34
146 **Leon F**, Contractor N, Fuss I, Marth T, Lahey E, Iwaki S, la Sala A, Hoffmann V, Strober W, Kelsall BL. Antibodies to complement receptor 3 treat established inflammation in murine models of colitis and a novel model of psoriasiform dermatitis. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 6974-6982
147 **Lawrance IC**, Wu F, Leite AZ, Willis J, West GA, Fiocchi C, Chakravarti S. A murine model of chronic inflammation-induced intestinal fibrosis down-regulated by antisense NF-kappa B. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1750-1761
148 **Tokumasa A**, Katsuno T, Tanaga TS, Yokote K, Saito Y, Suzuki Y. Reduction of Smad3 accelerates re-epithelialization in a murine model of colitis. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2004; **317**: 377-383
149 **Zingarelli B**, Szabó C, Salzman AL. Blockade of Poly(ADP-ribose) synthetase inhibits neutrophil recruitment, oxidant generation, and mucosal injury in murine colitis. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116**: 335-345
150 **Zingarelli B**, Hake PW, Burroughs TJ, Piraino G, O'connor M, Denenberg A. Activator protein-1 signalling pathway and apoptosis are modulated by poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase-1 in experimental colitis. *Immunology* 2004; **113**: 509-517
151 **Kubes P**. Inducible nitric oxide synthase: a little bit of good in all of us. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 6-9
152 **Inokuchi Y**, Morohashi T, Kawana I, Nagashima Y, Kihara M, Umemura S. Amelioration of 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulphonic acid induced colitis in angiotensinogen gene knockout mice. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 349-356
153 **Zhao D**, Zhan Y, Zeng H, Moyer MP, Mantzoros CS, Pothoulakis C. Ghrelin stimulates interleukin-8 gene expression through protein kinase C-mediated NF-kappaB pathway in human colonic epithelial cells. *J Cell Biochem* 2006; **97**: 1317-1327
154 **Shen C**, Bullens D, Kasran A, Maerten P, Boon L, Aerts JM, Van Assche G, Geboes K, Rutgeerts P, Ceuppens JL. Inhibition of glycolipid biosynthesis by N-(5-adamantane-1-yl-methoxy-pentyl)-deoxynojirimycin protects against the inflammatory response in hapten-induced colitis. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2004; **4**: 939-951
155 **Shibolet O**, Alper R, Zolotarov L, Trop S, Thalenfeld B, Engelhardt D, Rabbani E, Ilan Y. The role of intrahepatic CD8+ T cell trapping and NK1. 1+ cells in liver-mediated immune regulation. *Clin Immunol* 2004; **111**: 82-92
156 **Menachem Y**, Trop S, Kolker O, Shibolet O, Alper R, Nagler A, Ilan Y. Adoptive transfer of NK 1.1+ lymphocytes in immune-mediated colitis: a pro-inflammatory or a tolerizing subgroup of cells? *Microbes Infect* 2005; **7**: 825-835
157 **Duchmann R**, Schmitt E, Knolle P, Meyer zum Büschenfelde KH, Neurath M. Tolerance towards resident intestinal flora in mice is abrogated in experimental colitis and restored by treatment with interleukin-10 or antibodies to interleukin-12. *Eur J Immunol* 1996; **26**: 934-938
158 **Lindsay J**, Van Montfrans C, Brennan F, Van Deventer S, Drillenburg P, Hodgson H, Te Velde A, Sol Rodriguez Pena M. IL-10 gene therapy prevents TNBS-induced colitis. *Gene Ther* 2002; **9**: 1715-1721
159 **Stallmach A**, Marth T, Weiss B, Wittig BM, Hombach A, Schmidt C, Neurath M, Zeitz M, Zeuzem S, Abken H. An interleukin 12 p40-IgG2b fusion protein abrogates T cell

mediated inflammation: anti-inflammatory activity in Crohn's disease and experimental colitis in vivo. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 339-345
160 **Stallmach A**, Wittig B, Giese T, Pfister K, Hoffmann JC, Bulfone-Paus S, Kunzendorf U, Meuer SC, Zeitz M. Protection of trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-induced colitis by an interleukin 2-IgG2b fusion protein in mice. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 866-876
161 **Han X**, Osuntokun B, Benight N, Loesch K, Frank SJ, Denson LA. Signal transducer and activator of transcription 5b promotes mucosal tolerance in pediatric Crohn's disease and murine colitis. *Am J Pathol* 2006; **169**: 1999-2013
162 **Siegmund B**, Sennello JA, Lehr HA, Senaldi G, Dinarello CA, Fantuzzi G. Frontline: interferon regulatory factor-1 as a protective gene in intestinal inflammation: role of TCR gamma delta T cells and interleukin-18-binding protein. *Eur J Immunol* 2004; **34**: 2356-2364
163 **Gurtner GJ**, Newberry RD, Schloemann SR, McDonald KG, Stenson WF. Inhibition of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase augments trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid colitis in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1762-1773
164 **Shibolet O**, Alper R, Ilan Y, Weidenfeld J. Regulatory role of the pituitary-adrenal axis in experimental colitis: effect of adrenalectomy on the clinical course and the TH1/TH2 immune profile. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 1053-1059
165 **Franchimont D**, Bouma G, Galon J, Wolkersdörfer GW, Haidan A, Chrousos GP, Bornstein SR. Adrenal cortical activation in murine colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 1560-1568
166 **Fiorucci S**, Antonelli E, Distrutti E, Del Soldato P, Flower RJ, Clark MJ, Morelli A, Perretti M, Ignarro LJ. NCX-1015, a nitric-oxide derivative of prednisolone, enhances regulatory T cells in the lamina propria and protects against 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-induced colitis in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 15770-15775
167 **Abad C**, Martinez C, Juarranz MG, Arranz A, Leceta J, Delgado M, Gomariz RP. Therapeutic effects of vasoactive intestinal peptide in the trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid mice model of Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 961-971
168 **Arranz A**, Abad C, Juarranz Y, Torroba M, Rosignoli F, Leceta J, Gomariz RP, Martínez C. Effect of VIP on TLR2 and TLR4 expression in lymph node immune cells during TNBS-induced colitis. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2006; **1070**: 129-134
169 **Philippe D**, Dubuquoy L, Groux H, Brun V, Chuoï-Mariot MT, Gaveriaux-Ruff C, Colombel JF, Kieffer BL, Desreumaux P. Anti-inflammatory properties of the mu opioid receptor support its use in the treatment of colon inflammation. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **111**: 1329-1338
170 **Fiorucci S**, Wallace JL, Mencarelli A, Distrutti E, Rizzo G, Farneti S, Morelli A, Tseng JL, Suramanyam B, Guilford WJ, Parkinson JF. A beta-oxidation-resistant lipoxin A4 analog treats hapten-induced colitis by attenuating inflammation and immune dysfunction. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 15736-15741
171 **Busserolles J**, Payá M, D'Auria MV, Gomez-Paloma L, Alcaraz MJ. Protection against 2,4,6-trinitrobenzenesulphonic acid-induced colonic inflammation in mice by the marine products bolinaquinone and petrosaspongiolide M. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2005; **69**: 1433-1440
172 **Marceau M**, Dubuquoy L, Caucheteux-Rousseaux C, Foligne B, Desreumaux P, Simonet M. Yersinia pseudotuberculosis anti-inflammatory components reduce trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-induced colitis in the mouse. *Infect Immun* 2004; **72**: 2438-2441
173 **Daniel C**, Poiret S, Goudercourt D, Dennin V, Leyer G, Pot B. Selecting lactic acid bacteria for their safety and functionality by use of a mouse colitis model. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2006; **72**: 5799-5805
174 **Foligne B**, Nutten S, Grangette C, Dennin V, Goudercourt D, Poiret S, Dewulf J, Brassart D, Mercenier A, Pot B. Correlation between in vitro and in vivo immunomodulatory properties of lactic acid bacteria. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 236-243
175 **Elliott DE**, Li J, Blum A, Metwali A, Qadir K, Urban JF, Weinstock JV. Exposure to schistosome eggs protects mice from TNBS-induced colitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2003; **284**: G385-G391
176 **Boirivant M**, Fuss IJ, Ferroni L, De Pascale M, Strober W. Oral administration of recombinant cholera toxin subunit B inhibits IL-12-mediated murine experimental (trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid) colitis. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 3522-3532
177 **Coccia EM**, Remoli ME, Di Giacinto C, Del Zotto B, Giacomini E, Monteleone G, Boirivant M. Cholera toxin subunit B inhibits IL-12 and IFN-{gamma} production and signaling in experimental colitis and Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1558-1564
178 **Santucci L**, Fiorucci S, Rubinstein N, Mencarelli A, Palazzetti B, Federici B, Rabinovich GA, Morelli A. Galectin-1 suppresses experimental colitis in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 1381-1394
179 **Sugimoto K**, Hanai H, Tozawa K, Aoshi T, Uchijima M, Nagata T, Koide Y. Curcumin prevents and ameliorates trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-induced colitis in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1912-1922
180 **Kim SW**, Choi SC, Choi EY, Kim KS, Oh JM, Lee HJ, Oh HM, Kim S, Oh BS, Kimm KC, Lee MH, Seo GS, Kim TH, Oh HC, Woo WH, Kim YS, Pae HO, Park DS, Chung HT, Jun CD. Catalposide, a compound isolated from catalpa ovata, attenuates induction of intestinal epithelial proinflammatory gene expression and reduces the severity of trinitrobenzene sulfonic Acid-induced colitis in mice. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10**: 564-572
181 **Uno JK**, Kolek OI, Hines ER, Xu H, Timmermann BN, Kiela PR, Ghishan FK. The role of tumor necrosis factor alpha in down-regulation of osteoblast Phex gene expression in experimental murine colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 497-509
182 **Daniel C**, Sartory N, Zahn N, Geisslinger G, Radeke HH, Stein JM. FTY720 ameliorates Th1-mediated colitis in mice by directly affecting the functional activity of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 2458-2468
183 **Cheng H**, Xia B, Zhang L, Zhou F, Zhang YX, Ye M, Hu ZG, Li J, Li J, Wang ZL, Li C, Guo QS. Matrine improves 2, 4, 6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-induced colitis in mice. *Pharmacol Res* 2006; **53**: 202-208
184 **Furuta GT**, Nieuwenhuis EE, Karhausen J, Gleich G, Blumberg RS, Lee JJ, Ackerman SJ. Eosinophils alter colonic epithelial barrier function: role for major basic protein. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **289**: G890-G897
185 **Kim TW**, Park HJ, Choi EY, Jung KC. Overexpression of CIITA in T cells aggravates Th2-mediated colitis in mice. *J Korean Med Sci* 2006; **21**: 877-882
186 **Ekström GM**, Andersson SE. Plasma exudation, hyperaemia, and epithelial permeability in rats with oxazolone-induced colitis: modulatory effects of budesonide. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2000; **35**: 190-197

S- Editor Ma N **L- Editor** Kerr C **E- Editor** Yin DH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5594-5597
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Dr, *Series Editor*

Genetic factors associated with the development of inflammatory bowel disease

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Inflammatory Bowel Disease Clinic, Department of Gastroenterology, Instituto Nacional de Ciencias Médicas y Nutrición, Vasco de Quiroga 15, Colonia Sección XVI, Tlalpan, C.P. 14000, México, D.F., México
Correspondence to: Jesús K Yamamoto-Furusho, MD, PhD, MSc, Head of Inflammatory Bowel Disease Clinic, Department of Gastroenterology, Instituto Nacional de Ciencias Médicas y Nutrición Salvador Zubirán, Vasco de Quiroga 15, Col. Sección XVI, Tlalpan, México, D.F., Mexico. kazuofurusho@hotmail.com
Telephone: +52-55-55733418 Fax: +52-55-56550942
Received: April 19, 2007 Revised: July 28, 2007

Abstract

Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC) are complex polygenic disorders, characterized by several genes together with environmental factors contributing to the development of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). Recent advances in research on genetic susceptibility have allowed the identification of diverse genes at different levels: (1) Innate immunity; (2) Antigen presentation molecules; (3) Epithelial integrity; (4) Drug transporter; (5) Cell adhesion. The application of genetic testing into clinical practice is close and all genetic markers may have several clinical implications: prediction of disease phenotype, molecular classification, prevention of complications, and prognosis.

Key words: Genetic; Susceptibility; Inflammatory bowel disease; Ulcerative colitis; Crohn's disease

Yamamoto-Furusho JK. Genetic factors associated with the development of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5594-5597

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5594.asp

INTRODUCTION

Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC) are chronic relapsing inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) of unknown etiology. CD and UC are complex polygenic disorders, characterized by several genes together with environmental factors contributing to the development of IBD.

A variety of epidemiological and clinical data suggest that genetic factors are intimately involved in the pathogenesis of IBD including familial aggregation pattern of disease with a much higher disease frequency in first degree relatives of affected individuals compared with the general population. Twin studies provide the argument for a genetic basis for IBD, with a much higher rate of disease concordance observed in monozygotic than in dizygotic twins and wide variations in the incidence and prevalence of IBD among different populations[1].

IBD is now considered a non-Mendelian polygenic disorder with important environmental interactions (e.g., microbial factors, smoking).

There are two main approaches to identifying genes in complex multifactorial diseases: the positional cloning approach based on linkage studies, and the candidate gene approach based on association studies. Linkage analysis studies the cosegregation of the disease with a marker within the families. Linkage analysis allows scanning of the whole genome. Eleven of these total genome scans have been undertaken in IBD, resulting in a number of susceptibility regions on chromosomes 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 16, 19 and X[2]. According to their initial date of reporting and independent confirmations, the regions on chromosomes 16q, 12, 6, 14, 5, 19, 1, 16p and 10 have been renamed IBD 1 to IBD 9, respectively. However, new genes have been reported recently. All susceptibility genes discovered can be categorized into different levels of susceptibility: (1) Innate immunity; (2) Human leucocyte antigen (HLA) molecules; (3) Epithelial integrity (4); Drug transporter; and (5) Cell adhesion.

INNATE IMMUNITY

Understanding of innate immunity has progressed enormously with the discovery of many microbial sensors called pattern recognition receptors (PRRs). The toll-like receptor (TLR) and nucleotide oligomerization domain (NOD) receptor families of PRRs appear to play essential roles in mucosal homeostasis and their alterations contribute to the pathogenesis of IBD.

NOD2 is expressed constitutively in macrophages, neutrophils and dendritic cells[3], as well as in Paneth cells and is induced in epithelial cells[4]. NOD2 is a cytoplasmic protein that serves as a microbial sensor, and its leucine-rich repeat (LRR) domain is required for recognition of muramyl dipeptide (MDP), a fragment of peptidoglycan

present in bacterial cell walls. The ligand MDP ultimately leads to activation of the transcription factor nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB), and induction of proinflammatory cytokines[5,6]. Specific mutations of the NOD2 gene have been definitively associated with increased susceptibility to ileal Crohn's disease in Western (but not Asian) populations: Arg702Trp, Gly908Arg, and leu1007fsinsC (a frame shift mutation that truncates the carboxy terminal 33 aminoacids)[7,8]. Heterozygous carriage of the risk alleles confers a 2-4 fold increased risk, and homozygotes or compound heterozygotes have a 20-40 fold increased risk[9]. More than 90% of all CD- associated mutations are located in the LRR domain, suggesting that these may affect the function of NOD2 with respect to bacterial recognition and signaling.

NOD1/ CARD4 (Caspase Recruitment Domain 4) plays a role in colonic epithelial defense against *E. coli* and *S. flexeneri* and mediates NF-κB activation[3,10]. Recently, genetic variants of NOD1 have been shown to be associated with disease susceptibility. In a recent study of 556 patients with IBD (294 CD and 252 UC), an association between the variant (rs695857) in nucleotides 30, 258 and 950 of NOD1 and the development of IBD was found. Another variant known as rs2907748 in nucleotides 30, 246 and 263 was also associated with the presence of UC and CD and even with the early onset of the disease (< 25 years of age)[11].

TLRs are abundantly expressed on the surface of monocytes, macrophages, dendritic and epithelial cells. Alterations of TLR3 and TLR4 expression by intestinal epithelial cells have been described in IBD[12], suggesting that there is differential expression of TLR family members. Two common polymorphisms of TLR4 (Asp299Gly and Thr399Ile) have been described in humans. Asp299Gly has been associated with reduced responsiveness following lipopolysaccharide stimulation[13]. These polymorphisms have been associated with the development of CD and UC in Caucasian populations[14-16]. Pierik *et al*[17] showed that TLR1 R80T and TLR2 R753G polymorphisms were associated with pancolitis in UC patients, while a negative association was observed between TLR6 S249P and proctitis in patients with UC. These results suggest that TLR2 and its co-receptors TLR1 and TLR6 are involved in the initial immune response to bacteria in the pathogenesis of IBD.

ANTIGEN PRESENTATION MOLECULES

The major histocompatibility complex (MHC) region is the region studied most extensively. Human leucocyte antigen (HLA) class Ⅱ molecules present partially digested antigen to the T-cell receptor and play a central role in the immune response. The mechanism by which classical HLA class Ⅱ genes exert their influence in IBD is unknown. Different HLA molecules may bind preferentially to different peptides, or bind the same peptide with varying affinity. In IBD, cross reactivity (known as molecular mimicry) may exist between the peptides derived from bacterial luminal flora and from self antigens present in the gut. This may lead to the generation of auto reactive T cells which contribute to disease pathogenesis. HLA-DRB1 is the most extensively studied gene in IBD. In a meta-analysis made by Stokkers *et al*[18], positive associations between UC and HLA-DR2, HLA-DRB1*1502 (OR = 3.74, CI: 2.2-6.38), HLA-DR9 (OR = 1.54, CI: 1.06-2.24) and HLA-DRB1*0103 (OR = 3.42, CI: 1.52-3.69) were found; a negative association was found with HLA-DR4 (OR = 0.54, CI: 0.43-0.68). Another study found that HLA-DRB1*0103 allele was associated with UC and its severe manifestations such as colectomy and pancolitis (P = 0.003, OR = 3.6, CI 95%: 1.46-8.9), while HLA-DRB1*15 allele was only associated with pancolitis in patients with UC (P = 0.001, OR = 8.5)[19].

On the other hand, HLA class Ⅲ genes have been associated with IBD. Several studies have shown the role of tumor necrosis factor α (TNF α) polymorphisms in IBD. There are specific genetic polymorphisms involving TNFα that influence the amount of cytokine produced. Bouma *et al*[20] reported an association between the polymorphism of *TNF*α gene promoter region at -308 position and UC, and this finding was confirmed by other studies[21, 22].

EPITHELIAL INTEGRITY

The organic cation transporter (OCTN) is a family of transporter proteins for organic cations, and may also transport carnitine, an essential cofactor of the metabolism of lipids. Carnitine is involved in the transport of long-chain fatty acids into the mitochondria. There is evidence that inhibition of fatty acid oxidation in the epithelium of the colonic mucosa is associated with the development of UC. There are two subtypes of this gene, OCTN1 and OCTN2, and some mutations have been reported in them: SLC22A4 1672C/T for OCTN1 and SLC22A5-207G/C for OCTN2, which are associated with the development of CD. The presence or combination of these mutations constitutes TC haplotype, which is associated with ileal, colonic and perianal affection and onset and the need of surgical treatment in CD[23, 24].

DLG5 (Drosophila long disc homologue 5) gene is a member of the membrane associated guanylate kinase gene family which encodes cell scaffolding proteins and seems to play a role in the maintenance of intestinal epithelial cells, and its mutations have been involved in a rise in intestinal permeability[25]. DLG5 is a widely expressed protein found in many tissues such as the placenta, small bowel, colon, heart, skeletal muscle, liver and pancreas. It is important in signal transduction and epithelial cell integrity. Four haplotypes have been identified, but only D haplotypes were associated with UC and CD in a European cohort[26]. Another variant of this gene (rs37462) was found in Japanese people with CD[27]. The haplotype characterized by the haplotype-tagging single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP) G113A called haplotype D, was found substantially over-transmitted in patients with IBD.

DRUG TRANSPORTER

The multidrug-resistance (MDR-1) gene encodes the drug efflux pump P-glycoprotein 170 (Pgp-170). Various polymorphisms have been identified within MDR-1: a

mutation C3435T in exon 26 and a mutation G2677T in exon 21 have been correlated with altered Pgp expression and function in humans. Overexpression of MDR-1 leads to an increased efflux of drugs and decreased cytoplasmic drug concentrations. Several drugs, including glucocorticoids, are known Pgp-170 substrates. Farrell *et al*[28] showed that MDR was significantly elevated in CD and UC patients who required bowel resection and proctocolectomy after failed medical therapy. Variant C3435T was related to the presence of pancolitis in patients with UC in Scotland[29]. However, the frequency of SNPs is low and is different among populations, with the exception of three SNPs in exon 12 (C1236T), exon 20 (G2677T/A) and exon 26 (C3435T), and some of them are correlated with different diseases and clinical characteristics[30].

CELL ADHESION

Cell surface adhesion molecules conveying leukocyte-endothelial interactions, govern homing of activated inflammatory cells into gut. Extravasation and migration into the site of inflammation are mediated by integrins and selectins, and these molecules are increased in IBD patients. There are targeting therapies against adhesion molecules in clinical trials to date including natalizumab (integrin α4 subunit) and MLN-02 (selective adhesion molecule blocker for integrin $\alpha 4\beta 7$). In Japanese patients with IBD, the intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) K469 allele is associated with CD and UC[31].

CONCLUSION

There are increasing numbers of genetic markers associated with the development of IBD at different levels: innate immunity, antigen presentation, epithelial integrity, drug transporter and cell adhesion that contribute, in genetic susceptibility, to the development of IBD in conjunction with environmental and immunological factors.

REFERENCES

1 **Bonen DK**, Cho JH. The genetics of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 521-536
2 **Vermeire S.** Review article: genetic susceptibility and application of genetic testing in clinical management of inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24** Suppl 3: 2-10
3 **Ogura Y**, Inohara N, Benito A, Chen FF, Yamaoka S, Nuñez G. Nod2, a Nod1/Apaf-1 family member that is restricted to monocytes and activates NF-kappaB. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 4812-4818
4 **Ogura Y**, Lala S, Xin W, Smith E, Dowds TA, Chen FF, Zimmermann E, Tretiakova M, Cho JH, Hart J, Greenson JK, Keshav S, Nuñez G. Expression of NOD2 in Paneth cells: a possible link to Crohn's ileitis. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1591-1597
5 **Inohara N**, Ogura Y, Fontalba A, Gutierrez O, Pons F, Crespo J, Fukase K, Inamura S, Kusumoto S, Hashimoto M, Foster SJ, Moran AP, Fernandez-Luna JL, Nuñez G. Host recognition of bacterial muramyl dipeptide mediated through NOD2. Implications for Crohn's disease. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 5509-5512
6 **Girardin SE**, Boneca IG, Viala J, Chamaillard M, Labigne A, Thomas G, Philpott DJ, Sansonetti PJ. Nod2 is a general sensor of peptidoglycan through muramyl dipeptide (MDP) detection. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 8869-8872
7 **Ogura Y**, Bonen DK, Inohara N, Nicolae DL, Chen FF, Ramos R, Britton H, Moran T, Karaliuskas R, Duerr RH, Achkar JP, Brant SR, Bayless TM, Kirschner BS, Hanauer SB, Nuñez G, Cho JH. A frameshift mutation in NOD2 associated with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 603-606
8 **Hugot JP**, Chamaillard M, Zouali H, Lesage S, Cézard JP, Belaiche J, Almer S, Tysk C, O'Morain CA, Gassull M, Binder V, Finkel Y, Cortot A, Modigliani R, Laurent-Puig P, Gower-Rousseau C, Macry J, Colombel JF, Sahbatou M, Thomas G. Association of NOD2 leucine-rich repeat variants with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 599-603
9 **Cuthbert AP**, Fisher SA, Mirza MM, King K, Hampe J, Croucher PJ, Mascheretti S, Sanderson J, Forbes A, Mansfield J, Schreiber S, Lewis CM, Mathew CG. The contribution of NOD2 gene mutations to the risk and site of disease in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 867-874
10 **Kim JG**, Lee SJ, Kagnoff MF. Nod1 is an essential signal transducer in intestinal epithelial cells infected with bacteria that avoid recognition by toll-like receptors. *Infect Immun* 2004; **72**: 1487-1495
11 **McGovern DP**, Hysi P, Ahmad T, van Heel DA, Moffatt MF, Carey A, Cookson WO, Jewell DP. Association between a complex insertion/deletion polymorphism in NOD1 (CARD4) and susceptibility to inflammatory bowel disease. *Hum Mol Genet* 2005; **14**: 1245-1250
12 **Cario E**, Podolsky DK. Differential alteration in intestinal epithelial cell expression of toll-like receptor 3 (TLR3) and TLR4 in inflammatory bowel disease. *Infect Immun* 2000; **68**: 7010-7017
13 **Arbour NC**, Lorenz E, Schutte BC, Zabner J, Kline JN, Jones M, Frees K, Watt JL, Schwartz DA. TLR4 mutations are associated with endotoxin hyporesponsiveness in humans. *Nat Genet* 2000; **25**: 187-191
14 **Franchimont D**, Vermeire S, El Housni H, Pierik M, Van Steen K, Gustot T, Quertinmont E, Abramowicz M, Van Gossum A, Devière J, Rutgeerts P. Deficient host-bacteria interactions in inflammatory bowel disease? The toll-like receptor (TLR)-4 Asp299gly polymorphism is associated with Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 987-992
15 **Arnott ID**, Ho GT, Nimmo ER, Satsangi J. Toll-like receptor 4 gene in IBD: further evidence for genetic heterogeneity in Europe. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 308; author reply 309
16 **Lakatos PL**, Lakatos L, Szalay F, Willheim-Polli C, Osterreicher C, Tulassay Z, Molnar T, Reinisch W, Papp J, Mozsik G, Ferenci P. Toll-like receptor 4 and NOD2/CARD15 mutations in Hungarian patients with Crohn's disease: phenotype-genotype correlations. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 1489-1495
17 **Pierik M**, Joossens S, Van Steen K, Van Schuerbeek N, Vlietinck R, Rutgeerts P, Vermeire S. Toll-like receptor-1, -2, and -6 polymorphisms influence disease extension in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2006; **12**: 1-8
18 **Stokkers PC**, Reitsma PH, Tytgat GN, van Deventer SJ. HLA-DR and -DQ phenotypes in inflammatory bowel disease: a meta-analysis. *Gut* 1999; **45**: 395-401
19 **Yamamoto-Furusho JK**, Uscanga LF, Vargas-Alarcón G, Ruiz-Morales JA, Higuera L, Cutiño T, Rodríguez-Pérez JM, Villarreal-Garza C, Granados J. Clinical and genetic heterogeneity in Mexican patients with ulcerative colitis. *Hum Immunol* 2003; **64**: 119-123
20 **Bouma G**, Xia B, Crusius JB, Bioque G, Koutroubakis I, Von Blomberg BM, Meuwissen SG, Peña AS. Distribution of four polymorphisms in the tumour necrosis factor (TNF) genes in patients with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). *Clin Exp Immunol* 1996; **103**: 391-396
21 **Hirv K**, Seyfarth M, Uibo R, Kull K, Salupere R, Latza U, Rink L. Polymorphisms in tumour necrosis factor and adhesion molecule genes in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: associations with HLA-DR and -DQ alleles and subclinical markers. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1999; **34**: 1025-1032
22 **Yamamoto-Furusho JK**, Uscanga LF, Vargas-Alarcón G, Rodríguez-Pérez JM, Zuñiga J, Granados J. Polymorphisms in the promoter region of tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-alpha)

and the HLA-DRB1 locus in Mexican mestizo patients with ulcerative colitis. *Immunol Lett* 2004; **95**: 31-35

23 **Török HP**, Glas J, Tonenchi L, Lohse P, Müller-Myhsok B, Limbersky O, Neugebauer C, Schnitzler F, Seiderer J, Tillack C, Brand S, Brünnler G, Jagiello P, Epplen JT, Griga T, Klein W, Schiemann U, Folwaczny M, Ochsenkühn T, Folwaczny C. Polymorphisms in the DLG5 and OCTN cation transporter genes in Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1421-1427

24 **Noble CL**, Nimmo ER, Drummond H, Ho GT, Tenesa A, Smith L, Anderson N, Arnott ID, Satsangi J. The contribution of OCTN1/2 variants within the IBD5 locus to disease susceptibility and severity in Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 1854-1864

25 **Peeters M**, Geypens B, Claus D, Nevens H, Ghoos Y, Verbeke G, Baert F, Vermeire S, Vlietinck R, Rutgeerts P. Clustering of increased small intestinal permeability in families with Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 802-807

26 **Stoll M**, Corneliussen B, Costello CM, Waetzig GH, Mellgard B, Koch WA, Rosenstiel P, Albrecht M, Croucher PJ, Seegert D, Nikolaus S, Hampe J, Lengauer T, Pierrou S, Foelsch UR, Mathew CG, Lagerstrom-Fermer M, Schreiber S. Genetic variation in DLG5 is associated with inflammatory bowel disease. *Nat Genet* 2004; **36**: 476-480

27 **Yamazaki K**, Takazoe M, Tanaka T, Ichimori T, Saito S, Iida A, Onouchi Y, Hata A, Nakamura Y. Association analysis of SLC22A4, SLC22A5 and DLG5 in Japanese patients with Crohn disease. *J Hum Genet* 2004; **49**: 664-668

28 **Farrell RJ**, Murphy A, Long A, Donnelly S, Cherikuri A, O'Toole D, Mahmud N, Keeling PW, Weir DG, Kelleher D. High multidrug resistance (P-glycoprotein 170) expression in inflammatory bowel disease patients who fail medical therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 279-288

29 **Ho GT**, Nimmo ER, Tenesa A, Fennell J, Drummond H, Mowat C, Arnott ID, Satsangi J. Allelic variations of the multidrug resistance gene determine susceptibility and disease behavior in ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 288-296

30 **Wang D**, Sadée W. Searching for polymorphisms that affect gene expression and mRNA processing: example ABCB1 (MDR1). *AAPS J* 2006; **8**: E515-E520

31 **Matsuzawa J**, Sugimura K, Matsuda Y, Takazoe M, Ishizuka K, Mochizuki T, Seki SS, Yoneyama O, Bannnai H, Suzuki K, Honma T, Asakura H. Association between K469E allele of intercellular adhesion molecule 1 gene and inflammatory bowel disease in a Japanese population. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 75-78

S- Editor Zhu LH **L- Editor** Alpini GD **E- Editor** Li HY

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5598-5604
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Jesus K Yamamoto-Furusho, Dr, *Series Editor*

Pouchitis

En-Da Yu, Zhuo Shao, Bo Shen

En-Da Yu, Department of Colorectal Surgery, Shanghai Changhai Hospital, Shanghai 200438, China
Zhuo Shao, Department of Biliary Surgery, Eastern Hepatobiliary Hospital, Shanghai 200438, China
Bo Shen, Digestive Disease Center, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH 44195, United States
Supported by a grant from National Institutes of Health, No.R03 DK 067275 and a grant from Broad Medical Research Program of Broad Foundation
Correspondence to: Bo Shen, MD, Department of Gastroenterology /Hepatology-Desk A30, Cleveland Clinic, 9500 Euclid Ave., Cleveland, OH 44195, United States. shenb@ccf.org
Telephone: +1-216-4449252 Fax: +1-216-4446305
Received: July 11, 2007 Revised: July 31, 2007

Abstract

While restorative proctocolectomy with ileal pouch-anal anastomosis has significantly improved the quality of life in patients with underlying ulcerative colitis who require surgery, complications can occur. Pouchitis as the most common long-term complication represents a spectrum of disease processes ranging from acute, antibiotic-responsive type to chronic antibiotic-refractory entity. Accurate diagnosis using a combined assessment of symptoms, endoscopy and histology and the stratification of clinical phenotypes is important for treatment and prognosis the disease. The majority of patients respond favorably to antibiotic therapy. However, management of chronic antibiotic-refractory pouchitis remains a challenge.

Key words: Classification; Complication; Ileal pouch; Inflammatory bowel disease; Restorative proctocolectomy

Yu ED, Shao Z, Shen B. Pouchitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5598-5604

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5598.asp

INTRODUCTION

Restorative proctocolectomy with ileal pouch-anal anastomosis (IPAA) has become a part of standard surgical treatment for patients with ulcerative colitis (UC) or familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP). Despite advances in medical therapy, approximately 30% of patients with UC eventually require total proctocolectomy[1]. Restorative proctocolectomy with IPAA has the following advantages: (1) gastrointestinal continuity is reestablished with IPAA, (2) the procedure helps improve symptoms of patients and health-related quality of life, (3) the majority of patients with IPAA can avoid UC-related medications, particularly immunomodulators and biological agents and their associated potential adverse effects, and (4) IPAA with proctocolectomy substantially reduces the risk for dysplasia or cancer. However, adverse outcomes or complications often occur after surgery. Common long-term inflammatory and functional complications of restorative proctocolectomy are pouchitis, Crohn's disease (CD) of the pouch, cuffitis (inflammation in the rectal muscular cuff), and irritable pouch syndrome (IPS). Pouchitis likely represents a spectrum of disease processes ranging from acute antibiotic-responsive entity to chronic antibiotic-refractory type. Accurate diagnosis and classification of pouchitis are important for its proper management and prognosis.

INCIDENCE AND PREVALENCE

Pouchitis, a nonspecific inflammatory condition at the ileal pouch reservoir, is the most common long-term complication in patients with IPAA which significantly affects patients' quality of life[2]. Reported cumulative frequency rates of pouchitis 10-11 years after IPAA surgery range from 23% to 46%[3,4]. It is estimated that approximately 50% of patients who have undergone IPAA surgery for UC will develop at least one episode of pouchitis[5]. The estimated incidence within 12 mo after ileostomy was as high as 40% in a European study[6]. The discrepancy in the reported cumulative frequencies from different institutions likely results from diagnostic criteria used (e.g., diagnosis made based on symptom assessment alone or on a combined assessment of symptoms, endoscopy, with or without histology), intensity of follow-up with pouch endoscopy, and inclusion or exclusion of other inflammatory or functional disorders of the pouch and surgery related conditions (such as abscess, fistula, and sinus of the pouch).

ETIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Pouchitis almost exclusively occurs in patients with underlying UC and is rarely seen in patients with FAP[7,8]. Although the etiology and pathogenesis of pouchitis are

not entirely clear, bulk of evidence points towards an abnormal mucosal immune response (innate and adaptive) to altered microflora in the pouch leading to acute and/or chronic inflammation[6,9,10,11,12,13]. The prevailing theory holds that pouchitis results from an overgrowth of certain commensal bacteria[9,13,14,15]. Pouchitis only develops after ileostomy, i.e., the pouch mucosa starts to expose fecal stream. Manipulation of microflora with antibiotic or probiotic therapy resulting in improvement in patients with pouchitis provides additional evidence of involvement of microflora in the pathogenesis of pouchitis.

Immune mechanisms for pouchitis have been extensively studied in a similar fashion to that for inflammatory bowel disease. There are overlaps in tissue cytokine profiles between pouchitis and UC. However, pouchitis is not simply a duplication of the disease process seen in UC. The role of T-cell-mediated intestinal immunity in the pathogenesis of pouchitis is not entirely clear and is likely secondary to alterations in pouch microflora. Alterations in the macrophage and T cell subpopulations have been postulated in the process of pouchitis[16,17,18]. Increased T-cell activation and proliferation have been demonstrated in pouchitis, as evidenced by an increased expression in activation markers, such as CD25, CD30, and CD27[18]. As a result of activation of T cells and other immune cells, production of cytokines is up-regulated. Abnormal cytokine profiles have been reported in pouchitis including a deregulated production of proinflammatory and immunoregulatory cytokines[19]. Proinflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-α, are released at a great extent in the inflamed mucosa by macrophages and monocytes, leading to tissue injury, and are considered to be involved in pouchitis as a secondary pathophysiologic mechanism[19]. As in UC, the production of other inflammatory mediators including cytokines (such as IL-1β, IL-6, and IL-8)[20,21,22,30], cell adhesion molecules (such as E selectin and intercellular adhesion molecule-1)[23], platelet-activating factor[24], lipoxygenase products of arachidonic acids (such as leukotriene B4 and prostaglandin E2)[25], proinflammatory neuropeptides[26], macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP) 2α, matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-1[21,27], MMP-2[21,27,28], MMP-9[28], MRP-14[21], and inducible nitric oxide[28], is also increased. Abnormalities in immunoregulatory cytokines such as IL-2, and interferon-γ[18,29], IL-4[29], and IL-10 are also seen in pouchitis. Imbalance between proinflammatory and immunoregulatory cytokines has been described in patients with pouchitis[30]. Abnormalities of T cells and other immune cells may not explain the whole mechanism of pouchitis. It is likely that such abnormalities are nonspecific and secondary in nature. Inconsistent results in the studies of immune cells and inflammatory mediators in pouchitis reflect the complexity in pathogenesis of the disease.

There are few published studies addressing the interplay between microflora and mucosal immune system in pouchitis. Exposure of peripheral blood and lamina propria lymphocytes *ex vivo* to sonicated flora from pouchitis induces more intense proliferation as compared with sonicates from healthy pouches. *In vitro* pretreatment of the sonicate preparation of pouch flora with metronidazole abolishes the stimulating ability[31]. Bacterial sonicates from a heterologous but healthy pouch do not stimulate lymphocyte proliferation[31]. The greater stimulatory effect of sonicates from pouchitis suggests that certain microflora may predominantly present in inflamed pouch mucosa and these microflora may be potentially pathogenic in activation of local mononuclear cells[31].

One of the most intriguing aspects of pouchitis is that it occurs almost exclusively in patients with underlying UC. Interestingly, there are similarities in terms of clinical presentations and immunological abnormalities between pouchitis and UC, suggesting that a subset of pouchitis may actually represent the recurrence of a UC-like disease in the ileal pouch. The theory of recurrent UC is supported by several lines of evidence. With the presence of stasis in the pouch, exposure to fecal contents and an increased microbial load could cause inflammatory changes leading to morphological alterations in the ileal pouch mucosa mimicking colon epithelia in UC[24]. Colonic metaplasia of the pouch mucosa seems to be a nonspecific adaptive response to the new luminal environment[24]. Colonic metaplasia characterized by villous blunting, crypt cell hyperplasia, and colon epithelium-specific antigens such as human tropomyosin 5, may increase the risk for pouchitis[32]. A similar alteration in mucin glycoproteins occurs in pouchitis as seen in UC[33]. It is possible that the altered glycoproteins are more susceptible to enzymatic degradation by bacteria, making the mucus barrier less resistant[34]. Additionally, some patients with pouchitis have the same extra-intestinal manifestations (such as arthralgia and primary sclerosing cholangitis or PSC) as those seen in patients with UC[35]. Smoking tends to have a protective effect against the development of pouchitis as it does against UC[36].

RISK FACTORS

Risk factors and potential predictors for pouchitis have been extensively studied. The implications of these studies include identification of etiopathogenetic factors, provision of strategies for modification of certain risk factors, and prediction of pouch outcome. Genetic polymorphisms such as those of IL-1 receptor antagonist[38,39,40] and NOD2/CARD15[40] may increase the risk for pouchitis. The reported risk factors for pouchitis also include non-carrier status of TNF allele 2[39], extensive UC[4,41,42], backwash ileitis[41], pre-proctocolectomy thrombocytosis[43], extra-intestinal manifestations, especially PSC[3,35,44,45], the presence of serum perinuclear anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (p-ANCA)[46,47], being a non-smoker[36,42,48], and use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID)[42,48]. In addition to p-ANCA, the presence of serologic markers, anti-*Saccharomyces cervesiae* antibodies to CD-related antigen from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* or outer membrane porin C of *Escherichia coli* in patients with pre-operative indeterminate colitis appears to be associated with persistent inflammation of the pouch after restorative proctocolectomy[49]. Acute and chronic pouchitis may have different risk factors[42].

It appears that few studies came up with the same risk factors. This inherent discrepancy among the studies may be contributed to the following factors: (1) small *vs* large

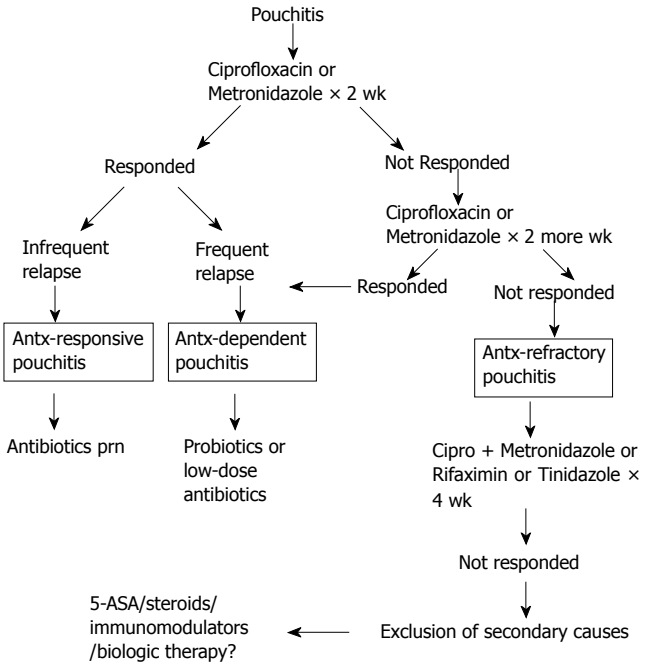


Figure 1 Classification and treatment algorithm.

sample sizes were analyzed, (2) the number of variables and outcomes was studied, (3) univariable analyses *vs* multivariable analyses were used, (4) diagnostic criteria for pouchitis were used, (5) pouchitis was stratified into acute *vs* chronic entities, and (6) type of controls was compared.

CLINICAL PRESENTATIONS

Patients with pouchitis have a wide range of clinical presentations, including increased stool frequency, urgency, tenesmus, incontinence, nocturnal seepage, abdominal cramping, and pelvic discomfort. While bloody bowel movements are uncommon in typical pouchitis, patients with IPAA with or without pouchitis can have iron deficiency anemia[50,51]. Patients with severe pouchitis occasionally present with fever, dehydration, malnutrition which may require hospitalization. Patients may have predominant extra-intestinal symptoms such as arthralgia and uveitis. These symptoms, however, are not specific and can present in disorders of the pouch other than pouchitis, such as cuffitis, CD of the pouch, proximal small bowel bacterial overgrowth, and IPS.

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATIONS

Making diagnosis of pouchitis should not solely rely on presenting symptoms. The severity of symptoms does not necessarily correlate with the degree of endoscopic or histologic inflammation of the pouch[52,53]. A combined assessment of symptoms, endoscopic and histologic features is the key to making an accurate diagnosis and it is necessary to differentiate pouchitis from other inflammatory and non-inflammatory disorders of the pouch such as cuffitis, pouch stricture, pouch sinus, and IPS. There are no universally accepted diagnostic criteria for pouchitis. For clinical trials, the 18-point pouchitis disease activity index (PDAI) is most commonly used in the diagnosis of pouchitis and measurement of disease activity[54].

Pouch endoscopy yields valuable information on severity and extent of mucosal inflammation, presence or absence of concurrent ileitis or cuffitis, and structural abnormalities such as strictures, sinuses, and fistula openings. In addition, pouch endoscopy with segmental biopsy is the tool for dysplasia surveillance and can deliver effective therapy, including stricture dilation. Histopathology is invaluable for the detection of dysplasia, viral inclusion bodies of cytomegalovirus infection, granulomas, pyloric gland metaplasia, mucosal prolapse, and ischemic changes. It should be pointed out that villous blunting and an increased number of mononuclear cells in the lamina propria can be a part of "normal" adaptive changes of pouch mucosa to fecal stasis in the pouch which does not necessarily indicate pouchitis.

In cases of suspected complicated pouchitis, imaging studies such as contrasted pouchography, CT and MRI are typically used to assess the presence of mucosal and transmural disease activity within and around the pouch[55]. Wireless capsule endoscopy appears safe in patients with IPAA, which has been used for diagnostic evaluation in patients with chronic pouchitis[56] or anemia[57]. For patients with symptoms of dyschezia and feeling of incomplete evacuation, anal pouch manometry may be used to identify functional abnormalities such as paradoxical contractions.

CLINICAL CLASSIFICATION

Pouchitis likely represents a disease spectrum from acute, antibiotic-responsive type to chronic, antibiotic-refractory entity. From various perspectives, pouchitis can be categorized into: (1) idiopathic vs secondary based on etiology, (2) remission *vs* active based on disease status, (3) acute *vs* chronic based on disease duration, (4) infrequent episodes *vs* relapsing or continuous based on disease course, and (5) responsive *vs* refractory based on response to antibiotic therapy[58]. A subpopulation of patients has pouchitis associated with identifiable and modifiable causes (namely secondary pouchitis), such as *Clostridium difficile*[59,60] or cytomegalovirus[61,62] infection, and regular use of NSAID[63].

While the majority of patients with pouchitis respond favorably to antibiotic therapy particularly at initial stages of the disease, some patients develop pouchitis refractory to regular antibiotic treatment. This leads to another useful clinical classification based on the response to antibiotic therapy[64]. Analogous to the classification of UC according to the response to or dependency on corticosteroids, pouchitis can be classified as antibiotic-responsive, antibiotic-dependent, and antibiotic-refractory pouchitis[48,64] based on the manner of the patients' response to antibiotics (Figure 1).

TREATMENT

As the majority of patients develop acute pouchitis within the first year after IPAA[65], VSL#3® containing 4 strains of *Lactobacillus*, 3 *Bifidobacterium* species, and *Streptococcus*

salivarius subsp. *Thermophillus* was evaluated for the primary prophylaxis for the initial episode of pouchitis. Two of 20 patients (10%) treated with VSL#3® developed pouchitis within 12 mo after IPAA, while 8 of 20 patients (40%) experienced pouchitis in the placebo group during the same period of time[6].

The management and prognosis vary in different types of pouchitis (Figure 1). For antibiotic-responsive pouchitis, the first-line therapy includes a 14-d course of oral metronidazole (15-20 mg/kg per day) or ciprofloxacin (1000 mg/d)[66,67]. A randomized trial of ciprofloxacin and metronidazole showed that patients treated with ciprofloxacin experience significantly greater reductions in the PDAI scores and fewer adverse effects than those treated with metronidazole[67]. Other agents have been reported in open-labeled trials including tetracycline, clarithromycin, amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, doxycycline, rifaximin, and budesonide enemas[68], alicaforsen enemas, an anti-sense inhibitor of intercellular adhesion molecule-1[69], and AST-120, a highly adsorptive, porous, carbon microspheres[70].

Patients with antibiotic-dependent pouchitis often require long-term maintenance therapy with either antibiotics or probiotics to keep disease in remission. A randomized trial of VSL#3® at a dose of 6 g/d was conducted for the secondary prophylaxis for relapse of pouchitis, after remission was induced by oral ciprofloxacin (1000 mg/d) and rifaximin (2000 mg/d). During the 9-mo trial in 40 patients with relapsing pouchitis, only 15% in the probiotic group relapsed while 100% in the placebo group relapsed[11]. A separate randomized trial of VSL#3® in patients with antibiotic-dependent pouchitis showed that 17 of 20 patients (85%) in the VSL#3® group maintained clinical remission, compared to remission in 1 of 16 patients (6%) in the placebo group[12]. However, in a recent post-market open-labeled trial of VSL#3® in 31 patients with antibiotic-dependent pouchitis, patients received 2 wk of treatment with ciprofloxacin followed by VSL#3®[71]. After 8 mo, 6 of the 31 patients (19%) were still taking VSL#3® and the remaining 25 patients (81%) stopped the agent mainly because of lack of efficacy or development of adverse effects[71].

Antibiotic-refractory pouchitis which is often difficult to treat, is a common cause of pouch failure. Since the patients typically do not respond to full-dose, single-agent antibiotic therapy, it is important to investigate contributing causes (in secondary pouchitis) related to failure to antibiotic therapy. Secondary causes of refractory disease include use of NSAID, concurrent *Clostridium difficile* or cytomegalovirus infection, celiac disease and other autoimmune disorders, cuffitis, CD of the pouch, pouch ischemia, and inflammatory polyps of the pouch[72]. There are no randomized trials in the literature for this category of pouchitis. For patients without obvious causes, treatment options include a prolonged course of combined antibiotic therapy, 5-aminosalicylates, corticosteroids, immunosuppressive agents or even biological therapy. Regimens reported in open-labeled trials include combined ciprofloxacin (1000 mg/d) with rifaximin (2000 mg/d)[73] or metronidazole (1000 mg/d)[74] or tinidazole (1000-1500 mg/d) for 4 wk[75]. However, maintenance of remission in this group of patients after the induction therapy with dual antibiotics remains a challenge[76]. Anti-inflammatory agents, immunomodulators, and biological therapy have been used to treat pouchitis. These agents include bismuth carbomer enemas, short-chain fatty acid enemas, and glutamine enemas, mesalamine enemas, oral budesonide[77], 6-mercaptopurine, and infliximab.

NATURAL HISTORY AND PROGNOSIS

The natural history of pouchitis is not entirely clear. In a study consisting of 100 consecutive UC patients who had restorative proctocolectomy with IPAA, 32 patients developed pouchitis, 5 had chronic refractory pouchitis, 2 of them had pouch failure after pouch resection[58]. Few studies were performed to identify the natural history of pouch and pouchitis. Patients with initial pouchitis almost uniformly respond to antibiotic therapy. However, relapse of pouchitis is common. Of the patients with acute pouchitis, 39% have a single acute episode that responds to antibiotic therapy whereas the remaining 61% of patients develop at least one recurrence[35]. Approximately 5% to 19% patients with acute pouchitis develop refractory or rapidly relapsing symptoms[78-80]. Here is a common scenario: the more frequent the episodes of pouchitis a patient has, the more often the antibiotic therapy is administered, the less likely the patient maintains favorable response to the treatment. The course of antibiotic-responsive pouchitis could evolve into antibiotic-dependent pouchitis followed by antibiotic-refractory pouchitis. Chronic refractory pouchitis is one of the most common causes for pouch failure. Although PSC is a risk factor for pouchitis[3,44,45], liver transplantation with post-transplant use of immunosuppressive agents does not appear to have adverse effects on the course of pouchitis[81,82]. In addition, chronic inflammation of the pouch and cuff may pose an increased risk of developing dysplasia or cancer[83,84].

In summary, pouchitis is the most common long-term adverse sequela of IPAA after restorative proctocolectomy. The natural history of pouchitis is yet to be defined. Patients with pouchitis can have a wide range of clinical presentations, disease courses, and prognoses. Accurate diagnosis and classification of pouchitis are the keys to appropriate management. Treatment of pouchitis is largely antibiotic-based. Maintenance of remission in antibiotic-dependent pouchitis and management of antibiotic-refractory pouchitis are a challenge. Secondary causes for refractory pouchitis should be excluded.

REFERENCES

1 **Dhillon S,** Loftus EV Jr, Tremaine WJ, Jewell DA, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR, Melton LJ, Pemberton JH, Wolff BG, Dozois EJ, Cima RR, Larson DW, Sandborn WJ. The natural history of surgery for ulcerative colitis in a population-based cohort from Olmsted County, Minnesota. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: A819

2 **Shen B,** Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Delaney CP, Bennett AE, Achkar JP, Brzezinski A, Khandwala F, Liu W, Bambrick ML, Bast J, Lashner B. Comprehensive evaluation of inflammatory and noninflammatory sequelae of ileal pouch-anal anastomoses. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 93-101

3 **Penna C**, Dozois R, Tremaine W, Sandborn W, LaRusso N, Schleck C, Ilstrup D. Pouchitis after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for ulcerative colitis occurs with increased frequency in patients with associated primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 234-239

4 **Fazio VW**, Ziv Y, Church JM, Oakley JR, Lavery IC, Milsom JW, Schroeder TK. Ileal pouch-anal anastomoses complications and function in 1005 patients. *Ann Surg* 1995; **222**: 120-127

5 **Stocchi L**, Pemberton JH. Pouch and pouchitis. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2001; **30**: 223-241

6 **Gionchetti P**, Rizzello F, Helwig U, Venturi A, Lammers KM, Brigidi P, Vitali B, Poggioli G, Miglioli M, Campieri M. Prophylaxis of pouchitis onset with probiotic therapy: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 1202-1209

7 **Penna C**, Tiret E, Kartheuser A, Hannoun L, Nordlinger B, Parc R. Function of ileal J pouch-anal anastomosis in patients with familial adenomatous polyposis. *Br J Surg* 1993; **80**: 765-767

8 **Tjandra JJ**, Fazio VW, Church JM, Oakley JR, Milsom JW, Lavery IC. Similar functional results after restorative proctocolectomy in patients with familial adenomatous polyposis and mucosal ulcerative colitis. *Am J Surg* 1993; **165**: 322-325

9 **Sandborn WJ**. Pouchitis following ileal pouch-anal anastomosis: definition, pathogenesis, and treatment. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 1856-1860

10 **Gosselink MP**, Schouten WR, van Lieshout LM, Hop WC, Laman JD, Ruseler-van Embden JG. Delay of the first onset of pouchitis by oral intake of the probiotic strain Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 876-884

11 **Gionchetti P**, Rizzello F, Venturi A, Brigidi P, Matteuzzi D, Bazzocchi G, Poggioli G, Miglioli M, Campieri M. Oral bacteriotherapy as maintenance treatment in patients with chronic pouchitis: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 305-309

12 **Mimura T**, Rizzello F, Helwig U, Poggioli G, Schreiber S, Talbot IC, Nicholls RJ, Gionchetti P, Campieri M, Kamm MA. Once daily high dose probiotic therapy (VSL#3) for maintaining remission in recurrent or refractory pouchitis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 108-114

13 **Komanduri S**, Gillevet PM, Sikaroodi M, Mutlu E, Keshavarzian A. Dysbiosis in pouchitis: evidence of unique microfloral patterns in pouch inflammation. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 352-360

14 **Duffy M**, O'Mahony L, Coffey JC, Collins JK, Shanahan F, Redmond HP, Kirwan WO. Sulfate-reducing bacteria colonize pouches formed for ulcerative colitis but not for familial adenomatous polyposis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 384-388

15 **Nasmyth DG**, Godwin PG, Dixon MF, Williams NS, Johnston D. Ileal ecology after pouch-anal anastomosis or ileostomy. A study of mucosal morphology, fecal bacteriology, fecal volatile fatty acids, and their interrelationship. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96**: 817-824

16 **de Silva HJ**, Jones M, Prince C, Kettlewell M, Mortensen NJ, Jewell DP. Lymphocyte and macrophage subpopulations in pelvic ileal pouches. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 1160-1165

17 **Hirata I**, Austin LL, Blackwell WH, Weber JR, Dobbins WO. Immunoelectron microscopic localization of HLA-DR antigen in control small intestine and colon and in inflammatory bowel disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31**: 1317-1330

18 **Stallmach A**, Schäfer F, Hoffmann S, Weber S, Müller-Molaian I, Schneider T, Köhne G, Ecker KW, Feifel G, Zeitz M. Increased state of activation of CD4 positive T cells and elevated interferon gamma production in pouchitis. *Gut* 1998; **43**: 499-505

19 **Goldberg PA**, Herbst F, Beckett CG, Martelli B, Kontakou M, Talbot IC, Ciclitira PJ, Nicholls RJ. Leucocyte typing, cytokine expression, and epithelial turnover in the ileal pouch in patients with ulcerative colitis and familial adenomatous polyposis. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 549-553

20 **Patel RT**, Bain I, Youngs D, Keighley MR. Cytokine production in pouchitis is similar to that in ulcerative colitis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1995; **38**: 831-837

21 **Schmidt C**, Giese T, Ludwig B, Menges M, Schilling M, Meuer SC, Zeuzem S, Stallmach A. Increased cytokine transcripts in pouchitis reflect the degree of inflammation but not the underlying entity. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2006; **21**: 419-426

22 **Gionchetti P**, Campieri M, Belluzzi A, Bertinelli E, Ferretti M, Brignola C, Poggioli G, Miglioli M, Barbara L. Mucosal concentrations of interleukin-1 beta, interleukin-6, interleukin-8, and tumor necrosis factor-alpha in pelvic ileal pouches. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39**: 1525-1531

23 **Patel RT**, Pall AA, Adu D, Keighley MR. Circulating soluble adhesion molecules in inflammatory bowel disease. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1995; **7**: 1037-1041

24 **Chaussade S**, Denizot Y, Valleur P, Nicoli J, Raibaud P, Guerre J, Hautefeuille P, Couturier D, Benveniste J. Presence of PAF-acether in stool of patients with pouch ileoanal anastomosis and pouchitis. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **100**: 1509-1514

25 **Gertner DJ**, Rampton DS, Madden MV, Talbot IC, Nicholls RJ, Lennard-Jones JE. Increased leukotriene B4 release from ileal pouch mucosa in ulcerative colitis compared with familial adenomatous polyposis. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 1429-1432

26 **Stucchi AF**, Shebani KO, Leeman SE, Wang CC, Reed KL, Fruin AB, Gower AC, McClung JP, Andry CD, O'Brien MJ, Pothoulakis C, Becker JM. A neurokinin 1 receptor antagonist reduces an ongoing ileal pouch inflammation and the response to a subsequent inflammatory stimulus. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2003; **285**: G1259-G1267

27 **Stallmach A**, Chan CC, Ecker KW, Feifel G, Herbst H, Schuppan D, Zeitz M. Comparable expression of matrix metalloproteinases 1 and 2 in pouchitis and ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 415-422

28 **Ulisse S**, Gionchetti P, D'Alò S, Russo FP, Pesce I, Ricci G, Rizzello F, Helwig U, Cifone MG, Campieri M, De Simone C. Expression of cytokines, inducible nitric oxide synthase, and matrix metalloproteinases in pouchitis: effects of probiotic treatment. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 2691-2699

29 **Thomas PD**, Forbes, Nicholls RJ, Ciclitira PJ. Increased mucosal IFN-γ production in pouchitis despite normal functional responses of isolated CD4 cells. *Gut* 1999; **44** suppl 4: 32A

30 **Bulois P**, Tremaine WJ, Maunoury V, Gambiez L, Hafraoui S, Leteurtre L, Cortot A, Sandborn WJ, Colombel JF, Desreumaux P. Pouchitis is associated with mucosal imbalance between interleukin-8 and interleukin-10. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2000; **6**: 157-164

31 **Bell AJ**, Nicholls RJ, Forbes A, Ellis HJ, Ciclitira PJ. Human lymphocyte stimulation with pouchitis flora is greater than with flora from a healthy pouch but is suppressed by metronidazole. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1801-1805

32 **Biancone L**, Palmieri G, Lombardi A, Colantoni A, Tonelli F, Das KM, Pallone F. Tropomyosin expression in the ileal pouch: a relationship with the development of pouchitis in ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 2719-2726

33 **Tysk C**, Riedesel H, Lindberg E, Panzini B, Podolsky D, Järnerot G. Colonic glycoproteins in monozygotic twins with inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **100**: 419-423

34 **Merrett MN**, Soper N, Mortensen N, Jewell DP. Intestinal permeability in the ileal pouch. *Gut* 1996; **39**: 226-230

35 **Lohmuller JL**, Pemberton JH, Dozois RR, Ilstrup D, van Heerden J. Pouchitis and extraintestinal manifestations of inflammatory bowel disease after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. *Ann Surg* 1990; **211**: 622-627; discussion 627-629

36 **Merrett MN**, Mortensen N, Kettlewell M, Jewell DO. Smoking may prevent pouchitis in patients with restorative proctocolectomy for ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 362-364

37 **Carter MJ**, Di Giovine FS, Cox A, Goodfellow P, Jones S, Shorthouse AJ, Duff GW, Lobo AJ. The interleukin 1 receptor antagonist gene allele 2 as a predictor of pouchitis following colectomy and IPAA in ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 805-811

38 **Brett PM**, Yasuda N, Yiannakou JY, Herbst F, Ellis HJ, Vaughan R, Nicholls RJ, Ciclitira PJ. Genetic and immunological markers in pouchitis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1996; **8**: 951-955

39 **Aisenberg J**, Legnani PE, Nilubol N, Cobrin GM, Ellozy SH, Hegazi RA, Yager J, Bodian C, Gorfine SR, Bauer JJ, Plevy SE, Sachar DB. Are pANCA, ASCA, or cytokine gene polymorphisms associated with pouchitis? Long-term follow-

up in 102 ulcerative colitis patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 432-441
40 **Meier CB**, Hegazi RA, Aisenberg J, Legnani PE, Nilubol N, Cobrin GM, Duerr RH, Gorfine SR, Bauer JJ, Sachar DB, Plevy SE. Innate immune receptor genetic polymorphisms in pouchitis: is CARD15 a susceptibility factor? *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 965-971
41 **Schmidt CM**, Lazenby AJ, Hendrickson RJ, Sitzmann JV. Preoperative terminal ileal and colonic resection histopathology predicts risk of pouchitis in patients after ileoanal pull-through procedure. *Ann Surg* 1998; **227**: 654-662; discussion 663-665
42 **Achkar JP**, Al-Haddad M, Lashner B, Remzi FH, Brzezinski A, Shen B, Khandwala F, Fazio V. Differentiating risk factors for acute and chronic pouchitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **3**: 60-66
43 **Okon A**, Dubinsky M, Vasiliauskas EA, Papadakis KA, Ippoliti A, Targan SR, Fleshner PR. Elevated platelet count before ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for ulcerative colitis is associated with the development of chronic pouchitis. *Am Surg* 2005; **71**: 821-826
44 **Shepherd NA**, Hultén L, Tytgat GN, Nicholls RJ, Nasmyth DG, Hill MJ, Fernandez F, Gertner DJ, Rampton DS, Hill MJ. Pouchitis. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1989; **4**: 205-229
45 **Hata K**, Watanabe T, Shinozaki M, Nagawa H. Patients with extraintestinal manifestations have a higher risk of developing pouchitis in ulcerative colitis: multivariate analysis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38**: 1055-1058
46 **Fleshner PR**, Vasiliauskas EA, Kam LY, Fleshner NE, Gaiennie J, Abreu-Martin MT, Targan SR. High level perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (pANCA) in ulcerative colitis patients before colectomy predicts the development of chronic pouchitis after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. *Gut* 2001; **49**: 671-677
47 **Kuisma J**, Järvinen H, Kahri A, Färkkilä M. Factors associated with disease activity of pouchitis after surgery for ulcerative colitis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39**: 544-548
48 **Shen B**, Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Brzezinski A, Bennett AE, Lopez R, Hammel JP, Achkar JP, Bevins CL, Lavery IC, Strong SA, Delaney CP, Liu W, Bambrick ML, Sherman KK, Lashner BA. Risk factors for diseases of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis after restorative proctocolectomy for ulcerative colitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 81-89; quiz 2-3
49 **Hui T**, Landers C, Vasiliauskas E, Abreu M, Dubinsky M, Papadakis KA, Price J, Lin YC, Huiying Y, Targan S, Fleshner P. Serologic responses in indeterminate colitis patients before ileal pouch-anal anastomosis may determine those at risk for continuous pouch inflammation. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2005; **48**: 1254-1262
50 **Pastrana RJ**, Torres EA, Arroyo JM, Rivera CE, Sánchez CJ, Morales L. Iron-deficiency anemia as presentation of pouchitis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2007; **41**: 41-44
51 **Oikonomou IK**, Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Lopez R, Lashner BA, Shen B. Risk factors for anemia in patients with ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2007; **50**: 69-74
52 **Shen B**, Achkar JP, Lashner BA, Ormsby AH, Remzi FH, Bevins CL, Brzezinski A, Petras RE, Fazio VW. Endoscopic and histologic evaluation together with symptom assessment are required to diagnose pouchitis. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 261-267
53 **Moskowitz RL**, Shepherd NA, Nicholls RJ. An assessment of inflammation in the reservoir after restorative proctocolectomy with ileoanal ileal reservoir. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1986; **1**: 167-174
54 **Sandborn WJ**, Tremaine WJ, Batts KP, Pemberton JH, Phillips SF. Pouchitis after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis: a Pouchitis Disease Activity Index. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1994; **69**: 409-415
55 **Nadgir RN**, Soto JA, Dendrinos K, Lucey BC, Becker JM, Farraye FA. MRI of complicated pouchitis. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2006; **187**: W386-W391
56 **Calabrese C**, Fabbri A, Gionchetti P, Rizzello F, Morselli C, Liguori G, Poggioli G, Campieri M, Di Febo G. Controlled study using wireless capsule endoscopy for the evaluation of the small intestine in chronic refractory pouchitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 1311-1316
57 **Shen B**, Remzi FH, Santisi J, Lashner BA, Brzezinski A, Fazio VW. Application of wireless capsule endoscopy for the evaluation of iron deficiency anemia in patients with ileal pouches. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **42**: 897-902
58 **Sandborn WJ**. Pouchitis: Risk factors, frequency, natural history, classification and public health prospective. In: MeLeod RS, Martin F, Sutherland LR, Wallace JL, Williams CN, editors. Trends in Inflammatory Bowel Disease 1996. Lancaster: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1997: 51-63
59 **Mann SD**, Pitt J, Springall RG, Thillainayagam AV. Clostridium difficile infection--an unusual cause of refractory pouchitis: report of a case. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2003; **46**: 267-270
60 **Shen B**, Goldblum JR, Hull TL, Remzi FH, Bennett AE, Fazio VW. Clostridium difficile-associated pouchitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2006; **51**: 2361-2364
61 **Muñoz-Juarez M**, Pemberton JH, Sandborn WJ, Tremaine WJ, Dozois RR. Misdiagnosis of specific cytomegalovirus infection of the ileoanal pouch as refractory idiopathic chronic pouchitis: report of two cases. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1999; **42**: 117-120
62 **Moonka D**, Furth EE, MacDermott RP, Lichtenstein GR. Pouchitis associated with primary cytomegalovirus infection. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 264-266
63 **Shen B**, Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Bennett AE, Lopez R, Lavery IC, Brzezinski A, Sherman KK, Lashner BA. Effect of withdrawal of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug use on ileal pouch disorders. *Dig Dis Sci* 2007; **52**: 3321-3328
64 **Shen B**. Diagnosis and treatment of patients with pouchitis. *Drugs* 2003; **63**: 453-461
65 **Ståhlberg D**, Gullberg K, Liljeqvist L, Hellers G, Löfberg R. Pouchitis following pelvic pouch operation for ulcerative colitis. Incidence, cumulative risk, and risk factors. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1996; **39**: 1012-1018
66 **Madden MV**, McIntyre AS, Nicholls RJ. Double-blind crossover trial of metronidazole versus placebo in chronic unremitting pouchitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39**: 1193-1196
67 **Shen B**, Achkar JP, Lashner BA, Ormsby AH, Remzi FH, Brzezinski A, Bevins CL, Bambrick ML, Seidner DL, Fazio VW. A randomized clinical trial of ciprofloxacin and metronidazole to treat acute pouchitis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2001; **7**: 301-305
68 **Sambuelli A**, Boerr L, Negreira S, Gil A, Camartino G, Huernos S, Kogan Z, Cabanne A, Graziano A, Peredo H, Doldán I, Gonzalez O, Sugai E, Lumi M, Bai JC. Budesonide enema in pouchitis--a double-blind, double-dummy, controlled trial. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 27-34
69 **Miner P**, Wedel M, Bane B, Bradley J. An enema formulation of alicaforsen, an antisense inhibitor of intercellular adhesion molecule-1, in the treatment of chronic, unremitting pouchitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 281-286
70 **Shen B**, Pardi DS, Bennett AE, Sherman KK. A pilot study of the efficacy and tolerability of AST-120 in the treatment of active pouchitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: (Abstract)
71 **Shen B**, Brzezinski A, Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Achkar JP, Bennett AE, Sherman K, Lashner BA. Maintenance therapy with a probiotic in antibiotic-dependent pouchitis: experience in clinical practice. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **22**: 721-728
72 **Schaus BJ**, Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Bennett AE, Lashner BA, Shen B. Clinical features of ileal pouch polyps in patients with underlying ulcerative colitis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2007; **50**: 832-838
73 **Gionchetti P**, Rizzello F, Venturi A, Ugolini F, Rossi M, Brigidi P, Johansson R, Ferrieri A, Poggioli G, Campieri M. Antibiotic combination therapy in patients with chronic, treatment-resistant pouchitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1999; **13**: 713-718
74 **Mimura T**, Rizzello F, Helwig U, Poggioli G, Schreiber S, Talbot IC, Nicholls RJ, Gionchetti P, Campieri M, Kamm MA. Four-week open-label trial of metronidazole and ciprofloxacin for the treatment of recurrent or refractory pouchitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 909-917
75 **Shen B**, Fazio VW, Remzi FH, Bennett AE, Lopez R, Brzezinski A, Oikonomou I, Sherman KK, Lashner BA. Combined ciprofloxacin and tinidazole therapy in the treatment of chronic refractory pouchitis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2007; **50**: 498-508
76 **Viscido A**, Kohn A, Papi C, Caprilli R. Management of refractory fistulizing pouchitis with infliximab. *Eur Rev Med*

Pharmacol Sci 2004; **8**: 239-246
77 **Gionchetti P**, Rizzello F, Poggioli G, Pierangeli F, Laureti S, Morselli C, Tambasco R, Calabrese C, Campieri M. Oral budesonide in the treatment of chronic refractory pouchitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 1231-1236
78 **Mowschenson PM**, Critchlow JF, Peppercorn MA. Ileoanal pouch operation: long-term outcome with or without diverting ileostomy. *Arch Surg* 2000; **135**: 463-465; discussion 465-466
79 **Hurst RD**, Chung TP, Rubin M, Michelassi F. The implications of acute pouchitis on the long-term functional results after restorative proctocolectomy. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 1998; **4**: 280-284
80 **Madiba TE**, Bartolo DC. Pouchitis following restorative proctocolectomy for ulcerative colitis: incidence and therapeutic outcome. *J R Coll Surg Edinb* 2001; **46**: 334-337
81 **Zins BJ**, Sandborn WJ, Penna CR, Landers CJ, Targan SR, Tremaine WJ, Wiesner RH, Dozois RR. Pouchitis disease course after orthotopic liver transplantation in patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis and an ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1995; **90**: 2177-2181
82 **Freeman K**, Shao Z, Remzi FH, Fazio VE, Lopez R, Shen B. Orthotopic liver Transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis in patients with ulcerative colitis: Impact on occurrence of chronic pouchitis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: A516
83 **Das P**, Johnson MW, Tekkis PP, Nicholls RJ. Risk of dysplasia and adenocarcinoma following restorative proctocolectomy for ulcerative colitis. *Colorectal Dis* 2007; **9**: 15-27
84 **Thompson-Fawcett MW**, Marcus V, Redston M, Cohen Z, McLeod RS. Risk of dysplasia in long-term ileal pouches and pouches with chronic pouchitis. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 275-281

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Li HY

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5605-5611
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

BASIC RESEARCH

Effect of *Scutellariae Radix* extract on experimental dextran-sulfate sodium-induced colitis in rats

Ho-Lam Chung, Grace Gar-Lee Yue, Ka-Fai To, Ya-Lun Su, Yu Huang, Wing-Hung Ko

Ho-Lam Chung, Department of Physiology, Faculty of Medicine, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Shatin, Hong Kong, China
Grace Gar-Lee Yue, Institute of Chinese Medicine, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Shatin, Hong Kong, China
Ka-Fai To, Department of Anatomical and Cellular Pathology, Faculty of Medicine, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Shatin, Hong Kong, China
Ya-Lun Su, Institute of Materia Medica, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, Beijing 100050, China
Yu Huang, Wing-Hung Ko, Department of Physiology and Li Ka Shing Institute of Health Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Shatin, Hong Kong, China
Supported by a direct grant for research from The Chinese University of Hong Kong, No. 2041075 awarded to Wing-Hung Ko
Correspondence to: Wing-Hung Ko, Department of Physiology and Li Ka Shing Institute of Health Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Shatin, Hong Kong, China. whko@cuhk.edu.hk
Telephone: +852-26096781 Fax: +852-26035022
Received: May 3, 2007 Revised: July 4, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the effect of *Scutellariae Radix* extract (SRE) on ulcerative colitis (UC) in rats induced by dextran-sulfate sodium (DSS).

METHODS: Colitis was induced in male Sprague-Dawley (SD) rats (170-180 g) by 4% dextran sulfate sodium (DSS, wt/v; MW 54000) in drinking water for 8 d. The treated rats received 4% DSS and SRE orally (100 mg/kg per day). Control rats received either tap water or SRE only. Macroscopic assessment which included body weight changes, fecal occult blood and stool consistency were determined daily. At the appointed time, the rats were sacrificed and the entire colons were removed. The colon length and the myeloperoxidase (MPO) activity were measured. The severity of colitis was graded by morphological and histological assessments. The ion transport activity of the colonic mucosa was assessed by electrophysiological technique.

RESULTS: Rats treated with oral administration of 4% DSS regularly developed clinical and macroscopic signs of colitis. Treatment with SRE relieved the symptoms, including the reduction in body weight, shortening and ulceration of the colon. Administration of SRE also significantly reduced the histological damage induced by DSS. Moreover, the *Isc* responses of the colonic mucosa to forskolin were suppressed after the induction of colitis. The stimulated ion transport activity of DSS-rats treated with SRE displayed significant improvement in the secretory responsiveness.

CONCLUSION: SRE was effective in treating acute DSS-induced ulcerative colitis, as gauged by reduced clinical disease, improved macroscopic and histological damage scores, and enhanced recovery of normal colonic secretory function.

Key words: Ulcerative colitis; *Scutellariae Radix*; Inflammatory bowel disease; Colonic ion transport; Traditional Chinese medicine

Chung HL, Yue GGL, To KF, Su YL, Huang Y, Ko WH. Effect of *Scutellariae Radix* extract on experimental dextran-sulfate sodium-induced colitis in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5605-5611

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5605.asp

INTRODUCTION

Ulcerative colitis is a worldwide, chronic, idiopathic, inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) of the rectal and colonic mucosa. In the past, this disease was thought to occur infrequently in the Asia Pacific region. However, new evidence is showing that IBD is on the rise in the region, including in Hong Kong and mainland China[1-3]. Although glucocorticoid and salicylazosulfapyridine have been mainly used for the treatment of this disease, their side effects remain a major clinical problem. Therefore, there is an increasing interest in using traditional Chinese medicines (TCM) as alternative therapy in addition to the conventional therapies that are used to treat UC[4].

The dried root of *Scutellaria baicalensis* Georgi (*Scutellaria Radix*, common name Huangqin) is widely used in TCM. It is officially listed in the Chinese Pharmacopoeia and is one of the most widely used Chinese herbal medicines for the treatment of bacterial infection of the respiratory and gastrointestinal tract. In Japan and China, *Scutellariae Radix* has been employed for centuries as an important medicine to treat chronic inflammatory and ulcerative disease. The main components of *Scutellariae Radix* (and of all *Scutellaria* species) are baicalein, baicalin and wogonin.

Scutellariae Radix and its major flavonoids possess multiple biological and pharmacological effects, including anti-inflammation[5], anti-viral[6], anti-tumor[7], anti-proliferative[8] and anti-bacterial[9], *etc*. Recent studies also suggest that *Scutellariae Radix*-containing TCM formula, such as Orengedoku-to (Huang Lian Jie Du Tang) may have therapeutic potential against murine colitis[10-12].

In this study, an experimental model of UC was established in SD rats using DSS. The effect of the total extract of *Scutellariae Radix* on DSS-rats was evaluated using macroscopic, histological, biochemical and electrophysiological assessments.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Materials

Male SD rats, initially weighing 170-180 g, were housed five per cage and maintained in an animal holding room controlled at a constant temperature of 24℃ ± 2℃ with a relative humidity of 70% ± 5% and a 12 h light-dark cycle. Animals were fed on a standard pellet chow with free access to fresh tap water. The study was approved by the Animal Research Ethics Committee of our university. DSS was obtained from MP Biochemicals Inc. Hexadecyltrimethylammonium bromide, forskolin were obtained from Sigma. SRE was purified from the ground roots of *S. baicalensis* Georgi with hexane, acetone, and finally, with methanol as described previously[13,14].

Experimental design

The induction of colitis was modified from a previously described work[15]. The experiment lasted for 8 d. The rats were randomly divided into four groups. In the DSS Group, 4% DSS in drinking water *ad libitum* was given from d 0 to d 7. In DSS + SRE group, SRE (100 mg/kg per day) was orally administrated with exposure to 4% DSS drinking water. In the normal control group (Ctr), the rats had free access to a water bottle containing tap water. In Ctr + SRE group, SRE alone (100 mg/kg per day) was administered orally to the rats. In this model, the colonic damage was evaluated using macroscopic, histological, electrophysiological and biochemical assessments (see below). From d 3 to d 7, rats were sacrificed by CO_2 asphyxiation on each day. Postmortem, the entire colon was removed from the cecum to the anus and placed on an ice cold plate and cleaned of fat and mesentery. The length of each specimen was measured, which is an indirect marker of inflammation. The colon was divided into three parts (proximal, middle and distal) based on total length: 10% regions from three parts were fixed for histological examination; the distal portion was used for electrophysiological studies; and the adjacent distal 10% was snap-frozen in liquid nitrogen for later quantification of MPO activity.

Macroscopic assessment

Animals were checked daily for the three main clinical symptoms-body weight changes, stool consistency and fecal occult blood. Weight loss is usually observed in animals with colitis, thus body weight changes recorded could be an indicator for the severity of colitis. The colonic damage was quantified by a clinical scoring system assessing stool consistency and rectal bleeding[16]. For stool consistency, 0 points were given for well formed pellets, 2 points for pasty and semiformed stools that did not stick to the anus, and 4 points for liquid stools that did stick to the anus. Bleeding was scored 0 for no blood in hemoccult, 2 points for positive hemoccult, and 4 points for gross bleeding. These scores were added, forming a total clinical score that ranged from 0.0 (healthy) to 8.0 (maximal activity of colitis).

Histological assessment

For light microscopy, we used tissue samples from three parts (distal, middle and proximal) of colon of each animal fixed in 4% (40 g/L) buffered paraformaldehyde, dehydrated in increasing concentrations of ethanol, and embedded in paraffin. Thereafter, sections of tissue were cut at 5 μm on a rotary microtome, mounted on clean glass slides and dried overnight at 37℃. The sections were cleaned, hydrated, and stained with hematoxylin and eosin (HE) for histological evaluation of inflammatory infiltrate and tissue damage, according to standard protocols, and the slides were coded to prevent observer bias during evaluation. All tissue sections were examined in a blinded fashion by two investigators. Histological damage was scored using the criteria of Siegmund B *et al*[17] which considers the inflammatory infiltrate (maximum score = 3) and tissue damage (maximum score = 3). Photographs of colon samples were digitized using a ZEISS Axioskop 2 plus camera. Analysis of the figures was carried out with Axio Vision 3.1 image analysis program.

Electrophysiological assessment

Mucosal ion transport was examined in colonic segments (approximately distal colon) mounted in Ussing chambers according to a well established protocol in our laboratory[18]. In brief, tissues (surface area = 0.45 cm^2) were bathed in 20 mL of warm (37℃), oxygenated Krebs buffer. The spontaneous potential differences were maintained at 0 mV by a voltage clamp amplifier (Physiologic Instruments), and the short-circuit current (I_{SC} in μAcm^{-2}) was continuously measured as an index of electrogenic ion transport. A transepithelial potential difference of 1 mV was applied periodically, and the resultant change in current was used to calculate the transepithelial resistance (R_t) using Ohm's law. Stimulated ion transport was evoked by the addition of an adenylate cyclase-activating agent, forskolin (1 μmol/L), to the mucosal bathing solution. In all instances, the effect of the treatment was recorded as the maximum change in I_{SC} (ΔI_{SC}) to occur within 5 min.

Biochemical assessment

The MPO activity was determined following a published protocol[19]. Briefly, frozen tissue samples were weighed and suspended in potassium phosphate buffer (20 mmol/L, pH 7.4) at a ratio of 50 mg tissue to 1 mL of buffer. Tissue was homogenized by a polytron tissue homogenizer three times for 20 s, and homogenate was decanted into sterile

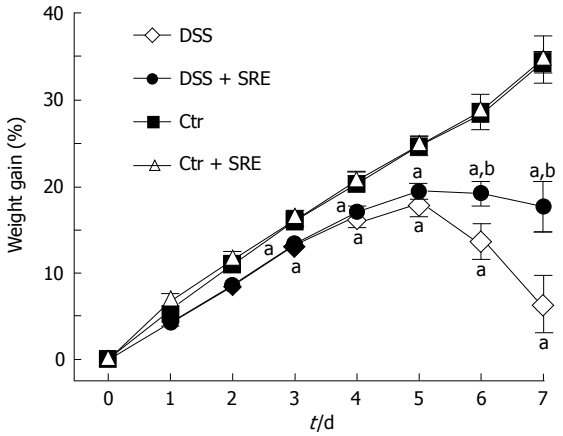


Figure 1 Figure showing the weight gain percentage (%) in different groups of rat from d 0 to d 7. Body weight was assessed daily and expressed as percentage increase of basal body weight. Values are expressed as the means ± SE, (n = 8), $^{a}P < 0.05$ *vs* Ctr group, $^{b}P < 0.05$ *vs* DSS group, one-way ANOVA followed by Tukey multiple comparison test.

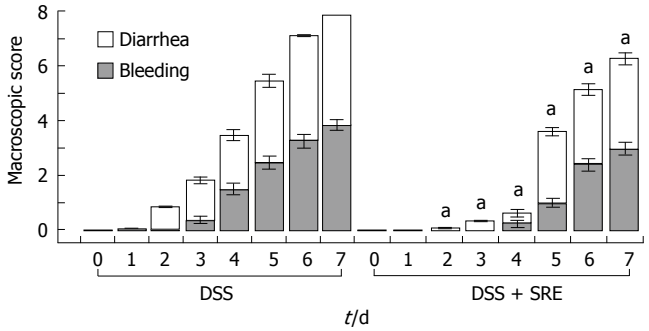


Figure 2 Ameliorative effect of SRE treatment on the time-course changes in the macroscopic score over the 8-d experimental period. The macroscopic score of Ctr and Ctr + SRE groups is 0 (data not shown). $^{a}P < 0.05$ *vs* DSS group. Non-parametric data are expressed as the means ± SE, Kruskal-Wallis One Way Analysis using Student-Newman-Keuls method (n = 6-8).

Eppendorf tubes and centrifuged at 10000 × g for 10 min at 4℃. The pellet was then resuspended in 1 mL potassium phosphate buffer (50 mmol/L, pH 6.0) containing 5 mg/mL hexadecyltrimethylammonium bromide (TMB) at a tissue concentration of 50 mg/mL. Samples were sonicated three times for 10 s, freeze-thawed three times, and centrifuged at 10000 × g for 5 min at 4℃. The reaction was started by mixing 20 μL of the supernatant at 25℃ with 30 μL TMB. After 110 s, the reaction was terminated by addition of 50 μL of 0.18 mol/L H_2SO_4. The change in absorbance was read at 450 nm. MPO activity (1 unit) was expressed as the amount of enzyme necessary for the degradation of 1 μmol H_2O_2/min per 100 mg tissue at 25℃.

Statistical analysis

All data are presented as means ± SE. One way ANOVA followed by post hoc statistics with Tukey test was used for statistical evaluation of the parametric data. Non-parametric data was analyzed by Kruskal-Wallis One Way Analysis using Student-Newman-Keuls method. $P < 0.05$ was considered as statistically significant. The values of n refer to the number of experiments undertaken using different rats. Non-parametric data are expressed as the means ± SE.

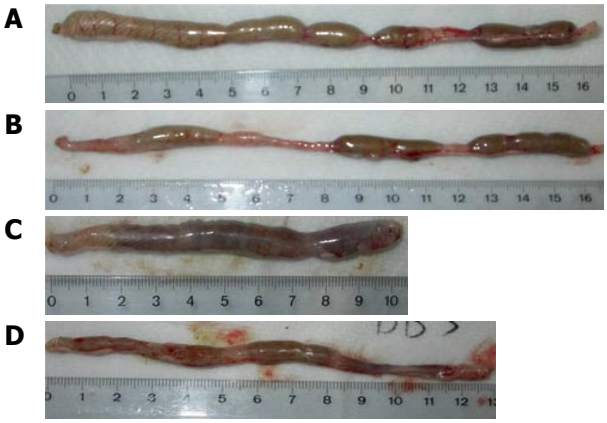


Figure 3 Macroscopic view of the colon showing the changes in colon length in different groups of rat on d 7. Not much difference was observed between the colon of the Ctr (**A**) and Ctr + SRE group (**B**), but significant difference could be found in the DSS group (**C**) which displayed extensive hyperemia and edema. In the DSS + SRE group, the shortening of colon was less severe (**D**) when compared with the control (**A**).

RESULTS

Macroscopic assessment

The weight gain % over the entire study period is shown in Figure 1. The weight gain % of rats in DSS group and DSS + SRE group were significantly lower than the Ctr group and Ctr + SRE group from d 3 until the end of experiment. The body weight of rats in DSS group then dramatically decreased from d 5 onwards. However, in the case of DSS + SRE group, the weight gain % became stabilized and the weight loss was found to be less severe than DSS group from d 6 to d 7. Figure 2 shows the macroscopic score recorded throughout the experimental period in DSS and DSS + SRE groups. Oral administration of SRE resulted in a significant reduction in the clinical activity of colitis compared with DSS-treated rats. Moreover, the occurrences of those clinical signs were found to be delayed in DSS + SRE group.

The colon length is a useful indication of colitis and is, therefore, measured as a marker of inflammation (Figure 3). After 8 d treatment with DSS in drinking water, there was a significant shortening of the colon length (Figure 3C) compared with the Ctr group (Figure 3A) and the Ctr + SRE group (Figure 3B). The oral administration of SRE significantly improved this inflammatory marker (Figure 3D). On d 7, the colon length of DSS group (11.2 cm ± 0.4 cm, n = 10) was significantly shorter than the control group (16.8 cm ± 0.6 cm, n = 8). The colon length of DSS-rats treated with SRE (13.5 cm ± 0.4 cm, n = 9), however, was significantly longer than that of untreated rats.

Histological assessment

Histological damage was evaluated by the grading method described above in Materials and Methods. The occurrence of UC was confirmed on the basis of histological damage and inflammatory infiltrate as shown in Figure 4. Figure 5 summarized the damage scores from DSS rats and DSS rats treated with SRE. The microscopic score of samples

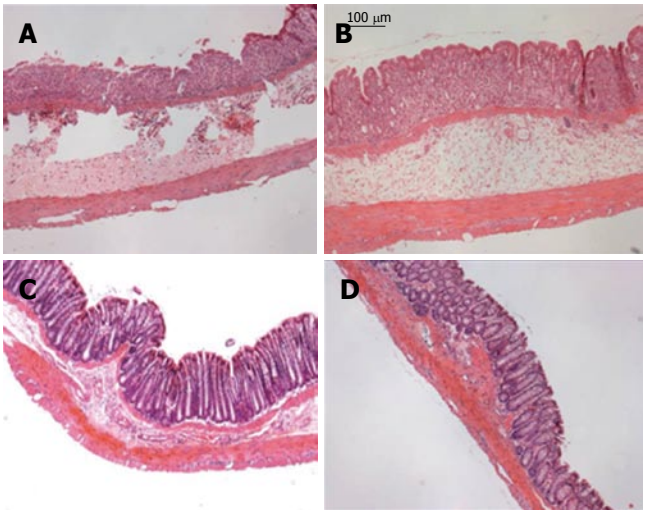


Figure 4 Histological sections from different groups of rats on d 7. **A**: DSS group showing extensive ulceration with a severe inflammatory cell infiltrate; **B**: DSS + SRE group showing recovery in the inflammatory cell infiltration with less severe ulceration; **C**: Non-colitic Ctr group showing the normal histology of the colon; **D**: Ctr + SRE group showing the normal morphology of the colon. (HE staining; original magnifications, x 100).

from different regions (distal, middle and proximal) of colon were not significantly different from each other (data not shown). The histological index began to increase on d 3 in both groups. However, the rats with SRE administration showed a significantly lower value than the untreated animals on d 6 and d 7.

Electrophysiological assessment

Electrogenic ion transport function was assessed by stimulating the colon with an adenylate cyclase activator, forskolin (1 μmol/L), using short-circuit current measurement technique (Figure 6). Under the experimental conditions, the increase in I_{SC} is mainly due to the cAMP-mediated Cl^- secretion *via* the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR)[18]. The basal I_{SC} and R_t in the tissues were recorded and these parameters were not significantly different (data not shown) when tissues from different groups were compared. On d 7, the secretory response to the cAMP-elevating agent was significantly diminished in tissues from rats treated with DSS (ΔI_{SC} = 4.94 ± 1.65 μAcm^{-2}, n = 6) when compared with Ctr (ΔI_{SC} = 60.97 ± 7.62 μAcm^{-2}, n = 8) and Ctr + SRE (ΔI_{SC} = 61.48 ± 6.78 μAcm^{-2}, n = 7). On the other hand, the reduced responsiveness was ameliorated in the colitic rats with SRE administration (ΔI_{SC} = 20.67 ± 3.30 μAcm^{-2}, n = 9).

Biochemical assessment

The MPO activity in the groups without DSS treatment remained at a low value throughout the entire experiment and there was no effect of SRE on the control (d 7: Ctr 0.09 ± 0.01 mU/mg, n = 6; Ctr + SRE 0.06 ± 0.0003 mU/mg, n = 5). In comparison, rats with colitis were accompanied by a significant increase in MPO activity (d 7: 0.52 ± 0.07 mU/mg, n = 8). On d 7, the increase in MPO activity (0.34 ± 0.05 mU/mg, n = 8) was significantly reduced in rats treated with SRE.

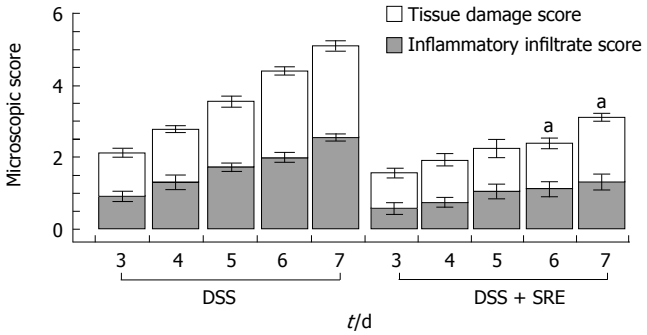


Figure 5 Ameliorative effect of SRE treatment on the time-course changes in the microscopic score from d 3 to d 7. The microscopic score of Ctr and Ctr + SRE groups is 0 (data not shown). $^aP < 0.05$ *vs* DSS group. Non-parametric data are expressed as the means ± SE, Kruskal-Wallis One Way Analysis using Student-Newman-Keuls method (n = 4-5).

DISCUSSION

Ulcerative colitis is an inflammatory disease that causes ulcerations of the mucosa in the colon. The incidence of UC is around 1 in 1000 people with a higher prevalence among Caucasians[20]. In the past, this disease has been considered to occur rarely in the Asia Pacific region, but recent evidence indicates that both UC and Crohn's disease (CD) are becoming increasingly prevalent in local populations[3]. For example, from 1991 to 2000, there has been a three-fold increase in the number of cases of UC in China[1]. In Hong Kong, from 1986-1989 to 1999-2001, there was also a three-fold increase in the incidence of CD in the Chinese population[2]. Although the etiology of IBD remains essentially unknown[21], results from many studies in human patients and animal models suggest that it may be related to an abnormal immune response in the gastrointestinal tract, possibly associated with genetic and environmental factors[22,23]. Although progress has been made in the overall management of UC, the pharmacological treatments that are available are still unsatisfactory. Glucocorticoids, sulfasalazine and immunosuppressive drugs have been mainly used for the treatment and maintenance of UC, but the side effects or toxicity of these drugs remain a major clinical problem[24]. As a result, there is an increasing interest in using TCM as alternative therapy in addition to the conventional therapies that are used to treat UC[25]. In Japan and China, the most commonly used alternative remedies are herbal and these have been widely used in patients with mild to moderate disease, as well as an adjunct to therapy in patients with moderate to severe disease[1]. Interestingly, a recent survey showed that one-third of both Chinese and Caucasian IBD patients had used complementary and alternative medicines and therapies[4]. Several TCM formulae have been shown to possess an anti-colitic effect in rats[26-28]. Recent studies suggest that *Scutellariae Radix* may have a pharmacological effect against murine colitis[10-12] and therefore in this study we aim to further evaluate the therapeutic effect of SRE on DSS-induced rat colitis.

In the present study, 4% DSS in drinking water was administrated for 8 d to induce acute colitis in rats. All DSS-treated rats showed numerous clinical symptoms such as body weight loss, diarrhea, bloody stools and shortening

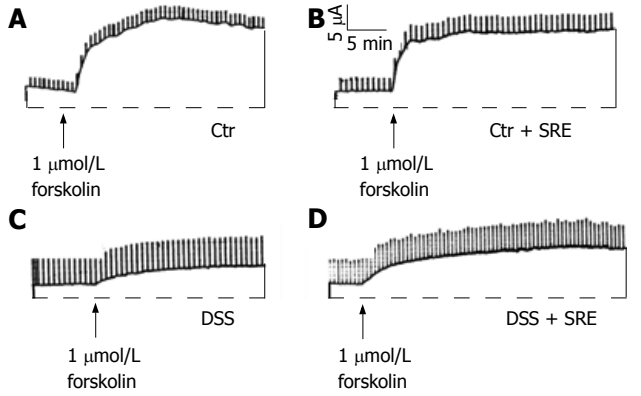


Figure 6 Representative tracings showing the change in I_{SC} evoked by forskolin in different groups of rat on d 7. All four groups showed an increase in ISC but with different magnitudes (**A-D**). The I_{SC} response was greatly reduced in the DSS group (**C**) when compared with the control (**A**). On the other hand, the reduction in secretory response appears to be ameliorated in the DSS + SRE group (**D**). The transient current pulses were the results of intermittently clamping the potential at 1 mV. The horizontal lines represent zero I_{SC}. The record is representative of at least six experiments.

of colon length. Body weight loss is a common symptom of UC because of the loss of body fluid and damage to the digestive system. In Ctr and Ctr + SRE groups, rats showed a steady increase in body weight throughout the experiment. In comparison, rats exposed to DSS had a lower rate of body weight increase followed by a dramatic decrease from d 5 onwards. Treatment with SRE to the colitic rats showed a less severe weight loss from d 6 to d 7. In DSS group, diarrhea and rectal bleeding occurred in d 1 and d 2, respectively. The SRE administration delayed the occurrence of both symptoms and with less severity. Colon shortening is always found in UC patients, which can act as an indirect marker of colonic inflammation. Although the colitic rats with SRE treatment also showed a decrease in colon length on d 7 when compared with the control, the shortening was much less severe than that of DSS rats. Taken together, the data suggested that SRE treatment could induce a decrease in the extent of colitis accompanied by reducing the severity and delaying the occurrence of the associated clinical symptoms.

Colitis induced by DSS was histologically characterized by severe disruption of tissue architecture, edema, a massive mixed immune cell infiltrate, ulceration and muscle thickening. To quantify the histological damage, we used a scoring system modified from a previous study[17]. We found that the overall histological damage of colitis was significantly reduced by the SRE treatment on d 6 and d 7 of the experiment. Together with the reduced MPO activity, our results showed that SRE treatment ameliorated the DSS-induced colitis possibly *via* its anti-inflammatory and protective effect against the colonic tissue damage.

The colonic epithelium, in addition to its absorptive and secretory properties, presents an efficient barrier to commensal flora and pathogens[29,30]. In fact, the secretion of water and electrolytes is one of the most important responses of the mucosa, purging the gut of offending agents and delivering anti-microbial mediators (e.g., antibodies) to the luminal surface[31]. In addition, mucus forms a gel layer covering the mucosal surface, and it has been hypothesized that changes in mucin structure and/or quantity may influence the protective functions of the mucosal surface, and affect the pathogenesis of IBD[32]. However, published data on the electrolyte transport mechanisms in an inflamed colon are inconsistent[33,34]. Some studies have documented the acute effects of immune and inflammatory agents in directly or indirectly stimulating intestinal anion secretion, while others do not support such a notion[35,36]. In most cases, however, disease models of colonic mucosa exhibit reduced ion transport responses to secretory agonists, especially in the setting of chronic inflammation[37-45].

The mechanism underlying the typical hyporesponsiveness of tissues from animal models of colitis has yet to be satisfactorily explained. For example, it has been reported that responsiveness to both Ca^{2+}- and cAMP-dependent secretagogues is reduced in mouse and rat colitis models when compared to normal tissue[37-45]. Similar reduction in secretory responsiveness, as measured by changes in I_{SC} has also been observed in tissue resections from patients with IBD[46,47]. It has been proposed that prolonged hyporesponsiveness to secretagogues is due to the upregulation of inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), resulting in an ongoing synthesis of NO and chronic suppression of epithelial secretory function[41,42]. However, another recent study suggests that it may be related to a disturbance of the enteric nervous system resulting in defective mucosal cAMP production and inhibition of ionic secretion, although the epithelial secretory machinery (e.g., CFTR) appears to be normal[43]. Others suggested that prolonged hyporesponsiveness to secretagogues is due to the disruption of normal cholinergic control of ion secretion[40,48]. Nonetheless, intestinal secretion is an important component of mucosal defense. Reduced secretory responses will compromise the ability of the mucosal defense mechanism to clear bacteria, bacterial products, or antigens away from the epithelium, which may then predispose the colon to inflammation[49]. In this study, the I_{SC} responses of the colonic mucosa to forskolin were suppressed after the induction of colitis. Although the stimulated ion transport activity of DSS-rats treated with SRE was still reduced, they displayed improvement in the secretory responsiveness which may at least partly contribute to the therapeutic effect of SRE.

In summary, our findings indicated that SRE was effective in treating acute DSS-induced ulcerative colitis, as gauged by reduced clinical disease, improved macroscopic and histological damage scores, and enhanced recovery of normal colonic secretory function. The results support further evaluation of the therapeutic potential of SRE for the treatment of IBD.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Professor Woody WY Chan and Professor CH Cho for their technical advice in the performance of histological staining and MPO assay, respectively. We also thank Mr. Wallace CY Yip for his excellent technical help.

COMMENTS

Background

Scutellariae Radix, also known as Huangqin, is the dried root of *Scutellaria*

baicalensis Georgi (Lamiaceae). It is officially listed in the Chinese Pharmacopoeia and is one of the most widely used Chinese herbal medicines for the treatment of bacterial infection of the respiratory and gastrointestinal tract. In Japan and China, *Scutellariae Radix* has been employed for centuries as an important medicine. Although scientific evidence confirming the traditional use of *Scutellariae Radix* as an inflammatory modulator in experimental colitis is now accumulating, the physiological basis and the precise mechanism of action of *Scutellariae Radix* or its individual constituents remain largely unknown.

Research frontiers

Cytokine dysregulation is currently an important focus of both basic and clinical research in IBD, with recent immunologically based therapeutic interventions using highly specific agents demonstrating a promising clinical efficacy. The treatment of steroid-refractory Crohn's Disease with anti-TNF-α (infliximab) is an example of this kind of therapeutic approach. In addition, there is an increasing interest in using TCM as alternative therapy in addition to the conventional therapies that are used to treat IBD. However, there is still a paucity of scientific and clinical data so far to support the use of TCM in colitis patients. Therefore, there are unmet needs for further mechanistic, pharmacological and pharmacokinetic studies to delineate the biological basis underlying the therapeutic effects of TCM. More controlled clinical trials of the potential efficacy and safety of herbal TCM therapies are also required.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The authors showed for the first time that the therapeutic potential of *Scutellariae Radix* extract on experimental colitis may be related to the restoration of ion transport function of the colonic mucosa.

Applications

The results support further evaluation of the therapeutic potential of this herbal extract and its active component(s) for the treatment of IBD.

Terminology

Colonic ion transport: Intestinal fluid secretion is a passive process driven by osmotic forces generated by ion transport. In the colon, the main determinant of a luminally-directed osmotic gradient is the mucosal transport of chloride ions into the lumen. Intestinal secretion is an important component of mucosal defense. Reduced secretory responses will compromise the ability of the mucosal defense mechanism to clear bacteria, bacterial products, or antigens away from the epithelium, which may then predispose the colon to inflammation.

Peer review

This is an interesting paper which shows the anti-inflammatory effect of *Scutellariae Radix* on experimental colitis. It also demonstrates that TCM has a scientific and biological basis for its effectiveness.

REFERENCES

1 **Jiang XL**, Cui HF. An analysis of 10218 ulcerative colitis cases in China. *World J Gastroenterol* 2002; **8**: 158-161
2 **Leong RW**, Lau JY, Sung JJ. The epidemiology and phenotype of Crohn's disease in the Chinese population. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2004; **10**: 646-651
3 **Ouyang Q**, Tandon R, Goh KL, Ooi CJ, Ogata H, Fiocchi C. The emergence of inflammatory bowel disease in the Asian Pacific region. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2005; **21**: 408-413
4 **Leong RW**, Lawrance IC, Ching JY, Cheung CM, Fung SS, Ho JN, Philpott J, Wallace AR, Sung JJ. Knowledge, quality of life, and use of complementary and alternative medicine and therapies in inflammatory bowel disease: a comparison of Chinese and Caucasian patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 2004; **49**: 1672-1676
5 **Lin CC**, Shieh DE. The anti-inflammatory activity of Scutellaria rivularis extracts and its active components, baicalin, baicalein and wogonin. *Am J Chin Med* 1996; **24**: 31-36
6 **Wu JA**, Attele AS, Zhang L, Yuan CS. Anti-HIV activity of medicinal herbs: usage and potential development. *Am J Chin Med* 2001; **29**: 69-81
7 **Ikemoto S**, Sugimura K, Yoshida N, Yasumoto R, Wada S, Yamamoto K, Kishimoto T. Antitumor effects of Scutellariae radix and its components baicalein, baicalin, and wogonin on bladder cancer cell lines. *Urology* 2000; **55**: 951-955
8 **Huang HC**, Wang HR, Hsieh LM. Antiproliferative effect of baicalein, a flavonoid from a Chinese herb, on vascular smooth muscle cell. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1994; **251**: 91-93
9 **Kubo M**, Kimura Y, Odani T, Tani T, Namba K. Studies on Scutellariae radix. Part II: The antibacterial substance. *Planta Med* 1981; **43**: 194-201
10 **Hong T**, Kobayashi T, Song Q, Cyong J. Immunomodulatory action of Oren-gedoku-to on murine colitis model induced by TNBS. *J Traditional Medicines* 1999; **15**: 388-389
11 **Hong T**, Jin G, Kobayashi T, Song Q, Cyong J. Effect of Oren-gedoku-to (Huang-Lian-Jie-Du-Tang) on the murine colitis induced by dextran sulfate sodium. *J Traditional Medicines* 2000; **17**: 66-72
12 **Hong T**, Jin G, Cyong J. Effect of components of Oren-gedoku-to (Huang-Lian-Jie-Du-Tang) on the murine colitis induced by dextran sulfate sodium. *J Traditional Medicines* 2000; **17**: 173-179
13 **Chen ZY**, Su YL, Bi YR, Tsang SY, Huang Y. Effect of baicalein and acetone extract of Scutellaria baicalensis on canola oil oxidation. *JAOCS* 2000; **77**: 73-78
14 **Su YL**, Leung LK, Bi YR, Huang Y, Chen ZY. Antioxidant activity of flavonoids isolated from Scutellariae rehderiana. *JAOCS* 2001; **77**: 807-812
15 **Stucchi AF**, Shofer S, Leeman S, Materne O, Beer E, McClung J, Shebani K, Moore F, O'Brien M, Becker JM. NK-1 antagonist reduces colonic inflammation and oxidative stress in dextran sulfate-induced colitis in rats. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2000; **279**: G1298-G1306
16 **Loher F**, Bauer C, Landauer N, Schmall K, Siegmund B, Lehr HA, Dauer M, Schoenharting M, Endres S, Eigler A. The interleukin-1 beta-converting enzyme inhibitor pralnacasan reduces dextran sulfate sodium-induced murine colitis and T helper 1 T-cell activation. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2004; **308**: 583-590
17 **Siegmund B**, Lehr HA, Fantuzzi G. Leptin: a pivotal mediator of intestinal inflammation in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 2011-2025
18 **Ko WH**, Law VW, Yip WC, Yue GG, Lau CW, Chen ZY, Huang Y. Stimulation of chloride secretion by baicalein in isolated rat distal colon. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **282**: G508-G518
19 **Mullane KM**, Kraemer R, Smith B. Myeloperoxidase activity as a quantitative assessment of neutrophil infiltration into ischemic myocardium. *J Pharmacol Methods* 1985; **14**: 157-167
20 **Sandler RS**, Eisen GM. Epidemiology of Inflammatory Bowel Disease. In: Kirsner JB, editor. Inflammatory Bowel Disease. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Company, 2000; 89-112
21 **Korzenik JR**. Past and current theories of etiology of IBD: toothpaste, worms, and refrigerators. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2005; **39**: S59-S65
22 **Farrell RJ**, Banerjee S, Peppercorn MA. Recent advances in inflammatory bowel disease. *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci* 2001; **38**: 33-108
23 **Farrell RJ**, Peppercorn MA. Ulcerative colitis. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 331-340
24 **Sands BE**. Therapy of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: S68-S82
25 **Langmead L**, Dawson C, Hawkins C, Banna N, Loo S, Rampton DS. Antioxidant effects of herbal therapies used by patients with inflammatory bowel disease: an in vitro study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 197-205
26 **Cao YB**, Zhang JD, Diao YY, Yan L, Wang DJ, Jia XM, Gao PH, Cheng MH, Xu Z, Wang Y, Jiang YY. Effects of Changtai granules, a traditional compound Chinese medicine, on chronic trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid-induced colitis in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 3539-3543
27 **Guo SM**, Tong HB, Bai LS, Yang W. Effect of traditional Chinese medicinal enemas on ulcerative colitis of rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10**: 1914-1917
28 **Liu L**, Wang ZP, Xu CT, Pan BR, Mei QB, Long Y, Liu JY, Zhou SY. Effects of Rheum tanguticum polysaccharide on TNBS -induced colitis and CD4+T cells in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 2284-2288
29 **Mowat AM**. Anatomical basis of tolerance and immunity to

intestinal antigens. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2003; **3**: 331-341
30 **Macdonald TT**, Monteleone G. Immunity, inflammation, and allergy in the gut. *Science* 2005; **307**: 1920-1925
31 **Chang E**. Intestinal Epithelial Function and Response to Mucosal Injury in Inflammatory Bowel Diseases. In: Kirsner JB, editor. Inflammatory Bowel Disease. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Company, 2000; 3-19
32 **Einerhand AW**, Renes IB, Makkink MK, van der Sluis M, Büller HA, Dekker J. Role of mucins in inflammatory bowel disease: important lessons from experimental models. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **14**: 757-765
33 **Hawker PC**, McKay JS, Turnberg LA. Electrolyte transport across colonic mucosa from patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **79**: 508-511
34 **Sandle GI**, Higgs N, Crowe P, Marsh MN, Venkatesan S, Peters TJ. Cellular basis for defective electrolyte transport in inflamed human colon. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **99**: 97-105
35 **Schmitz H**, Barmeyer C, Gitter AH, Wullstein F, Bentzel CJ, Fromm M, Riecken EO, Schulzke JD. Epithelial barrier and transport function of the colon in ulcerative colitis. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2000; **915**: 312-326
36 **Greig E**, Sandle GI. Diarrhea in ulcerative colitis. The role of altered colonic sodium transport. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2000; **915**: 327-332
37 **Burnett AL**, Donowitz M, Marshall FF. Inhibition of transport processes of intestinal segments following augmentation enterocystoplasty in rats. *J Urol* 1996; **156**: 1872-1875
38 **Schulzke JD**, Fromm M, Menge H, Riecken EO. Impaired intestinal sodium and chloride transport in the blind loop syndrome of the rat. *Gastroenterology* 1987; **92**: 693-698
39 **Bell CJ**, Gall DG, Wallace JL. Disruption of colonic electrolyte transport in experimental colitis. *Am J Physiol* 1995; **268**: G622-G630
40 **Sayer B**, Lu J, Green C, Söderholm JD, Akhtar M, McKay DM. Dextran sodium sulphate-induced colitis perturbs muscarinic cholinergic control of colonic epithelial ion transport. *Br J Pharmacol* 2002; **135**: 1794-1800
41 **MacNaughton WK**, Lowe SS, Cushing K. Role of nitric oxide in inflammation-induced suppression of secretion in a mouse model of acute colitis. *Am J Physiol* 1998; **275**: G1353-G1360
42 **Asfaha S**, Bell CJ, Wallace JL, MacNaughton WK. Prolonged colonic epithelial hyporesponsiveness after colitis: role of inducible nitric oxide synthase. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **276**: G703-G710
43 **Sánchez de Medina F**, Pérez R, Martínez-Augustin O, González R, Lorente MD, Gálvez J, Zarzuelo A. Disturbances of colonic ion secretion in inflammation: role of the enteric nervous system and cAMP. *Pflugers Arch* 2002; **444**: 378-388
44 **Kachur JF**, Keshavarzian A, Sundaresan R, Doria M, Walsh R, de las Alas MM, Gaginella TS. Colitis reduces short-circuit current response to inflammatory mediators in rat colonic mucosa. *Inflammation* 1995; **19**: 245-259
45 **Diaz-Granados N**, Howe K, Lu J, McKay DM. Dextran sulfate sodium-induced colonic histopathology, but not altered epithelial ion transport, is reduced by inhibition of phosphodiesterase activity. *Am J Pathol* 2000; **156**: 2169-2177
46 **Hubel KA**, Renquist KS. Ion transport in normal and inflamed human jejunum in vitro. Changes with electric field stimulation and theophylline. *Dig Dis Sci* 1990; **35**: 815-820
47 **Crowe SE**, Luthra GK, Perdue MH. Mast cell mediated ion transport in intestine from patients with and without inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 1997; **41**: 785-792
48 **Green CL**, Ho W, Sharkey KA, McKay DM. Dextran sodium sulfate-induced colitis reveals nicotinic modulation of ion transport via iNOS-derived NO. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **287**: G706-G714
49 **Wood JD**. Neuro-immunophysiology of colon function. *Pharmacology* 1993; **47** Suppl 1: 7-13

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Roberts SE **E- Editor** Wang HF

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5612-5617
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

BASIC RESEARCH

Induction of apoptosis by artemisinin relieving the severity of inflammation in caerulein-induced acute pancreatitis

Ming Zhao, Dong-Bo Xue, Biao Zheng, Wei-Hui Zhang, Shang-Ha Pan, Bei Sun

Ming Zhao, Dong-Bo Xue, Biao Zheng, Wei-Hui Zhang, Bei Sun, Department of General Surgery, First Clinical College of Harbin Medical University, Harbin 150001, Heilongjiang Province, China
Shang-Ha Pan, The Key Laboratory of Hepatic-spleenic Surgery of Heilongjiang Province, Harbin 150001, Heilongjiang Province, China
Supported by the Natural Science Foundation of Heilongjiang Province, China, No. D0227
Correspondence to: Wei-Hui Zhang, Department of General Surgery, First Clinical College, Harbin Medical University, Harbin 150001, Heilongjiang Province, China. zhangweihui626@hotmail.com
Telephone: +86-451-53658828 Fax: +86-451-53658828
Received: April 5, 2007 Revised: August 4, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To observe the apoptosis and oncosis of pancreatic acinar cells and secondary inflammatory reaction in pancreatic tissue from rats with acute pancreatitis (AP), and the influences of artemisinin on them.

METHODS: AP was induced by 4 intraperitoneal injections of caerulein at 1 h intervals. To induce apoptosis, solution of artemisinin (50 mg/kg) was given intraperitoneally 1, 12, 24 and 36 h after the last caerulein injection. Histological examination of impairment of pancreatic tissue and detection of serum amylase were performed to evaluate the severity of acute pancreatitis. Apoptosis and oncosis were detected with acridine orange (AO) and ethylene dibromide (EB) staining. Caspase-3 and myeloperoxidase (MPO) activity were measured by colorimetric assay. Nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) activation was detected by flow cytometry. Macrophage inflammatory protein-1α (MIP-1α) protein was measured by Western blot. Interleukin-1β (IL-1β) mRNA was detected by RT-PCR.

RESULTS: Addition of artemisinin increased the number of apoptotic cells (11.7% ± 1.4% *vs* 6.3% ± 0.7%, $P < 0.05$), while reduced the number of oncotic cells (13.0% ± 2.4% *vs* 17.5% ± 2.2%, $P < 0.05$). The activity of caspase-3 speeded up (1.52 ± 0.21 *vs* 1.03 ± 0.08, $P < 0.05$), the pancreas pathological impairment was relieved (3.0 ± 0.5 *vs* 4.0 ± 0.5, $P < 0.05$) and the level of serum amylase decreased (5642 ± 721 U/dL *vs* 7821 ± 653 U/dL, $P < 0.05$). The activation of NF-κB (29% ± 4.1% *vs* 42% ± 5.8%), MIP-1α protein (3.7 ± 0.5 *vs* 5.8 ± 0.7), MPO (0.52 ± 0.06 U/g *vs* 0.68 ± 0.09 U/g), IL-1β mRNA (1.7 ± 0.3 *vs* 2.4 ± 0.4) in the apoptosis inducing group was obviously decreased ($P < 0.05$).

CONCLUSION: Inducing apoptosis can relieve pathological impairment and inflammatory reaction in AP rats.

Key words: Pancreatitis; Apoptosis; Inflammation mediators; Chemokines; Artemisinin

Zhao M, Xue DB, Zheng B, Zhang WH, Pan SH, Sun B. Induction of apoptosis by artemisinin relieving the severity of inflammation in caerulein-induced acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5612-5617

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5612.asp

INTRODUCTION

Many factors lead to acute pancreatitis (AP). A series of cascade reactions of inflammatory mediators and over-activation of leukocytes are the important causes for systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) and multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS)[1]. Although anti-cytokine therapy is able to relieve the severity of AP, it is difficult to block each pathway due to the complicated network of cytokines[2]. Therefore, knowing how to inhibit the initial inflammatory reaction is the key to the treatment of AP. It was reported that inflammatory reaction is correlated to the death modes of pancreatic acinar cells[3]. If death of pancreatic acinar cells occurs in the mode of apoptosis, the cell membrane is intact and there is no release of inflammatory mediators and pancreatin, the inflammatory reaction may be mild[4]. However, if death of pancreatic acinar cells occurs in the mode of oncosis, various pancreatin and inflammatory mediators may release, thus causing a variety of inflammatory cell aggregations and inducing intense inflammatory reactions[5]. If we can induce apoptosis and reduce oncosis, intense inflammatory reactions may be inhibited.

In this study, apoptosis of pancreatic acinar cells was induced by the apoptosis inductor-artemisinin. Changes in apoptosis, oncosis and secondary inflammatory reaction were observed.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Experimental protocol

Twenty-four male Wistar rats (200 g ± 20 g) were provided by the Animal Research Center of the First Clinical College of Harbin Medical University (Harbin, China), and divided into 3 groups (8 rats in each group): control group, AP group, and artemisinin-treated group (apoptosis inducing group). AP was induced by 4 intraperitoneal injections of caerulein (20 μg/kg, Sigma, USA) at 1 h intervals. To induce apoptosis, solution of artemisinin (2 mg/kg, Huaxin, Sichuan, China) was given intraperitoneally 1, 12, 24 and 36 h after the last caerulein injection. The control rats were only given saline solution. Forty-eight hours after the final injection of caerulein, rats were anaesthetized with sodium pentobarbital (40 mg/kg), and then a laparotomy was performed with the pancreas rapidly removed for further analyses.

Histological examination of pancreatic tissue

Samples of pancreatic tissue were fixed in 20% formaldehyde and processed for paraffin histology. After staining with hematoxylin and eosin (HE), histological grading of interlobular edema, inflammatory infiltration, parenchyma hemorrhage, parenchyma necrosis and vacuolization was valued as previously described[6], then a pathologic score was calculated based on these light microscopic examinations.

Measurement of serum amylase

Serum was collected from the rats for amylase measurement. Amylase level was determined using a commercial chromatometric kit (Jiancheng, Nanjing, China).

Detection of apoptosis and oncosis with acridine orange (AO) and ethylene dibromide (EB) staining

Pancreatic acinar cells were isolated from Wistar rats by two-step collagenase digestion[7] and loaded onto slides with AO (10 μg/mL, Sigma, USA) and EB (10 μg/mL, Sigma, USA) for 10 min. The slides were scanned under confocal laser microscope (Zeiss, Germany) and 500 cells were counted under fluorescent microscope (Nikon, Japan).

Measurement of caspase-3 activity by colorimetric assay

Caspase-3 activity was measured using a colorimetric assay kit (KeyGEN, Nanjing, China) according to the manufacturer's instructions. After isolation by two-step collagenase digestion, pancreatic acinar cells were mixed with 50 μL lysis buffer, the supernatant was mixed with 5 μL caspase substrate and 50 μL reaction buffer, and incubated at 37℃ for 4 h in the dark. Fluorescence intensity of the caspase substrate was measured photometrically at 405 nm.

Detection of NF-κB by flow cytometry

Fresh pancreatic tissues were sheared into pieces of 1.0 mm^3 with scissors, and centrifuged at 200 × *g* for 5 min. Then 10 mL detergent solution containing 1% TritonX-100 (Sigma,USA) was added, and stored in a refrigerator at 4℃ for 18 h, then filtered through 50 μm nylon meshes. For fluorescent labeling, 1 μL RNAase was added into 50 μL nucleus suspension and water-bath at 37℃ for 30 min, then 40 μL NF-κB p65 monoclonal antibody (Santa Cruz, USA) was added and incubated at room temperature for 20 min. The samples were treated with 1 μL FITC-labeled second antibody (Jackson Immuno Research, USA) and incubated at room temperature for another 20 min. After treated with 20 μL propidium iodide (PI, Sigma, USA) for 30 min in a dark room, the samples were analyzed using a FACScan flow cytometer (Becton Dicknson, USA).

Measurement of macrophage inflammatory protein-1α (MIP-1α) by Western blot

MIP-1α was detected by Western blot analysis, total protein extract was separated by 10% SDS/PAGE before it was transferred electrophoretically (100 V, 1 h) to hybond C membrane. The membranes were probed with 10 μL anti-MIP-1α monoclonal antibody (Santa Cruz, USA) in TBS-T (1:500), and the immunocomplexed membranes were re-probed at room temperature for 1 h with horseradish peroxidase-conjugated anti-rabbit secondary antibody (Jackson Immuno Research, USA) in TBS-T (1:500), with 5% blocking reagent. At last, the immunoreactive proteins were visualized using the ECL Western blot analysis system (Amersham, UK).

Chromatometric detection of myeloperoxidase (MPO) activity

The pancreatic tissue was frozen in liquid nitrogen and homogenated. MPO activity was detected with a chromatometric kit (Jianchen, Nanjing, China) following the manufacturer's instructions, and data were expressed as the change in absorbance at 460 nm.

Detection of interleukin-1β (IL-1β) mRNA by semi-quantitive RT-PCR

Total RNA was extracted from pancreatic tissue using Trizol reagent (Invitrogen, USA) and reversely transcriped into cDNA according to the instructions of the kit (Promega, USA). The resulting cDNA was used as a template for subsequent polymerase chain reaction (PCR). The sequences of rat-specific primers for IL-1β (519 bp) are as follows: 5'CCAGGATGAGGACCCAAGCA3' (sense), 5'TCCCGACCATTGCTGTTTCC3' (antisense). Housekeeping gene β-actin (348 bp) was used as a controller, 5'CATCACCATTGGCAATGAGCG3' (sense), 5'CTAGAAGCATTTGCGGTCGGAC3' (antisense). The PCR products were resolved in 1.0% agarose gel for electrophoresis and photographed under ultraviolet transillumination and the intensity of PCR products was measured using a video image analysis system.

Statistical analysis

Data were expressed as mean ± SD. Differences between the groups were tested for significance by one-way analysis of variance (ANOVA), and intergroup comparison was made by Student-Newman-Keuls test. $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

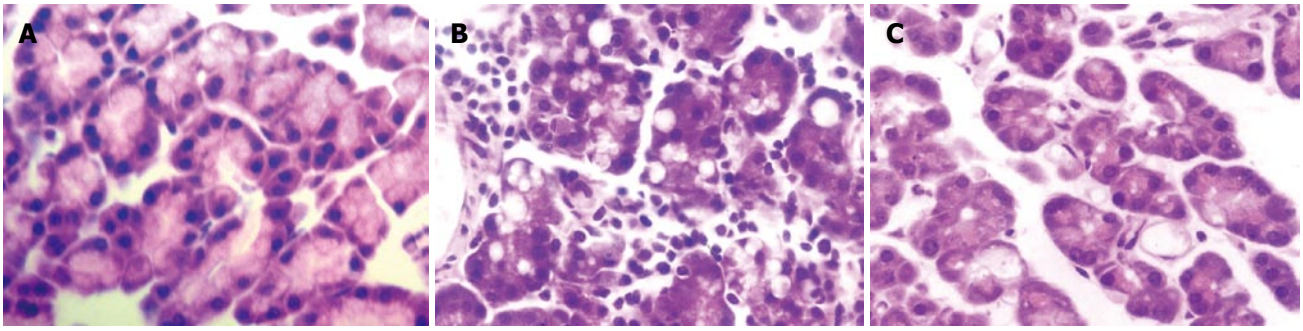


Figure 1 Representative HE-stained pancreatic tissue from the rats (original magnification × 40) in the control group (**A**), AP group (**B**) and artemisinin-treated group (**C**).

Table 1 Detection of cell death pathway and pathologic changes in different groups (mean ± SD, n = 8)

	Pathological score	Amylase (U/dL)	Apoptosis index (%)	Oncosis index (%)	Caspase-3 activity
Control	0.25 ± 0.03	2887 ± 298	1.5 ± 0.3	2.1 ± 0.3	0.35 ± 0.04
AP	4.0 ± 0.5[a]	7821 ± 653[a]	6.3 ± 0.7[a]	1.03 ± 0.08[a]	17.5 ± 2.2[a]
Artemisinin	3.0 ± 0.5[c]	5642 ± 721[c]	11.7 ± 1.4[c]	13.0 ± 2.4[c]	1.52 ± 0.21[c]

AP: Acute pancreatitis. [a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* control group; [c]$P < 0.05$ *vs* AP group.

RESULTS

Histological changes after induction of apoptosis

Pancreatic tissue was normal in the control group with a low pathological score. In the AP group, pancreatic tissue displayed lobular mesenchymal rarefaction, edema and inflammatory cell infiltration. In contrast, in the artemisinin-treated group, edema and inflammatory cell infiltration were significantly relieved compared with the AP group (Figure 1). The pathological score showed alleviated pathological impairment in pancreatic tissue after treated with artemisinin ($P < 0.05$ *vs* the AP group) (Table 1).

Effect of artemisinin on induction of apoptosis and avoidance of oncosis

As shown in Figure 2, the nuclei of normal cells showed normal morphology of green fluorescence, while apoptotic cells showed shrunk, condensed or splitted nuclei (green). EB could be resisted by the intact cytoplasmic membrane of normal and apoptotic cells. EB could penetrate the cytoplasmic membrane of oncotic cells, and stain the nuclei of orange-stained cells. So, the apoptotic index or oncotic index, i.e., the number of apoptotic cells or oncotic cells per 100 cells, could be calculated (Figure 3). The results indicate that only sporadic apoptotic or oncotic cells were observed in the control group, but more in the AP and artemisinin-treated groups. In the AP group, there were less apoptotic cells and more oncotic cells. The number of apoptotic cells increased and the number of oncotic cells decreased significantly in the artemisinin-treated group ($P < 0.05$) (Table 1).

Effect of artemisinin on caspase-3 activity

The activity of caspase-3 in isolated pancreatic acinar cells was low in the control group, and high in the AP group, which was significantly elevated after apoptosis was induced by artemisinin ($P < 0.05$) (Table 1).

Influence of apoptosis on NF-κB activation

Activation of NF-κB in normal pancreatic nuclei was significantly higher in the AP group than in the control group ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 4, Table 2).

Influence of apoptosis on MIP-1α

MIP-1α level was low in the control group and high in the AP group. It was obviously lower in the artemisinin-treated group than in the AP group ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 5, Table 2).

Influence of apoptosis on IL-1β mRNA expression

The expression of IL-1β mRNA was low in the control group and high in the AP group. It was lower in the artemisinin-treated group than in the AP group ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 5, Table 2).

Changes in MPO contents after induction of apoptosis

Since each neutrophil granulocyte contains a certain quantity of MPO, detection of MPO in pancreatic tissue reflects the degree of neutrophil infiltration of the tissue. In our study, the MPO concentration was low in the control group and high in the AP group. However, it was down-regulated after induction of apoptosis ($P < 0.05$) (Table 2).

DISCUSSION

AP characterized not only by pancreas impairment, but also by inflammatory cell infiltration and release of various kinds of inflammatory mediators, can develop into SIRS and MODS in some cases and endanger their life[8,9]. Initiation of inflammatory reaction is related to the death pathway of impaired pancreatic acinar cells[10]. Since the conception of apoptosis was proposed by Kerr in 1972[11], apoptosis has been extensively studied. In recent years, attention has been paid to another cell death pathway-oncosis, and it was gradually realized that oncosis makes no less sense than apoptosis[12]. Oncosis has a feature of cell swelling, and cell membrane integrity is destroyed and DNA is split into non-specific fragments. Finally the cells are dissolved accompanying inflammatory reaction. In some physiological and pathological processes, these two kinds of death pathways exist simultaneously, and may

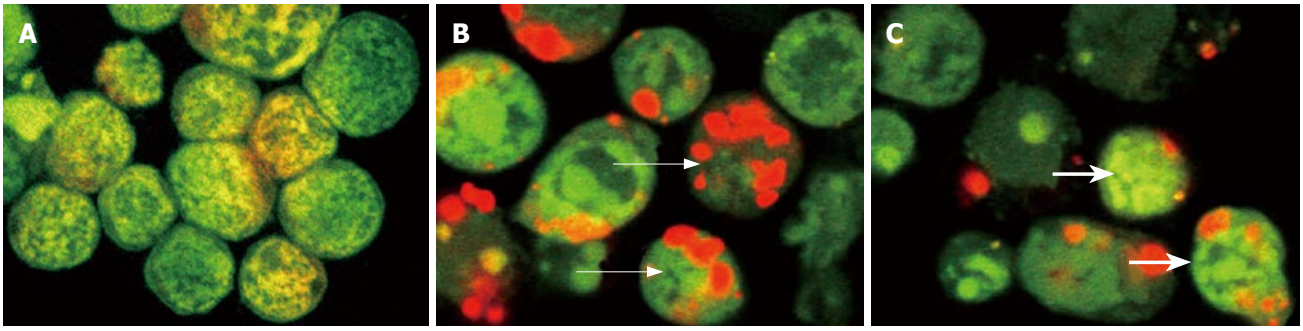


Figure 2 Isolated pancreatic acinar cells stained with AO and EB, and scanned under confocal laser microscope (original magnification × 100) in the control group (**A**), AP group (**B**), and artemisinin-treated group (**C**). Fine arrows indicate oncotic cells, and thick arrows indicate apoptotic cells.

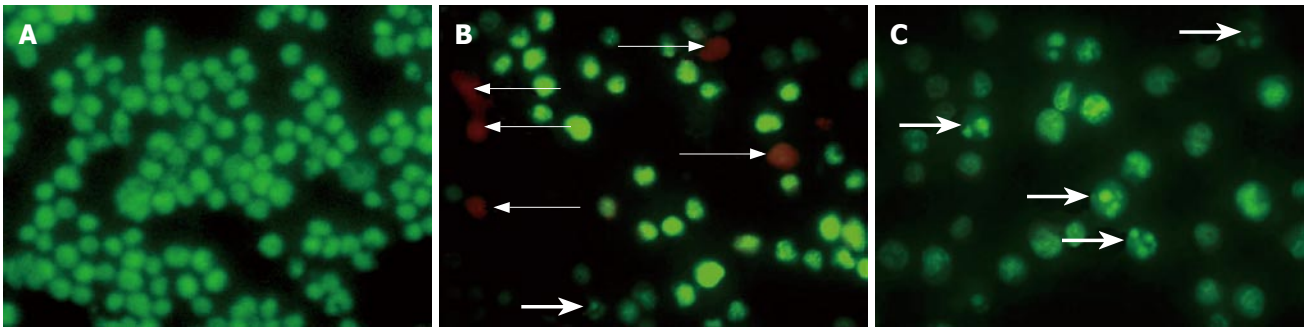


Figure 3 Isolated pancreatic acinar cells stained with AO and EB, and observed under fluorescent microscope (original magnification × 40) in the control group (**A**), AP group (**B**), and artemisinin-treated group (**C**). Fine arrows indicate oncotic cells, and thick arrows indicate apoptotic cells.

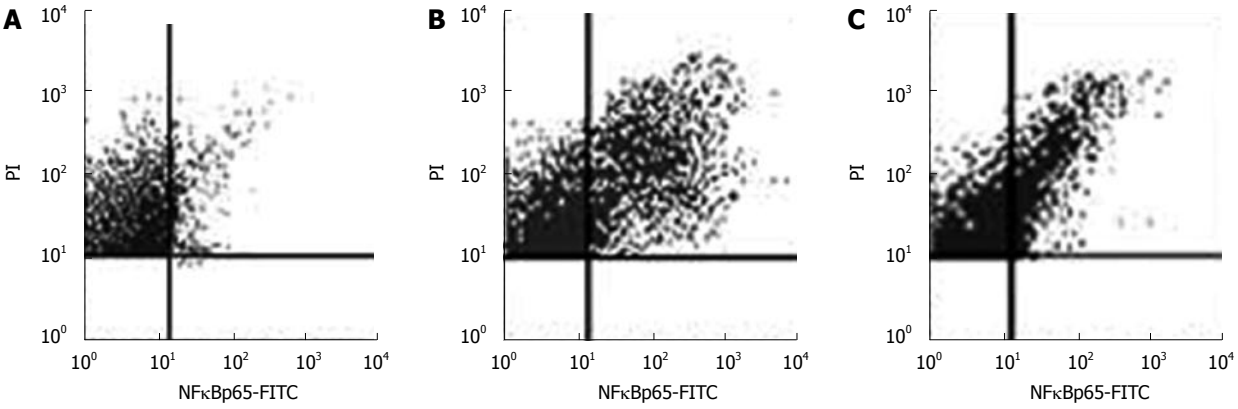


Figure 4 Flow cytometric analysis of NF-κB activation in the control group (**A**), AP group (**B**), and artemisinin-treated group (**C**).

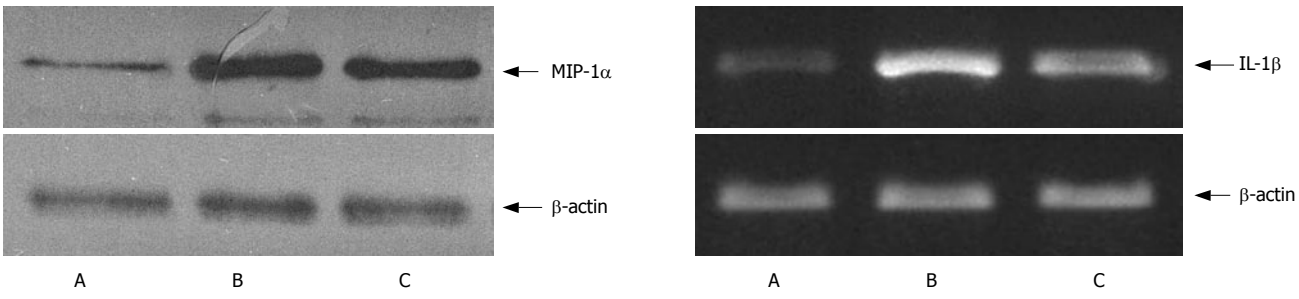


Figure 5 MIP-1α measured by Western blot and IL-1β mRNA detected by RT-PCR in the control group (A), AP group (B), and artemisinin -treated group (C).

Table 2 Inflammatory response of pancreatic tissue in different groups (mean ± SD, n = 8)

	NF-κB activation (%)	MIP-1α protein	MPO (U/g)	IL-1β mRNA
Control	4.7 ± 0.6	0.9 ± 0.1	0.19 ± 0.03	0.5 ± 0.1
AP	42 ± 5.8[a]	5.8 ± 0.7[a]	0.68 ± 0.09[a]	2.4 ± 0.4[a]
Artemisinin	29 ± 4.1[c]	3.7 ± 0.5[c]	0.52 ± 0.06[c]	1.7 ± 0.3[c]

MIP: macrophage inflammatory protein; MPO: myeloperoxidase. [a]P < 0.05 *vs* control group; [c]P < 0.05 *vs* AP group.

interconvert to each other under certain conditions[13]. Oncotic cells may release much more entocytes (including digestive enzyme and inflammatory active medium). It not only destroys the local tissue, but also activates mononuclear cells, leading to SIRS. However, apoptosis may not cause secondary inflammation. During AP, the patient has his or her own self-regulating mechanism. Under certain conditions, the apoptotic signal conduction pathway can be initiated, and more apoptosis will be induced and harmful effects of oncosis may be relieved. However, if AP develops quickly or the patients' self-regulation is in disorder, the apoptosis signal conduction pathway cannot be initiated in time, causing predominant oncosis, leading to aggravation of the disease. This has been proved by Kaiser *et al*[14], who found that when apoptosis is inhibited by cycloheximide, AP obviously aggravates. However, Bhatia *et al*[15] induced apoptosis during their experiment, resulting in the relief of AP. It was reported that one of the therapeutic mechanisms of somatostatin analogue, the most effective drug for AP, is to induce apoptosis of impaired pancreatic acinar cells[16]. Whether AP can be controlled by inducing apoptosis of pancreatic acinar cells has been extensively studied.

Artemisinin is an important active component of traditional Chinese medicine which can induce apoptosis[17,18]. Hahm *et al*[19] found that apoptotic index is elevated but pathological changes in AP rats treated with DA-9610 (an extract from Artemisia Asiatica). In this study, artemisinin was used as an apoptosis inductor. After artemisinin was added into pancreatic acinar cells stimulated by caerulein, apoptosis and oncosis were detected with AO and EB staining, the number of apoptotic cells increased, but the number of oncotic cells decreased. Caspase-3 is a key molecule in the process of apoptosis. Generally, the precursor of caspase-3 in cells is incompetent. However, if it is activated, it can cleave important structural and functional proteins inside the cells and cause chromosome condensation, DNA fragmentation, nuclear membrane rupture, *etc*, finally resulting in apoptosis. The presence of activated caspase-3 indicates that apoptosis is at the irreversible stage[20]. Nam *et al*[21] found that artemisinin can induce apoptosis by up-regulating caspase-3. Our study also showed that the activity of caspase-3 in pancreatic acinar cells was obviously elevated after artemisinin was added, indicating that artemisinin may promote apoptosis. We examined the pancreatic tissue with HE staining and found that after induction of apoptosis, infiltration of inflammatory cells decreased and the pancreas impairment was relieved. Based on this understanding, we observed the degree of inflammatory reaction after induction of apoptosis.

We detected transcription factor-NF-κB which regulates synthesis of many inflammatory mediators and cytokines[22]. NF-κB is a protein that regulates gene transcription, participates in regulating many inflammatory factors, and evokes immune and inflammatory reactions[23]. NF-κB plays a key role in the development of AP[24]. In our study, activation of NF-κB in the apoptosis inducing group was obviously decreased, compared with the AP group, indicating that activation of NF-κB can be decreased by inducing apoptosis and reducing oncosis. The conserved sequence of MIP-1α combined with NF-κB exists in its promoter region[25], suggests that MIP-1α may be one of the downstream targets regulated by NF-κB. MIP-1α was detected by Western blot assay in this study, proving that if apoptosis is induced, MIP-1α can be inhibited. MIP-1α is a CC-type chemotatic factor and plays an important role in recruiting mononuclear cells and lymphocytes[26]. Just as the "over-activation of leucocyte theory" proposed by Rindernech *et al*[27], AP aggravates because inflammatory cells are over-activated, and these activated cells such as granulocytes and macrophages, play a great role in the development of AP. Therefore, MPO (the marker of neutrophils) and IL-1β (the inflammatory factors generated mainly by mononuclear macrophages)[28] were detected in this study, indicating that MPO is obviously decreased in pancreas tissue after induction of apoptosis, reducing neutrophil recruition and infiltration to pancreas tissue. IL-1β is a kind of proinflammatory cytokines mainly generated by macrophages in pancreas when AP occurs. IL-1β can activate neutrophils, up-regulate the expression of surface adhesion molecules of lymphocyte and endotheliocytes[29]. Fink *et al*[30] reported that release of pancreatic amylase and necrosis of pancreas tissue are obviously decreased by blocking IL-1 receptor, demonstrating that IL-1 is essential to inflammation and development of AP. Our study proved that after induction of apoptosis, the level of IL-1β mRNA in pancreas tissue was low, indicating that infiltration and activation of macrophages are decreased and inflammatory reaction is inhibited after induction of apoptosis.

In conclusion, infiltration of inflammatory cells and generation of inflammatory cytokines can be decreased by inducing apoptosis and reducing oncosis of pancreatic acinar cells.

COMMENTS

Background

One of the greatest findings in AP is the initiation of cytokine network in AP patients that promotes occurrence of SIRS and MODS. Efforts have been made to alleviate pathological changes in AP by inhibiting the cytokine network. Since cytokine network is so complex that it is impossible to block all the pathways, it may pave a new way for the treatment of AP to obstruct the cytokine chain reactions. It was reported that the cytokine network can be obstructed by inducing apoptosis, decreasing oncosis and release of endocellular enzyme, suggesting that any drugs regulating apoptosis may be used in the treatment of AP.

Research frontiers

It has been verified that AP worsens when apoptosis of pancreatic acinar cells is

inhibited by cycloheximide, and that AP is alleviated when apoptosis is induced. It was reported that the severity of AP is associated with the degree of oncosis. Hahm *et al* found that there is an elevated apoptotic index but extenuated pathological changes in AP rats after treated with DA-9610 (an extract from Artemisia Asiatica), suggesting that artemisinin can regulate cell death and can be used in the treatment of AP.

Innovations and breakthroughs

When the concept of apoptosis was first put forward by Kerr in 1972, a lot of studies have been performed with it. In recent years, more and more attention has been paid to oncosis, showing that the importance of oncosis is no less than that of apoptosis. In traditional Chinese medicine, some important prescriptions have been successfully applied in AP treatment, and one of the mechanisms is to suppress inflammatory response and induce apoptosis. Artemisinin is an important active component of traditional Chinese medicine which can induce apoptosis. In this study, we observed the regulatory effect of artemisinin on apoptosis and oncosis of pancreatic acinar cells and its therapeutic effect on AP.

Applications

Artemisinin can induce apoptosis and reduce oncosis of pancreatic acinar cells at the onset of AP, thus repressing the intense inflammatory reactions, such as SIRS and MODS. Therefore, there is a bright prospect for artemisinin in the treatment of AP.

Terminology

Oncosis, or cellular swelling, is a pathological process of cell death, in which the completeness of cell membrane is destructed and DNA is split to non-specific fragments, ultimately leading to cell lysis complicated by inflammatory reactions.

Peer review

The effect of artemisinin on acute pancreatitis was analyzed. The data presented are interesting.

REFERENCES

1 **Chan YC**, Leung PS. Acute pancreatitis: animal models and recent advances in basic research. *Pancreas* 2007; **34**: 1-14
2 **Zhang XP**, Lin Q, Zhou YF. Progress of study on the relationship between mediators of inflammation and apoptosis in acute pancreatitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2007; **52**: 1199-1205
3 **Malka D**, Vasseur S, Bödeker H, Ortiz EM, Dusetti NJ, Verrando P, Dagorn JC, Iovanna JL. Tumor necrosis factor alpha triggers antiapoptotic mechanisms in rat pancreatic cells through pancreatitis-associated protein I activation. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 816-828
4 **McHugh P**, Turina M. Apoptosis and necrosis: a review for surgeons. *Surg Infect* (Larchmt) 2006; **7**: 53-68
5 **Criddle DN**, Gerasimenko JV, Baumgartner HK, Jaffar M, Voronina S, Sutton R, Petersen OH, Gerasimenko OV. Calcium signalling and pancreatic cell death: apoptosis or necrosis? *Cell Death Differ* 2007; **14**: 1285-1294
6 **Grewal HP**, Mohey el Din A, Gaber L, Kotb M, Gaber AO. Amelioration of the physiologic and biochemical changes of acute pancreatitis using an anti-TNF-alpha polyclonal antibody. *Am J Surg* 1994; **167**: 214-218; discussion 218-219
7 **Zhang H**, Li YY, Wang SN, Zhang KH, Wu XZ. Effects of lipopolysaccharides on calcium homeostasis in isolated pancreatic acinar cells of rat. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2003; **24**: 790-795
8 **Bhatia M**, Wong FL, Cao Y, Lau HY, Huang J, Puneet P, Chevali L. Pathophysiology of acute pancreatitis. *Pancreatology* 2005; **5**: 132-144
9 **Cuzzocrea S**, Nocentini G, Di Paola R, Agostini M, Mazzon E, Ronchetti S, Crisafulli C, Esposito E, Caputi AP, Riccardi C. Proinflammatory role of glucocorticoid-induced TNF receptor-related gene in acute lung inflammation. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 631-641
10 **Andersson R**, Wang X. Patterns of pancreatic cell death: apoptosis versus oncosis. *Pancreas* 1998; **17**: 281-288
11 **Schattenberg JM**, Galle PR, Schuchmann M. Apoptosis in liver disease. *Liver Int* 2006; **26**: 904-911
12 **Jugdutt BI**, Idikio HA. Apoptosis and oncosis in acute coronary syndromes: assessment and implications. *Mol Cell Biochem* 2005; **270**: 177-200
13 **Van Cruchten S**, Van Den Broeck W. Morphological and biochemical aspects of apoptosis, oncosis and necrosis. *Anat Histol Embryol* 2002; **31**: 214-223
14 **Kaiser AM**, Saluja AK, Lu L, Yamanaka K, Yamaguchi Y, Steer ML. Effects of cycloheximide on pancreatic endonuclease activity, apoptosis, and severity of acute pancreatitis. *Am J Physiol* 1996; **271**: C982-C993
15 **Bhatia M**, Wallig MA, Hofbauer B, Lee HS, Frossard JL, Steer ML, Saluja AK. Induction of apoptosis in pancreatic acinar cells reduces the severity of acute pancreatitis. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1998; **246**: 476-483
16 **Yuan Y**, Gong Z, Lou K, Tu S, Di Z, Xu J. Effects and mechanisms of somatostatin analogs on apoptosis of pancreatic acinar cells in acute pancreatitis in mice. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **16**: 683-688
17 **Mercer AE**, Maggs JL, Sun XM, Cohen GM, Chadwick J, O'Neill PM, Park BK. Evidence for the involvement of carbon-centered radicals in the induction of apoptotic cell death by artemisinin compounds. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 9372-9382
18 **Efferth T**. Molecular pharmacology and pharmacogenomics of artemisinin and its derivatives in cancer cells. *Curr Drug Targets* 2006; **7**: 407-421
19 **Hahm KB**, Kim JH, You BM, Kim YS, Cho SW, Yim H, Ahn BO, Kim WB. Induction of apoptosis with an extract of Artemisia asiatica attenuates the severity of cerulein-induced pancreatitis in rats. *Pancreas* 1998; **17**: 153-157
20 **Yasuda T**, Takeyama Y, Ueda T, Shinzeki M, Kishi S, Sawa H, Nakajima T, Kuroda Y. Protective effect of caspase inhibitor on intestinal integrity in experimental severe acute pancreatitis. *J Surg Res* 2007; **138**: 300-307
21 **Nam W**, Tak J, Ryu JK, Jung M, Yook JI, Kim HJ, Cha IH. Effects of artemisinin and its derivatives on growth inhibition and apoptosis of oral cancer cells. *Head Neck* 2007; **29**: 335-340
22 **Radisky DC**, Bissell MJ. NF-kappaB links oestrogen receptor signalling and EMT. *Nat Cell Biol* 2007; **9**: 361-363
23 **Shi C**, Zhao X, Wang X, Andersson R. Role of nuclear factor-kappaB, reactive oxygen species and cellular signaling in the early phase of acute pancreatitis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2005; **40**: 103-108
24 **Folch-Puy E**, Granell S, Iovanna JL, Barthet M, Closa D. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma agonist reduces the severity of post-ERCP pancreatitis in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 6458-6463
25 **Monaco C**, Andreakos E, Kiriakidis S, Mauri C, Bicknell C, Foxwell B, Cheshire N, Paleolog E, Feldmann M. Canonical pathway of nuclear factor kappa B activation selectively regulates proinflammatory and prothrombotic responses in human atherosclerosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 5634-5639
26 **Brueckmann M**, Hoffmann U, Dvortsak E, Lang S, Kaden JJ, Borggrefe M, Haase KK. Drotrecogin alfa (activated) inhibits NF-kappa B activation and MIP-1-alpha release from isolated mononuclear cells of patients with severe sepsis. *Inflamm Res* 2004; **53**: 528-533
27 **Rinderknecht H**. Fatal pancreatitis, a consequence of excessive leukocyte stimulation? *Int J Pancreatol* 1988; **3**: 105-112
28 **Fairweather D**, Frisancho-Kiss S, Njoku DB, Nyland JF, Kaya Z, Yusung SA, Davis SE, Frisancho JA, Barrett MA, Rose NR. Complement receptor 1 and 2 deficiency increases coxsackievirus B3-induced myocarditis, dilated cardiomyopathy, and heart failure by increasing macrophages, IL-1beta, and immune complex deposition in the heart. *J Immunol* 2006; **176**: 3516-3524
29 **van Griensven M**, Probst C, Müller K, Hoevel P, Pape HC. Leukocyte-endothelial interactions via ICAM-1 are detrimental in polymicrobial sepsis. *Shock* 2006; **25**: 254-259
30 **Fink G**, Yang J, Carter G, Norman J. Acute pancreatitis-induced enzyme release and necrosis are attenuated by IL-1 antagonism through an indirect mechanism. *J Surg Res* 1997; **67**: 94-97

S- Editor Zhu LH **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Liu Y

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5618-5628
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

CLINICAL RESEARCH

Rational prescription of drugs within similar therapeutic or structural class for gastrointestinal disease treatment: Drug metabolism and its related interactions

Quan Zhou, Xiao-Feng Yan, Zhong-Miao Zhang, Wen-Sheng Pan, Su Zeng

Quan Zhou, Xiao-Feng Yan, Zhong-Miao Zhang, Department of Clinical Pharmacology & Clinical Pharmacy, the 2nd Affiliated Hospital, School of Medicine, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310009, Zhejiang Province, China
Wen-Sheng Pan, Department of Gastroenterology, the 2nd Affiliated Hospital, School of Medicine, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310009, Zhejiang Province, China
Su Zeng, Department of Pharmaceutical Analysis & Drug Metabolism, College of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310058, Zhejiang Province, China
Supported by the Scientific Research Project of Zhejiang Provincial Bureau of Education, No. 20061449, No. 20010535
Correspondence to: Quan Zhou, Associate Professor, Department of Clinical Pharmacology & Clinical Pharmacy, the 2nd Affiliated Hospital, School of Medicine, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310009, Zhejiang Province, China. zhouquan142602@zju.edu.cn
Telephone: +86-571-87783891 Fax: +86-571-87213864
Received: January 11, 2007 Revised: April 16, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To review and summarize drug metabolism and its related interactions in prescribing drugs within the similar therapeutic or structural class for gastrointestinal disease treatment so as to promote rational use of medicines in clinical practice.

METHODS: Relevant literature was identified by performing MEDLINE/Pubmed searches covering the period from 1988 to 2006.

RESULTS: Seven classes of drugs were chosen, including gastric proton pump inhibitors, histamine H_2-receptor antagonists, benzamide-type gastroprokinetic agents, selective 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists, fluoroquinolones, macrolide antibiotics and azole antifungals. They showed significant differences in metabolic profile (i.e., the fraction of drug metabolized by cytochrome P450 (CYP), CYP reaction phenotype, impact of CYP genotype on interindividual pharmacokinetics variability and CYP-mediated drug-drug interaction potential). Many events of severe adverse drug reactions and treatment failures were closely related to the ignorance of the above issues.

CONCLUSION: Clinicians should acquaint themselves with what kind of drug has less interpatient variability in clearance and whether to perform CYP genotyping prior to initiation of therapy. The relevant CYP knowledge helps clinicians to enhance the management of patients with gastrointestinal disease who may require treatment with polytherapeutic regimens.

Key words: Cytochrome P450; Pharmacokinetics; Drug metabolism; Genotype; Polymorphism; Drug interaction; Pharmacotherapy; Gastrointestinal diseases

Zhou Q, Yan XF, Zhang ZM, Pan WS, Zeng S. Rational prescription of drugs within the similar therapeutic or structural class for gastrointestinal disease treatment: Drug metabolism and its related interactions. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5618-5628

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5618.asp

INTRODUCTION

More and more drugs within the similar therapeutic or structural class are emerging and it is essential to compare the alternative drug choices according to their efficacy, safety, suitability and cost. However, irrational prescription is common in many countries. Drug metabolism and its related interactions are most prone to be ignored in clinical practice. Actually, metabolism by cytochrome P450 (CYP) represents an important clearance mechanism for the majority of drugs, thus affecting their oral bioavailability, duration and intensity of pharmacological action[1]. The metabolic profile of a drug depicts its amount metabolized by CYP, CYP reaction phenotype, impact of CYP genotype on interindividual pharmacokinetics (PK) variability and CYP-mediated drug-drug interaction potential. It is closely related to the three-dimensional chemical structure of drug and may exhibit significant differences among drugs within the similar therapeutic or structural class, although the efficacy of these similar drugs do not show sharp differences at the dose used clinically[2,3]. The voluntary market withdrawal of cerivastatin by Bayer and withdrawal of medications such as terfenadine, astemizole, cisapride, and mibefradil from the market by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) further demonstrate the relevance of metabolic drug-drug interaction profile. Although the FDA has published guidance for *in vitro* and *in vivo* drug metabolism/drug interaction

studies in the drug development process[4,5], systematic summary is not yet available on metabolic differences in market products within the similar therapeutic or structural class. This review focuses on seven classes of drugs for gastrointestinal diseases treatment and aims to help clinicians realize what kind of drug has less interpatient variability in clearance, whether to perform CYP genotyping prior to the initiation of therapy, and how to enhance the management of patients on polytherapy regimens.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Seven classes of drugs for gastrointestinal diseases treatment were chosen, including gastric proton pump inhibitors, histamine H_2-receptor antagonists, benzamide-type gastroprokinetic agents, selective 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists, fluoroquinolones, macrolide antibiotics and azole antifungals. Relevant literature, focusing on drug metabolism, metabolic interaction potentials and clinical events of adverse drug reactions and treatment failures caused by drug-drug interaction, was identified by performing MEDLINE/Pubmed searches covering the period from 1988 to 2006.

RESULTS

Gastric proton pump inhibitors

Proton pump inhibitors (or "PPI"s) are a group of drugs widely prescribed for the treatment of acid-related diseases such as peptic ulcer, gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug induced gastropathy and Zollinger-Ellison syndrome. Currently used PPIs in clinical practice are as follows: omeprazole, lansoprazole, pantoprazole, rabeprazole and esomeprazole. All are benzimidazole derivatives (Figure 1). Schematic depiction of metabolic differences among four PPIs is described in Figure 2.

Lansoprazole, omeprazole and pantoprazole are all primarily metabolized by CYP2C19, an isoenzyme that exhibits genetic polymorphism with 15%-20% of Asian populations being poor/slow metabolizers, whereas the prevalence is much lower (3%-5%) among Caucasians and Blacks[6]. Their PK behaviors are all dependent on CYP2C19 genotype. $AUC_{po(PM)}/AUC_{po(EM)}$, the ratio of parent drug area-under-the concentration *vs* time curve after oral dosing (AUC_{po}) derived from poor metabolizers (PM) and extensive metabolizers (EM), is 7.4, 3.7 and 6.0 for omeprazole, lansoprazole and pantoprazole, respectively[7]. CYP2C19 polymorphism is also a major predictor of treatment failures in patients receiving lansoprazole-, omeprazole- or pantoprazole based polytherapy for eradication of *H pylori*[8].

Omeprazole has also been known as a potent inhibitor of CYP2C19, and may cause pharmacokinetic interactions with other CYP2C19 substrates such as diazepam, phenytoin and moclobemide[9-11]. Both lansoprazole and omeprazole also induce CYP1A2 *in vitro*[12]. Omeprazole can reduce clozapine plasma concentrations by 40%[13]. However, concomitant intake of omeprazole or lansoprazole at high therapeutic doses does not affect the PK behavior of theophylline and caffeine[14,15]. The underlying explanation of the discrepancy may be that inducibility of CYP1A2 by

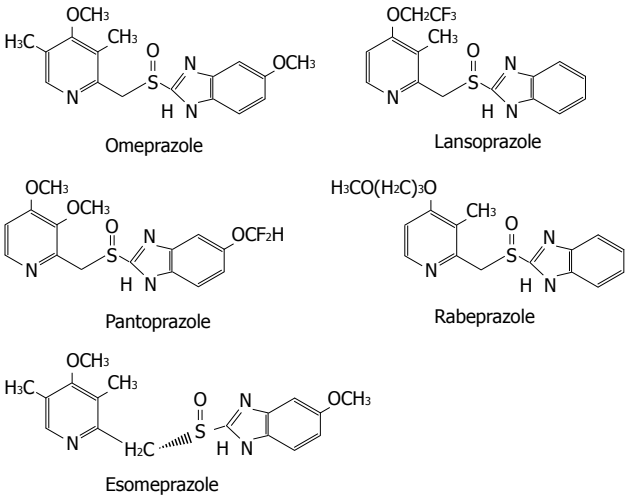


Figure 1 Chemical structures of five PPIs.

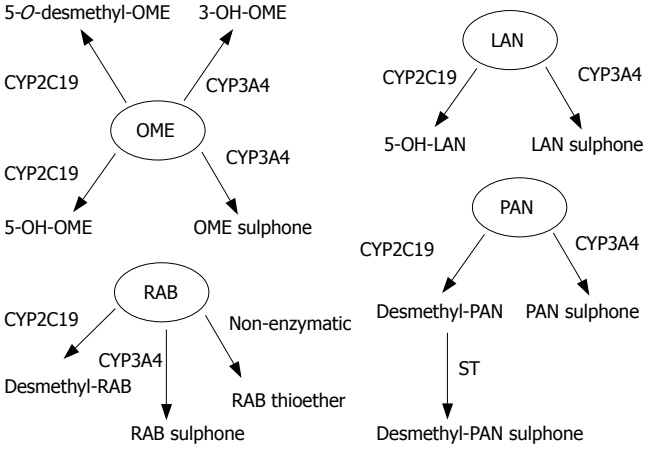


Figure 2 Metabolic differences between four PPIs (OME: omeprazole; LAN: lansoprazole; RAB: rabeprazole; PAN: Pantoprazole). Arrow thickness represents relative contribution to metabolism.

omeprazole *in vivo* is related to the genetic polymorphism of CYP1A2, dose and course of treatment[16-18]. Potential interactions between omeprazole or lansoprazole and CYP1A2 substrates with narrow therapeutic windows should be kept in mind in long-term concurrent therapy. Among these three old PPIs, pantoprazole has by far the lowest potential for interactions[19].

Rabeprazole, although metabolized partially by CYP2C19, is primarily metabolized by nonenzymatic reduction and hence genotype and modifiers of CYP2C19 have less impacts on its PK ($AUC_{po(PM)}/AUC_{po(EM)} \leqslant 1.8$) and clinical efficacy[20].

Esomeprazole is the S-enantiomer of omeprazole. Its metabolism involves CYP2C19, but to a lesser extent than omeprazole (Figure 3). Its PK is less dependent on CYP2C19 genotype ($AUC_{po(PM)}/AUC_{po(EM)}$ approximate 3.0) and hence, it has less interpatient variability in clearance than omeprazole. Moreover, esomeprazole is cleared more slowly *in vivo* and has an improved oral bioavailability, leading to the greater inhibition of gastric acid secretion compared to omeprazole[21,22].

The enantiomers of pantoprazole are differentially

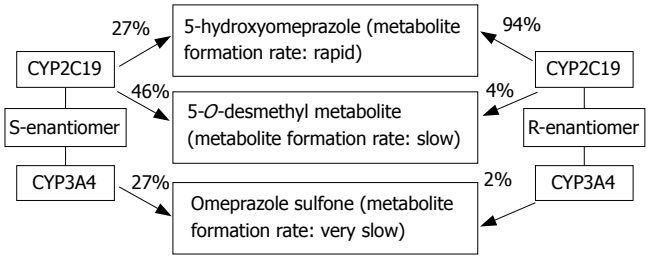


Figure 3 Stereoselective metabolism of omprazole in human.

affected by CYP2C19 genotype, such that the $AUC_{po(PM)}$/$AUC_{po(EM)}$ ratio is 11 and 2.5 for the R-(+)- and S-(−)-enantiomers, respectively[23]. Comparative clinical trial of S-(−)-pantoprazole *vs* racemic pantoprazole in the treatment of GERD has been carried out by Pai *et al*[24]. S-(−)-pantoprazole (20 mg) was found to be more effective than racemic pantoprazole (40 mg) in improving symptoms. Consequently, the use of S-(−)-pantoprazole offers both pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic advantages.

Many recent cost-effectiveness analyses have provided an economic basis to employ CYP2C19 genotyping prior to initiating omeprazole-, lansoprazole- or pantoprazole-based polytherapy. However, pharmacogenetic tests may be unnecessary if rabeprazole or esomeprazole based therapy are considered.

Histamine H_2-receptor antagonists

Histamine H_2-receptor antagonists are clinically applied for the treatment of gastritis, gastric and duodenal ulcers[25]. Six H_2-receptor antagonists are currently on the market: cimetidine, ranitidine, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine and roxatidine acetate. Their chemical structures are depicted in Figure 4.

Martinez *et al*[26] compared the inhibitory effect of the H_2-receptor antagonists on the enzymes activities in human liver microsomes. The results were as follows: CYP1A2: cimetidine > ranitidine = ebrotidine; CYP2D6: cimetidine > ranitidine = ebrotidine; CYP3A4: ebrotidine > cimetidine > ranitidine. However, it should be cautiously considered when these *in vitro* data were extrapolated to *in vivo* situations. Firstly, cimetidine only selectively inhibits *in vivo* activities of CYP3A4 and CYP2D6[27]. For example, coadministered cimetidine increased the degree of beta-blockade of timolol (CYP2D6 substrate) ophthalmic solution and the maximum plasma concentrations of CYP3A4 substrates (e.g., midazolam and saquinavir) and disopyramide (CYP3A4 and CYP2D6 substrate)[26,28-30]. Coadministration of cimetidine 400 mg twice a day with saquinavir soft gel 1200 mg twice a day resulted in a significant increase in saquinavir $AUC_{0\text{-}24}$ (120%) and C_{max} (179%). From this view, coadministered cimetidine may be employed as a new pharmacoenhancer for boosting saquinavir for HIV infections. Beneficial effects of the inhibitory activity of cimetidine toward CYP are also used for the prevention of hepatotoxicity induced by overdoses with paracetamol, a substrate of several CYP isoenzymes which activate the drug by oxidation to the hepatotoxic metabolite N-acetyl-p-benzoquinone imine.

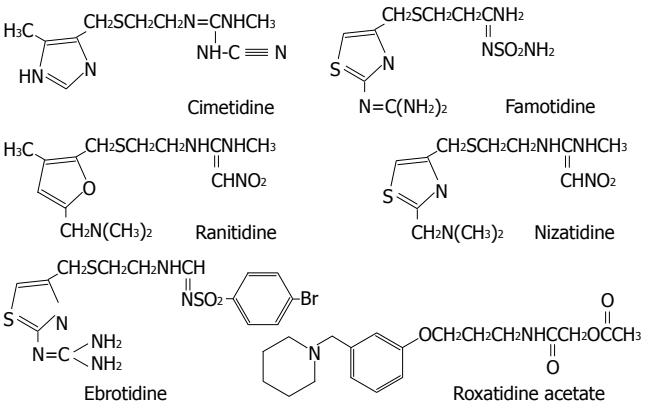


Figure 4 Chemical structures of six H_2-receptor antagonists.

Secondly, inhibition of CYP1A2 activity in humans by cimetidine has not been observed with clinical significance. In concurrent therapy of warfarin, disposition of the less potent R-warfarin (CYP1A2 substrate) was impaired. However, this interaction is likely to be of minimal clinical significance in most patients[31]. The interaction between cimetidine and theophylline was reported inconsistently. Degree of inhibition (absolute change in theophylline clearance) was closely related to route of administration, dosage, the basal theophylline clearance and smoking history[32-35]. Significant pharmacokinetic interaction between cimetidine and theophylline was not observed with low-dose cimetidine (200 mg twice daily), but with 800 mg cimetidine given once daily. Smokers or individuals with higher basal theophylline clearances had greater degree and percent of inhibition than non-smokers or individuals with lower basal theophylline clearances. It suggests that disposition of CYP1A2 substrates may still be impaired in smokers or other individuals with high CYP1A2 activities when coadministered with cimetidine. Thirdly, ebrotidine has no inhibitory effect on CYP3A4 *in vivo*, which is confirmed by lack of metabolic interaction with midazolam[26]. Overall, in contrast to cimetidine, the effects of the other H_2-receptor antagonists on CYP *in vivo* seem to have little clinical significance.

Benzamide-type gastroprokinetic agents

Benzamide-type gastroprokinetic agents (e.g., metoclopramide, cisapride, mosapride, itopride, renzapride and domperidone) are the mainstay of therapy in disorders of gastric motility such as non-ulcer dyspepsia (NUD), GERD, gastritis, diabetic gastroparesis and functional dyspepsia. Their chemical structures are depicted in Figure 5.

Among these gastroprokinetic agents, metoclopramide is predominantly metabolized by CYP2D6, thus its elimination being slow in PMs of CYP2D6 or in patients taking inhibitors of this isoform. Metoclopramide-induced acute dystonic reactions were more frequently observed in patients carrying homozygous CYP2D6 polymorphisms[36]. Meanwhile, it is also a potent inhibitor of CYP2D6 at therapeutically relevant concentrations and markedly inhibits *in vitro* codeine bioactivation[37,38]. Human pharmacokinetic interactions between metoclopramide and CYP2D6 substrates have not yet been documented.

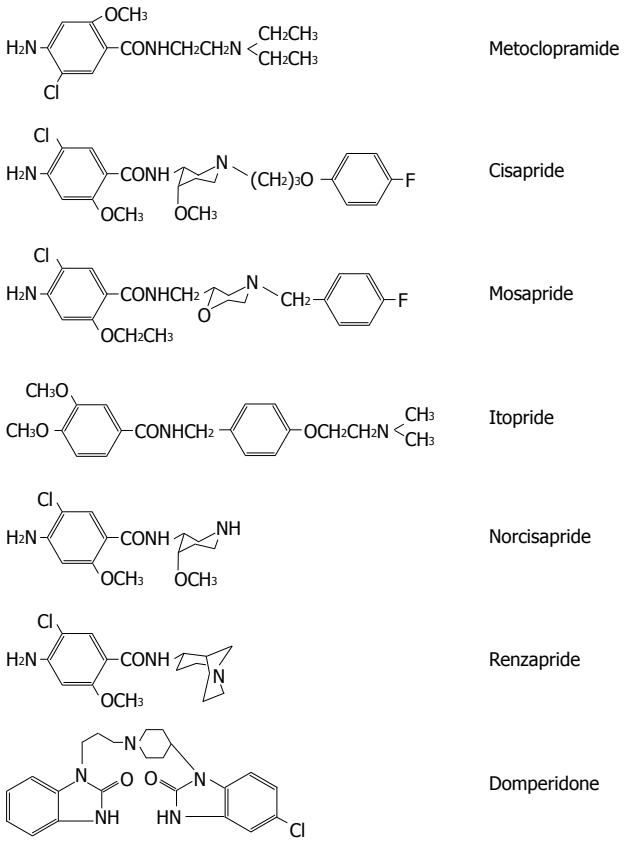


Figure 5 Chemical structures of seven benzamide-type gastroprokinetic agents.

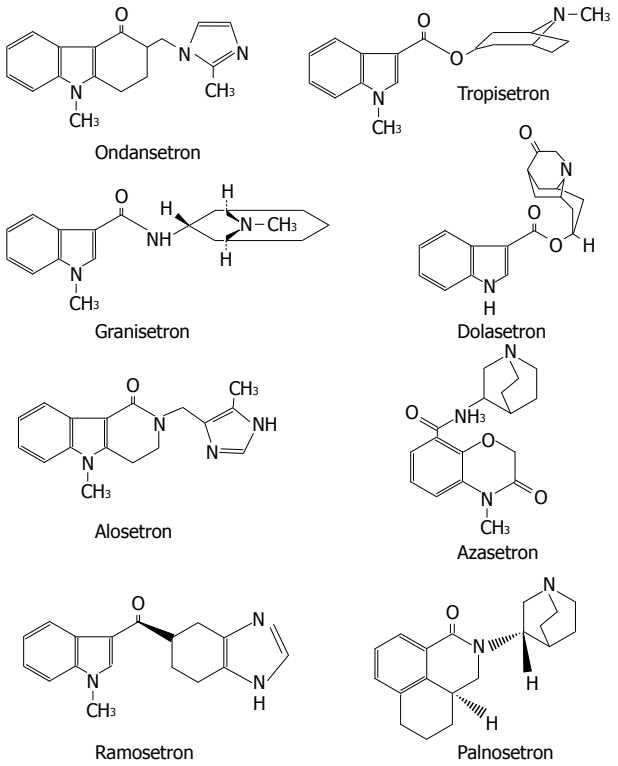


Figure 6 Chemical structures of eight setrons.

Cisapride, mosapride and domperidone, are all predominantly metabolized by CYP3A4. Their dispositions could be strongly impaired by CYP3A4 inhibitors, causing greatly elevated plasma concentrations of parent drugs[39-41]. Among these prokinetic agents, only interactions of cisapride and CYP3A4 inhibitors induce severe clinical adverse events like QT interval prolongation and/or torsades de pointe, which is responsible for the withdrawal of cisapride by FDA. However, cisapride is still on the market in some countries following restriction imposed on its usage. The most important step that can be taken to minimize the risk of cisapride-associated arrhythmias is to avoid the concomitant administration of contraindicated drugs, particularly the macrolide antibiotics (e.g., erythromycin, clarithromycin) and the azole antifungals, (e.g., itraconazole and ketoconazole).

Itopride is primarily metabolized by flavin-containing monooxygenase and its PK is unlikely influenced by CYP3A4 inhibitors[39]. Norcisapride is a major active meta-bolite of cisapride *via* CYP3A4-mediated N-dealkylation. It possesses approximately 15% of the prokinetic activity of cisapride, but has no apparent effect on myocardial conduction[42]. Compared with cisapride, norcisapride elimination does not depend on CYP, and so norcisapride does not interact with azoles or macrolides. Janssen Pharmaceutica has licensed Sepracor's patent on (+) -norcisapride, and its clinical trials are undergoing. This new compound along with mosapride, domperidone and itopride are potentially safer alternatives to cisapride in the concurrent therapy of gastroprokinetic agents with potent CYP3A4 inhibitors.

Renzapride is not metabolized by CYP. It is excreted *via* the renal route primarily unchanged. Thus, its disposition is unsusceptible to CYP modulators and it does not interfere with CYP-mediated metabolism of other drugs[43]. It is currently in clinical development for constipation-predominant irritable bowel syndrome.

Selective 5-HT$_3$ receptor antagonists

The selective 5-HT$_3$-receptor antagonists or "setrons", including ondansetron, dolasetron, tropisetron, granisetron, alosetron, azasetron, palonosetron and ramosetron (Figure 6) represent a class of antiemetics that are currently used for chemotherapy- and radiotherapy-induced, or postoperative nausea and vomiting. However, these setrons have different metabolic profiles.

Ondansetron is cleared by multiple CYP forms in humans, with no single CYP form dominating the overall metabolism. Therefore, its PK lacks bimodality and seems unchanged when ondansetron is used concomitantly with specific CYP isoenzyme inhibitors[44].

Dolasetron is rapidly reduced by carbonyl reductase to its major active metabolite hydrodolasetron, which is eliminated by multiple routes, including renal excretion and metabolism mainly by glucuronidation and hydroxylation[45]. Hence, dolasetron appears to be insusceptible to clinically significant metabolic interactions posed by drugs commonly used in chemotherapy or surgery.

Tropisetron metabolism is almost exclusively CYP2D6-dependent and the metabolites are not pharmacologically active, thus the efficacy of antiemetic treatment with tropisetron largely depends on CYP2D6 genotype. The dose of tropisetron has to be patient-tailored according to CYP2D6 genotype[46,47].

Granisetron is unique because it is not metabolized *via*

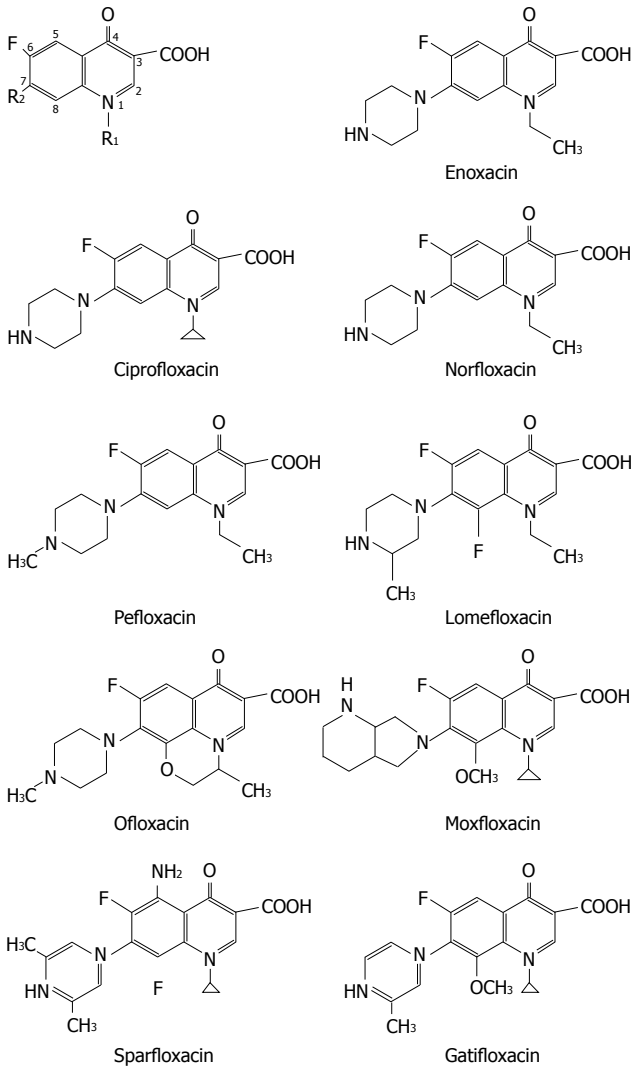


Figure 7 Chemical structures of nine fluoroquinolones.

CYP2D6. Instead, it is metabolized *via* CYP3A4, which is not subject to significant genetic polymorphism and variation in patient response. Moreover, carriers of the duplication of the CYP2D6 allele predicting ultrarapid metabolizer status had less frequent vomiting episodes in subjects receiving granisetron than patients receiving tropisetron. Use of granisetron would obviate the need for CYP2D6 genotyping and may lead to improved prophylaxis of postoperative nausea and vomiting[48-50].

Alosetron is extensively metabolized in humans. *In vivo* data suggest that CYP1A2 plays a prominent role in alosetron metabolism[51,52]. In a pharmacokinetic study, 40 healthy female subjects received fluvoxamine (a known strong inhibitor of CYP1A2) in escalating doses from 50 to 200 mg per day for 16 d, with coadministration of alosetron 1 mg on the last day. Fluvoxamine increased mean alosetron AUC by approximately 6-fold and prolonged the half-life by approximately 3-fold. Thus, concomitant administration of alosetron and strong inhibitor of CYP1A2 is contraindicated. Otherwise, dose-related side effects of alosetron such as constipation may occur more frequently[53].

Azasetron is mainly excreted in urine as the unmetabolized form (approximately 60%-70%), which is different from the fact that other setrons undergo extensive metabolism[54]. *In vitro* data suggest that azasetron does not cause clinically significant CYP-mediated drug interactions.

Palonosetron is metabolized in the liver (approximately 50%). The two primary metabolites, N-oxide-palonosetron and 6-(S)-hydroxy-palonosetron, are essentially inactive. CYP2D6 is the major enzyme of palonosetron metabolism. Clinical pharmacokinetic parameters were not significantly different between PMs and EMs of CYP2D6[55-57]. As for ramosetron, *in vitro* data with human liver microsomes showed its minimal potential to cause clinically important CYP-mediated drug interactions[58].

Fluoroquinolones

Fluoroquinolones are good choices in treatment of intestinal infections caused by sensitive bacterias. Meanwhile, fluoroquinolones-based polytherapy regimens are also used for *H pylori* infection in some occasions, especially after treatment failure in initial *H pylori* eradication[59-63].

The chemical structures of nine fluoroquinolones are listed in Figure 7. They have different CYP-mediated interaction potentials. Enoxacin, ciprofloxacin, norfloxacin and to a lesser extent pefloxacin all have inhibitory effects on metabolism of CYP1A2 substrates such as warfarin, tacrine, clozapine, tizanidine and theophylline. Ofloxacin, levofloxacin, sparfloxacin, lomexacin, gatifloxacin, sparfloxacin, lomefloxacin and moxifloxacin, are less prone to inhibit CYP1A2 and thus are alternative fluoroquinolones to patients receiving concurrent therapy of CYP1A2 substrate with narrow therapeutic window.

Moreover, ciprofloxacin and norfloxacin significantly depressed CYP3A4 in human microsomes[64]. Many case reports indicated their inhibitory effects on CYP3A4 in humans[65-69]. Clinicians should be wary of coadministration of norfloxacin or ciprofloxacin with CYP3A4 substrates with narrow therapeutic window. Table 1 lists the metabolic drug interactions related to fluoroquinolones with clinical relevance.

Macrolide antibiotics

Macrolide antibiotics are usually included in polytherapy regimen for treatment of *H pylori* gastritis[76-80]. In addition, erythromycin, clarithromycin and azithromycin all exhibit prokinetic effects and may be used in the management of gastroparesis[81-84]. For example, erythromycin therapy is effective in the treatment of patients with gastroparesis, in whom metoclopramide or domperidone was ineffective.

Macrolides can be classified into 3 groups based on the propensity of these compounds to interfere with CYP3A4[85-87]. The first group (e.g., troleandomycin, erythromycin and clarithromycin) are potent mechanism-based CYP3A4 inhibitors. Because mechanism based inhibition is an irreversible inhibition where a covalent bond is formed between a metabolite and the active site of the enzyme, destroying the enzyme's activity, so the first group of macrolides could produce drug interactions with clinical relevance. The second group (e.g., flurithromycin, midecamycin, josamycin and roxithromycin) form complexes to a lesser extent and rarely produce drug interactions. The

Table 1 Metabolic drug interactions of fluoroquinolones with clinical relevance

Polytherapy regimen	Clinical consequence	Ref
Ciprofloxacin + tizanidine	Oral ciprofloxacin (500 mg twice daily for 3 d) increased AUC (0-infinity) of tizanidine by 10-fold and Cmax by 7-fold and dangerously potentiates its hypotensive and sedative effects, mainly by inhibiting CYP1A2. Care should be exercised when tizanidine is used concomitantly with ciprofloxacin.	70
Ciprofloxacin + clozapine	Ciprofloxacin (250 mg twice daily for 7 d) can moderately increase serum concentrations of clozapine and N-desmethylclozapine in patients with schizophrenia. A probable mechanism of interaction is an inhibition of CYP1A2 by ciprofloxacin.	71
Ciprofloxacin + theophylline	The interaction between oral ciprofloxacin (500 mg twice daily for 60 h) and theophylline can be clinically significant. Inter-individual variability in the magnitude of interaction can be attributed to inter-individual differences in the level of CYP1A2 expression.	72
Ciprofloxacin + olanzapine	Ciprofloxacin treatment (250 mg twice daily for 3 d) doubled olanzapine concentrations in one patient through the inhibition of CYP1A2.	73
Ciprofloxacin + sildenafil	Ciprofloxacin significantly increased sildenafil bioavailability (above 2-fold) in healthy volunteers, mainly by CYP3A4 inhibition. Dose adjustment of sildenafil is thus necessary.	65
Ciprofloxacin + methadone	Ciprofloxacin inhibited metabolism of methadone *via* CYP1A2 and CYP3A4, and caused profound sedation, confusion, and respiratory depression	66
Ciprofloxacin + cyclosporine	Ciprofloxacin and cyclosporine may be used together safely at the recommended dosage. However, case reports have suggested a possible pharmacokinetic interaction, e.g., ciprofloxacin substantially increased cyclosporine blood levels in a patient with pure red blood cell aplasia. However, levofloxacin therapy (500 mg/d Ⅳ) did not interfere with cyclosporine blood levels and thus it could be a therapeutic alternative.	67, 68
Enoxacin + fluvoxamine	Enoxacin (200 mg/d for 11 d) significantly increased the plasma concentrations at 2, 3 h and the Cmax of fluvoxamine in healthy volunteers. Sleepiness produced by fluvoxamine increased when coadministered with enoxacin.	74
Enoxacin + theophylline	A multidose regimen of enoxacin significantly slowed the clearance of theophylline and elevated theophylline concentrations in serum. The careful monitoring of serum theophylline level and modification of theophylline dosage in patients receiving enoxacin and theophylline were recommended.	75
Norfloxacin + cyclosporine	In pediatric patients undergoing renal transplantation norfloxacin impaired cyclosporine disposition by inhibition of CYP3A4, resulting in cyclosporine dose reduction from 7.4 mg/kg per day to 4.5 mg/kg per day.	69

last group (e.g., azithromycin, dirithromycin and spiramycin) does not inhibit CYP3A4 and are unable to modify the PK behaviors of other compounds.

Metz *et al*[88] reported a potentially significant pharmacokinetic drug interaction between clarithromycin and carbamazepine in two patients with long-standing epilepsy who received omeprazole-clarithromycin therapy for *H pylori* gastritis. In both cases, clarithromycin therapy was temporally related to an increase in serum carbamazepine levels, which returned to the therapeutic range following cessation of clarithromycin therapy. If possible, erythromycin and clarithromycin should be avoided in patients taking CYP3A4 substrates such as atorvastatin, simvastatin, rifabutin, midazolam, cyclosporin, cisapride, pimozide, disopyramide, astemizole, nifedipine and carbamazepine. Azithromycin may be an alternative[89-92]. If clinical judgment suggests erythromycin and clarithromycin should be used, it is necessary to adjust dosage of CYP3A4 substrates with narrow therapeutic window (e.g., decrease the dosage of carbamazepine by 30%-50%), monitor the serum drug levels closely, and warn the patient about the signs and symptoms of toxicity.

Moreover, both erythromycin and clarithromycin are also potent inhibitors of P-glycoprotein and can significantly interfere with the PK behaviors of P-glycoprotein substrate such as digoxin. For example, a case of a clarithromycin-associated digoxin toxicity in a patient with chronic atrial fibrillation and *H pylori* infection was reported by Gooderham *et al*[93].

Azole antifungals

Azole antifungals (i.e., ketoconazole, itraconazole, fluconazole and voriconazole) may be used in treatment for fungus infections in digestive tracts. Their chemical structures are illustrated in Figure 8.

Ketoconazole is extensively metabolized into several inactive metabolites in the liver and the metabolites primarily excreted in bile[94]. Itraconazole is metabolized predominately by CYP3A4. Renal excretion of the parent drug is less than 0.03% of the dose[95]. Fluconazole is mainly excreted in urine as the unmetabolized form (approximately 80%). Accordingly, renal function is the major determinant of fluconazole PK[96]. The concurrent therapy of CYP3A4 inducers (e.g., rifampin and rifabutin) with itraconazole or ketoconazole results in poor antifungal response, thus their coadministrations are not recommended. However, fluconazole PK is less affected by CYP3A4 inducers[97], so fluconazole may be as an alternative for patients receiving comedicated CYP3A4 inducers.

Voriconazole is extensively metabolized by CYP2C19, CYP2C9 and CYP3A4. The major metabolite of voriconazole is the N-oxide, which has negligible antifungal activity. Inducers or inhibitors of these isoenzymes may increase or decrease voriconazole plasma concentrations. Coadministration of voriconazole with rifampicin, carbamazepine and phenobarbital is contraindicated. Allelic polymorphisms of CYP2C19 have been shown to be the most important determinants of the clearance of voriconazole, resulting in two phenotypes: PMs and EMs (both homozygous and heterozygous). Homozygous EMs have a two-fold lower exposure than heterozygous EMs and four-fold lower drug exposure than PMs[98-100]. Coadministration of a potent CYP3A4 inhibitor leads to a higher and prolonged exposure with voriconazole that might increase the risk of ADRs on a short-term

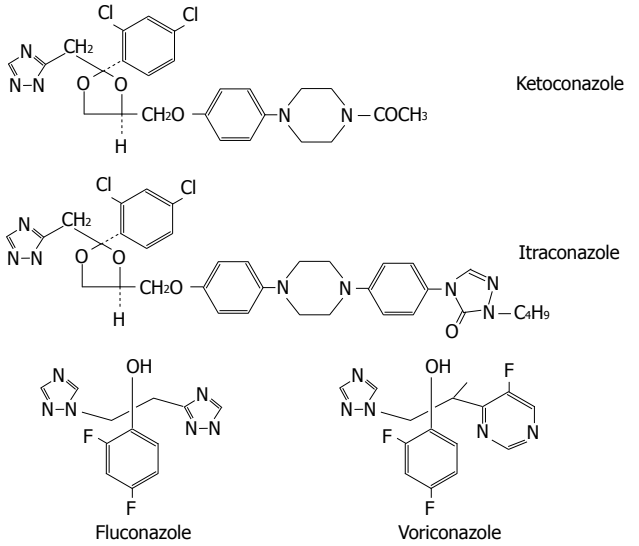


Figure 8 Chemical structures of four azole antifungals.

basis, particularly in CYP2C19 PM patients[101]. Thus, it is necessary to implement CYP2C19 genotyping prior to initiation of voriconazole therapy or therapeutic drug monitoring in the course of treatment.

Ketoconazole and itraconazole are potent inhibitors of CYP3A4. Coadministration with CYP3A4 substrates can cause clinically significant drug interactions, some of which can be life-threatening. Cisapride, oral midazolam, pimozide, quinidine, triazolam, levacetylmethadol, statins metabolized by CYP3A4 (i.e., lovastatin, simvastatin and atorvastatin), ergot alkaloids metabolized by CYP3A4 (i.e., dihydroergotamine, ergometrine, ergotamine and methylergometrine) are contraindicated with ketoconazole and itraconazole.

The potency of fluconazole as a CYP3A4 inhibitor is much lower and thus its clinical interactions with CYP3A4 substrates are of less magnitude. Doses of less than 200 mg/d are not associated with significant CYP3A4-mediated interactions. So fluconazole ($\leqslant$ 200 mg/d) is a relatively safe alternative azole antifungal when coadministered with statins metabolised by CYP3A4[102]. However, it is a potent inhibitor of CYP2C9. Coadministration of fluconazole with CYP2C9 substrates such as phenytoin, warfarin, fluvastatin and losartan leads to clinically significant drug interactions, whereas concurrent therapy of itraconazole or ketoconazole has minimal effect on PK of CYP2C9 substrates[103,104].

Voriconazole inhibits the activities of CYP2C19, CYP2C9 and CYP3A4. Thus, there is a potential for voriconazole to increase the plasma levels of substances metabolized by these CYPs. Coadministration of voriconazole with CYP3A4 substrates (e.g., terfenadine, astemizole, cisapride, quinidine and sirolimus) is contraindicated. When initiating voriconazole in patients already receiving cyclosporine or tacrolimus, it is recommended that the maintenance dosage of two immunosuppressive agents should be adjusted and that their level be carefully monitored. If patients receiving CYP2C9 substrates (e.g., warfarin, phenytoin or sulphonylureas) are treated simultaneously with voriconazole, pharmacotherapy monitoring and dosage adjustment for these drugs should be implemented accordingly.

DISCUSSION

The relationship between chemical structure and metabolic profile has been described in the above summary on seven classes of drugs for gastrointestinal diseases treatment. The underlying molecular mechanism of interactions between drug and metabolizing enzymes is complex and it determines whether the drug is a substrate or inhibitor of the specific enzyme and how far it influences the enzyme activity.

Comparative molecular field analysis (CoMFA) modelling can reveal the key molecular characteristics of CYP inhibitors. For example, both electrostatic and steric interactions were found to account for the differences in the potencies of drugs to inhibit CYP2B6. The differences in inhibitory effects of H_2-receptor antagonists on CYP enzymes may be attributed to the different ability of substituent to bind to the heme iron in CYP[105]. Cimetidine carries both the imidazole and the cyano groups which strongly bind to the heme iron and are responsible for its prominent interaction potential. In comparison to cimetidine, ranitidine has the following structural characteristics: (1) the imidazole ring is substituted with a furane ring, and (2) the side chain cyano group is substituted with a nitro group. Famotidine, nizatidine and ebrotidine all possess a thiazole nucleus instead of the imidazole ring, and the cyano-group in the side chain is substituted by aminosulfonyl- or nitro group. The affinity of binding with CYP isoenzymes is in the following order: imidazole ring (cimetidine), furane ring (ranitidine), thiazole ring (famotidine, nizatidine and ebrotidine). Roxatidine carries no imidazole group in its chemical structure, so it also has a weak inhibitory effect on CYPs.

The relationship between chemical structure of fluoroquinolone and its interaction magnitude has been determined[106, 107]. Molecular modeling studies showed that it is possible to explain the potency of the quinolones to inhibit CYP1A2 on a molecular level. The keto group, the carboxylate group, and the core nitrogen at position 1 are likely to be the most important groups for binding to the active site of CYP1A2, because of the molecular electrostatic potential in these regions. Fluoroquinolones carrying an alkylated piperazinyl moiety at the position 7 (e.g., ofloxacin, levofloxacin, sparfloxacin, lomexacin and gatifloxacin) or a bulky substituent at the position 8 (e.g., sparfloxacin, lomefloxacin, gatifloxacin and moxifloxacin), are less prone to inhibit CYP1A2 than those without corresponding substituents.

The type of CYP metabolism and degree to which an azole antifungal is metabolized are governed by a number of factors including the physiochemical properties of the drug (lipophilicity) and its PK characteristics. Because ketoconazole and itraconazole are highly lipophilic, their clearance is heavily dependent upon CYP-mediated metabolism[108]. Fluconazole, on the other hand, is relatively less lipophilic and requires less CYP-mediated

metabolism at low dosages (< 200 mg/day). Ketoconazole carries an imidazole ring, whereas itraconazole, fluconazole and voriconazole contain triazole rings. The four azole antifungals are strongly binding to hepatic microsome CYP enzymes in a Type Ⅱ manner (i.e., involving the direct ligation of an azole nitrogen with the iron atom of the haem group in the CYP enzyme), which resulted in the broad-spectrum inhibition of multiple CYP isoforms, although the relative potencies towards the various isoforms vary from drug to drug[109].

Generally, if some type of CYP isoenzyme is the most important determinants of the clearance of a drug, metabolic drug interactions can be anticipated when the drug is coadministered with inducers or inhibitors of this isoenzyme. If this drug has a relative narrow therapeutic window, drug-drug interaction may be of clinical relevance. Morever, obvious inter-individual clinical outcome may be observed in patients if a CYP isoenzyme (the determinant of the clearance of a drug) exhibts polymorphism. Under all these situations in clinical practice, clinicians and pharmcists should show abilities in medication therapy management. Careful observations are needed in using new drugs in view of few clinical experiences.

In conclusions, the metabolic profile includes the fraction of drug metabolized by CYP, CYP reaction phenotype, impact of CYP genotype on interindividual PK variability and CYP-mediated drug-drug interaction potential. Significant differences may be observed with the metabolic profiles of medications for gastrointestinal disease treatment even if they belong to the same therapeutic or structural class. Many events of severe ADRs and treatment failures were closely related to the ignorance of this respect. Clinicians should acquaint themselves with what kind of drug has less interpatient variability in clearance and whether to perform CYP genotyping prior to initiation of therapy. The relevant CYP knowledge also helps clinicians enhance the management of patients on polytherapy regimens, i.e., better anticipate or avoid a drug interaction, choose an alternative agent with lower interaction potential, and perform pharmacotherapy monitoring (e.g., monitoring clinical symptoms and alterations in laboratory values) and dosage adjustment accordingly when concurrent therapy can not be avoided.

CONMENTS

Background

Metabolism by cytochrome P450 (CYP) represents an important clearance mechanism for the majority of drugs, thus affecting their oral bioavailability, duration and intensity of pharmacological action. The metabolic profile of a drug depicts its amount metabolized by CYP, the CYP reaction phenotype, impact of the CYP genotype on interindividual pharmacokinetics variability and CYP-mediated drug-drug interaction potential. It is closely related to the three-dimensional chemical structure of drug and may exhibit significant differences among drugs within the similar therapeutic or structural class, although the efficacy of these similar drugs do not show sharp differences at the dose used clinically. Many events of severe adverse drug reactions and treatment failures are attributed to the ignorance of above issues. In order to promote rational drug use in clinical practice, it is essential to let clinicians know what kind of drug has less interpatient variability in clearance, whether to perform CYP genotyping prior to therapy and how to enhance the management of patients on polytherapy regimens from the perspective of drug metabolism.

Research frontiers

Food and Drug Administration (FDA) published guidance for *in vitro* and *in vivo* drug metabolism/drug interaction studies in the drug development process in 1999. Withdrawals of medications such as terfenadine, astemizole, cisapride, and mibefradil from the market by FDA demonstrate the relevance of metabolic drug-drug interaction profile. Some scientists tried to describe the three-dimensional quantitative structure activity relationships (QSARs) within substrates, inducers and inhibitors of CYP in recent years. There are also sporadic reports on metabolic differences in market products within the similar structural class.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This article is the first systematic summary on metabolic differences in market drug products within the similar therapeutic or structural class for gastrointestinal disease treatment.

Applications

The significance of this article is: (1) it helps doctors realize what kind of drug for gastrointestinal disease treatment has less interpatient variability in clearance and whether to perform CYP genotyping prior to therapy; (2) help doctors enhance management of patients on polytherapy regimens. Doctors will learn to better anticipate or avoid a drug interaction, choose an alternative agent with lower interaction potential, perform pharmacotherapy monitoring and adjust dosage accordingly when concurrent therapy cannot be avoided; and (3) help doctors attach equal importance to medicines for other disease treatment, and finally promote rational drug use in clinical practice.

Terminology

Drug metabolism: the process by which the drug is chemically converted in the body to a metabolite, usually through specialized enzymatic systems. Its rate is an important determinant of the duration and intensity of the pharmacological action of drugs. Cytochrome P450: the most important element of oxidative metabolism of a large number of endogenous compounds (e.g., steroids) and xenobiotics (e.g., drugs). CYP is the standard abbreviation for mammalian cytochrome P450. CYP reaction phenotype: the relative contribution of the CYP isoforms to the metabolic pathways. CYP genotyping: the process of determining the CYP genotype of an individual by molecular biology techniques. It can be used to prospectively identify individuals at risk for adverse drug reactions or therapeutic failure due to altered drug metabolism. $AUC_{po(PM)}/AUC_{po(EM)}$: the ratio of parent drug area-under-the concentration *vs*. time curve after oral dosing (AUC_{po}) derived from poor metabolizers (PM) and extensive metabolizers (EM).

Peer reviews

The review by Zhou *et al* summarizes current literature on seven classes of drugs used in the treatment of gastrointestinal diseases with respect to the clearance of these substances. It is highly interesting and may help physicians to choose an equivalent drug or drug combination in clinical practice.

REFERENCES

1 **Ansede JH**, Thakker DR. High-throughput screening for stability and inhibitory activity of compounds toward cytochrome P450-mediated metabolism. *J Pharm Sci* 2004; **93**: 239-255

2 **Lewis DF**, Modi S, Dickins M. Quantitative structure-activity relationships (QSARs) within substrates of human cytochromes P450 involved in drug metabolism. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact* 2001; **18**: 221-242

3 **Lewis DF**, Modi S, Dickins M. Structure-activity relationship for human cytochrome P450 substrates and inhibitors. *Drug Metab Rev* 2002; **34**: 69-82

4 **FDA Guidance for industry drug metabolism/drug interaction studies in the drug development process: studies in vitro.** April 1997. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/cder/guidance/clin3.pdf

5 **FDA Guidance for Industry In Vivo Drug Metabolism/Drug Interaction Studies -Study Design, Data Analysis, and Recommendations for Dosing and Labeling**. November 1999. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/cber/gdlns/metabol.htm

6 **McColl KE**, Kennerley P. Proton pump inhibitors--differences

emerge in hepatic metabolism. *Dig Liver Dis* 2002; **34**: 461-467
7 **Rodrigues AD**, Rushmore TH. Cytochrome P450 pharmacogenetics in drug development: in vitro studies and clinical consequences. *Curr Drug Metab* 2002; **3**: 289-309
8 **Schwab M**, Schaeffeler E, Klotz U, Treiber G. CYP2C19 polymorphism is a major predictor of treatment failure in white patients by use of lansoprazole-based quadruple therapy for eradication of Helicobacter pylori. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **76**: 201-209
9 **Andersson T**, Cederberg C, Edvardsson G, Heggelund A, Lundborg P. Effect of omeprazole treatment on diazepam plasma levels in slow versus normal rapid metabolizers of omeprazole. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1990; **47**: 79-85
10 **Ko JW**, Sukhova N, Thacker D, Chen P, Flockhart DA. Evaluation of omeprazole and lansoprazole as inhibitors of cytochrome P450 isoforms. *Drug Metab Dispos* 1997; **25**: 853-862
11 **Yu KS**, Yim DS, Cho JY, Park SS, Park JY, Lee KH, Jang IJ, Yi SY, Bae KS, Shin SG. Effect of omeprazole on the pharmacokinetics of moclobemide according to the genetic polymorphism of CYP2C19. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **69**: 266-273
12 **Curi-Pedrosa R**, Daujat M, Pichard L, Ourlin JC, Clair P, Gervot L, Lesca P, Domergue J, Joyeux H, Fourtanier G. Omeprazole and lansoprazole are mixed inducers of CYP1A and CYP3A in human hepatocytes in primary culture. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 1994; **269**: 384-392
13 **Frick A,** Kopitz J, Bergemann N. Omeprazole reduces clozapine plasma concentrations. A case report. *Pharmacopsychiatry* 2003; **36**: 121-123
14 **Dilger K**, Zheng Z, Klotz U. Lack of drug interaction between omeprazole, lansoprazole, pantoprazole and theophylline. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 1999; **48**: 438-444
15 **Rizzo N**, Padoin C, Palombo S, Scherrmann JM, Girre C. Omeprazole and lansoprazole are not inducers of cytochrome P4501A2 under conventional therapeutic conditions. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 1996; **49**: 491-495
16 **Han XM**, Ouyang DS, Chen XP, Shu Y, Jiang CH, Tan ZR, Zhou HH. Inducibility of CYP1A2 by omeprazole in vivo related to the genetic polymorphism of CYP1A2. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2002; **54**: 540-543
17 **Sinués B**, Fanlo A, Bernal ML, Val M, Mayayo E. Omeprazole treatment: genotoxicity biomarkers, and potential to induce CYP1A2 activity in humans. *Hum Exp Toxicol* 2004; **23**: 107-113
18 **Nousbaum JB**, Berthou F, Carlhant D, Riche C, Robaszkiewicz M, Gouerou H. Four-week treatment with omeprazole increases the metabolism of caffeine. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1994; **89**: 371-375
19 **Meyer UA**. Metabolic interactions of the proton-pump inhibitors lansoprazole, omeprazole and pantoprazole with other drugs. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1996; **8** Suppl 1: S21-S25
20 **Hu YM**, Mei Q, Xu XH, Hu XP, Hu NZ, Xu JM. Pharmacodynamic and kinetic effect of rabeprazole on serum gastrin level in relation to CYP2C19 polymorphism in Chinese Hans. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 4750-4753
21 **Chen CY**, Lu CL, Luo JC, Chang FY, Lee SD, Lai YL. Esomeprazole tablet vs omeprazole capsule in treating erosive esophagitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 3112-3117
22 **Schwab M**, Klotz U, Hofmann U, Schaeffeler E, Leodolter A, Malfertheiner P, Treiber G. Esomeprazole-induced healing of gastroesophageal reflux disease is unrelated to the genotype of CYP2C19: evidence from clinical and pharmacokinetic data. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **78**: 627-634
23 **Tanaka M**, Ohkubo T, Otani K, Suzuki A, Kaneko S, Sugawara K, Ryokawa Y, Ishizaki T. Stereoselective pharmacokinetics of pantoprazole, a proton pump inhibitor, in extensive and poor metabolizers of S-mephenytoin. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **69**: 108-113
24 **Pai VG**, Pai NV, Thacker HP, Shinde JK, Mandora VP, Erram SS. Comparative clinical trial of S-pantoprazole versus racemic pantoprazole in the treatment of gastro-esophageal reflux disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 6017-6020
25 **Zhou Q**, Ruan ZR, Yuan H, Jiang B, Xu DH. Pharmacokinetics and bioequivalence of ranitidine and bismuth derived from two compound preparations. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 2742-2748
26 **Martínez C**, Albet C, Agúndez JA, Herrero E, Carrillo JA, Márquez M, Benítez J, Ortiz JA. Comparative in vitro and in vivo inhibition of cytochrome P450 CYP1A2, CYP2D6, and CYP3A by H2-receptor antagonists. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1999; **65**: 369-376
27 **Yan Z**, Caldwell GW. Metabolism profiling, and cytochrome P450 inhibition & induction in drug discovery. *Curr Top Med Chem* 2001; **1**: 403-425
28 **Ishii Y**, Nakamura K, Tsutsumi K, Kotegawa T, Nakano S, Nakatsuka K. Drug interaction between cimetidine and timolol ophthalmic solution: effect on heart rate and intraocular pressure in healthy Japanese volunteers. *J Clin Pharmacol* 2000; **40**: 193-199
29 **Jou MJ**, Huang SC, Kiang FM, Lai MY, Chao PD. Comparison of the effects of cimetidine and ranitidine on the pharmacokinetics of disopyramide in man. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1997; **49**: 1072-1075
30 **Boffito M**, Carriero P, Trentini L, Raiteri R, Bonora S, Sinicco A, Reynolds HE, Hoggard PG, Back DJ, Di Perri G. Pharmacokinetics of saquinavir co-administered with cimetidine. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2002; **50**: 1081-1084
31 **Niopas I**, Toon S, Aarons L, Rowland M. The effect of cimetidine on the steady-state pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of warfarin in humans. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 1999; **55**: 399-404
32 **McEwen J**, McMurdo ME, Moreland TA. The effects of once-daily dosing with ranitidine and cimetidine on theophylline pharmacokinetics. *Eur J Drug Metab Pharmacokinet* 1988; **13**: 201-205
33 **Nix DE**, Di Cicco RA, Miller AK, Boyle DA, Boike SC, Zariffa N, Jorkasky DK, Schentag JJ. The effect of low-dose cimetidine (200 mg twice daily) on the pharmacokinetics of theophylline. *J Clin Pharmacol* 1999; **39**: 855-865
34 **Yoshimura N**, Takeuchi H, Ogata H, Ishioka T, Aoi R. Effects of roxatidine acetate hydrochloride and cimetidine on the pharmacokinetics of theophylline in healthy subjects. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther Toxicol* 1989; **27**: 308-312
35 **Cremer KF**, Secor J, Speeg KV. The effect of route of administration on the cimetidine-theophylline drug interaction. *J Clin Pharmacol* 1989; **29**: 451-456
36 **van der Padt A**, van Schaik RH, Sonneveld P. Acute dystonic reaction to metoclopramide in patients carrying homozygous cytochrome P450 2D6 genetic polymorphisms. *Neth J Med* 2006; **64**: 160-162
37 **Desta Z**, Wu GM, Morocho AM, Flockhart DA. The gastroprokinetic and antiemetic drug metoclopramide is a substrate and inhibitor of cytochrome P450 2D6. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2002; **30**: 336-343
38 **Dayer P**, Desmeules J, Striberni R. In vitro forecasting of drugs that may interfere with codeine bioactivation. *Eur J Drug Metab Pharmacokinet* 1992; **17**: 115-120
39 **Michalets EL**, Williams CR. Drug interactions with cisapride: clinical implications. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2000; **39**: 49-75
40 **Mushiroda T**, Douya R, Takahara E, Nagata O. The involvement of flavin-containing monooxygenase but not CYP3A4 in metabolism of itopride hydrochloride, a gastroprokinetic agent: comparison with cisapride and mosapride citrate. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2000; **28**: 1231-1237
41 **Ward BA**, Morocho A, Kandil A, Galinsky RE, Flockhart DA, Desta Z. Characterization of human cytochrome P450 enzymes catalyzing domperidone N-dealkylation and hydroxylation in vitro. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2004; **58**: 277-287
42 **Shulman RJ**, Boyle JT, Colletti RB, Friedman RA, Heyman MB, Kearns G, Kirschner BS, Levy J, Mitchell AA, Van Hare G. The use of cisapride in children. The North American Society for Pediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 1999; **28**: 529-533
43 **Tack J**, Middleton SJ, Horne MC, Piessevaux H, Bloor JS, Meyers NL, Palmer RM. Pilot study of the efficacy of renzapride on gastrointestinal motility and symptoms in patients with constipation-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 1655-1665
44 **Dixon CM**, Colthup PV, Serabjit-Singh CJ, Kerr BM, Boehlert

CC, Park GR, Tarbit MH. Multiple forms of cytochrome P450 are involved in the metabolism of ondansetron in humans. *Drug Metab Dispos* 1995; **23**: 1225-1230
45 **Aventis Pharmaceuticals Inc**. Prescribing information for ANZEMET ® Tablets (dolasetron mesylate). Available from: URL: http://redpoll.pharmacy.ualberta.ca/drugbank/drugBank/FDA_labels/020623.pdf
46 **Kaiser R**, Sezer O, Papies A, Bauer S, Schelenz C, Tremblay PB, Possinger K, Roots I, Brockmöller J. Patient-tailored antiemetic treatment with 5-hydroxytryptamine type 3 receptor antagonists according to cytochrome P-450 2D6 genotypes. *J Clin Oncol* 2002; **20**: 2805-2811
47 **Xu CT**, Pan BR. Clinical application of 5a2HTa-3R antagonist tropisetron in chemotherapy patients. *China Nati J New Gastroenterol* 1995; **1**: 52-57
48 **Tan M**. Granisetron: new insights into its use for the treatment of chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2003; **4**: 1563-1571
49 **Blower PR**. 5-HT3-receptor antagonists and the cytochrome P450 system: clinical implications. *Cancer J* 2002; **8**: 405-414
50 **Janicki PK**. Cytochrome P450 2D6 metabolism and 5-hydroxytryptamine type 3 receptor antagonists for postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Med Sci Monit* 2005; **11**: RA322-RA328
51 **Koch KM**, Corrigan BW, Manzo J, James CD, Scott RJ, Stead AG, Kersey KE. Alosetron repeat dose pharmacokinetics, effects on enzyme activities, and influence of demographic factors. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **20**: 223-230
52 **Koch KM**, Palmer JL, Noordin N, Tomlinson JJ, Baidoo C. Sex and age differences in the pharmacokinetics of alosetron. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2002; **53**: 238-242
53 **GlaxoSmithKline**. Prescribing information for Lotronex Tablets (alosetron hydrochloride). Available from: URL: www.fda.gov/cder/foi/label/2002/21107s5lbl.pdf
54 **Tsukagoshi S**. Pharmacokinetics of azasetron (Serotone), a selective 5-HT3 receptor antagonist. *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 1999; **26**: 1001-1008
55 **Helsinn Healthcare SA**. Prescribing information for AloxiTM (palonosetron hydrochloride) injection. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/cder/foi/label/2003/21372_aloxi_lbl.pdf
56 **Siddiqui MA**, Scott LJ. Palonosetron. *Drugs* 2004; **64**: 1125-1132; discussion 1133-1134
57 **Tonini G**, Vincenzi B, Santini D. New drugs for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting: focus on palonosetron. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 2005; **1**: 143-149
58 **Niwa T**, Yamamoto S, Saito M, Kobayashi N, Ikeda K, Noda Y, Takagi A. Effects of serotonin-3 receptor antagonists on cytochrome P450 activities in human liver microsomes. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2006; **29**: 1931-1935
59 **Sharara AI**, Chaar HF, Aoun E, Abdul-Baki H, Araj GF, Kanj SS. Efficacy and safety of rabeprazole, amoxicillin, and gatifloxacin after treatment failure of initial Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Helicobacter* 2006; **11**: 231-236
60 **Nista EC**, Candelli M, Zocco MA, Cazzato IA, Cremonini F, Ojetti V, Santoro M, Finizio R, Pignataro G, Cammarota G, Gasbarrini G, Gasbarrini A. Moxifloxacin-based strategies for first-line treatment of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **21**: 1241-1247
61 **Nista EC**, Candelli M, Zocco MA, Cremonini F, Ojetti V, Finizio R, Spada C, Cammarota G, Gasbarrini G, Gasbarrini A. Levofloxacin-based triple therapy in first-line treatment for Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1985-1990
62 **Guslandi M**. Review article: alternative antibacterial agents for Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15**: 1543-1547
63 **Dresner D**, Coyle W, Nemec R, Peterson R, Duntemann T, Lawson JM. Efficacy of ciprofloxacin in the eradication of Helicobacter pylori. *South Med J* 1996; **89**: 775-778
64 **McLellan RA**, Drobitch RK, Monshouwer M, Renton KW. Fluoroquinolone antibiotics inhibit cytochrome P450-mediated microsomal drug metabolism in rat and human. *Drug Metab Dispos* 1996; **24**: 1134-1138
65 **Hedaya MA**, El-Afify DR, El-Maghraby GM. The effect of ciprofloxacin and clarithromycin on sildenafil oral bioavailability in human volunteers. *Biopharm Drug Dispos* 2006; **27**: 103-110
66 **Herrlin K**, Segerdahl M, Gustafsson LL, Kalso E. Methadone, ciprofloxacin, and adverse drug reactions. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 2069-2070
67 **Hoey LL**, Lake KD. Does ciprofloxacin interact with cyclosporine? *Ann Pharmacother* 1994; **28**: 93-96
68 **Borrás-Blasco J**, Conesa-García V, Navarro-Ruiz A, Marín-Jiménez F, González-Delgado M, Gomez-Corrons A. Ciprofloxacin, but not levofloxacin, affects cyclosporine blood levels in a patient with pure red blood cell aplasia. *Am J Med Sci* 2005; **330**: 144-146
69 **McLellan RA**, Drobitch RK, McLellan H, Acott PD, Crocker JF, Renton KW. Norfloxacin interferes with cyclosporine disposition in pediatric patients undergoing renal transplantation. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1995; **58**: 322-327
70 **Granfors MT**, Backman JT, Neuvonen M, Neuvonen PJ. Ciprofloxacin greatly increases concentrations and hypotensive effect of tizanidine by inhibiting its cytochrome P450 1A2-mediated presystemic metabolism. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **76**: 598-606
71 **Raaska K**, Neuvonen PJ. Ciprofloxacin increases serum clozapine and N-desmethylclozapine: a study in patients with schizophrenia. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2000; **56**: 585-589
72 **Batty KT**, Davis TM, Ilett KF, Dusci LJ, Langton SR. The effect of ciprofloxacin on theophylline pharmacokinetics in healthy subjects. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 1995; **39**: 305-311
73 **Markowitz JS**, DeVane CL. Suspected ciprofloxacin inhibition of olanzapine resulting in increased plasma concentration. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 1999; **19**: 289-291
74 **Kunii T**, Fukasawa T, Yasui-Furukori N, Aoshima T, Suzuki A, Tateishi T, Inoue Y, Otani K. Interaction study between enoxacin and fluvoxamine. *Ther Drug Monit* 2005; **27**: 349-353
75 **Liu YN**. Effect of enoxacin on theophylline pharmacokinetics. *Zhonghua Jiehe He Huxi Zazhi* 1992; **15**: 106-108
76 **Ivashkin VT**, Lapina TL, Bondarenko OY, Sklanskaya OA, Grigoriev PY, Vasiliev YV, Yakovenko EP, Gulyaev PV, Fedchenko VI. Azithromycin in a triple therapy for H.pylori eradication in active duodenal ulcer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2002; **8**: 879-882
77 **Zhang L**, Shen L, Ma JL, Pan KF, Liu WD, Li J, Xiao SD, Lin SR, Classen M, You WC. Eradication of H pylori infection in a rural population: one-day quadruple therapy versus 7-day triple therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 3915-3918
78 **Xia HH**, Yu Wong BC, Talley NJ, Lam SK. Alternative and rescue treatment regimens for Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2002; **3**: 1301-1311
79 **Berstad A**, Berstad K, Wilhelmsen I, Hatlebakk JG, Nesje LB, Hausken T. Spiramycin in triple therapy of Helicobacter pylori-associated peptic ulcer disease. An open pilot study with 12-month follow-up. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1995; **9**: 197-200
80 **Liu WZ**, Xiao SD, Hu PJ, Lu H, Cui Y, Tytgat GN. A new quadruple therapy for Helicobacter pylori using tripotassium dicitrato bismuthate, furazolidone, josamycin and famotidine. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 1519-1522
81 **Dhir R**, Richter JE. Erythromycin in the short- and long-term control of dyspepsia symptoms in patients with gastroparesis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2004; **38**: 237-242
82 **Xu CT**, Pan BR. Effect of erythromycin on gastric emptying. *China Nati J New Gastroenterol* 1996; **2**: 53-57
83 **Rabine JC**, Barnett JL. Management of the patient with gastroparesis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2001; **32**: 11-18
84 **Abell TL**, Bernstein RK, Cutts T, Farrugia G, Forster J, Hasler WL, McCallum RW, Olden KW, Parkman HP, Parrish CR, Pasricha PJ, Prather CM, Soffer EE, Twillman R, Vinik AI. Treatment of gastroparesis: a multidisciplinary clinical review. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2006; **18**: 263-283
85 **Periti P**, Mazzei T, Mini E, Novelli A. Pharmacokinetic drug interactions of macrolides. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 1992; **23**: 106-131
86 **von Rosensteil NA**, Adam D. Macrolide antibacterials. Drug

interactions of clinical significance. *Drug Saf* 1995; **13**: 105-122
87 **Zhou S**, Yung Chan S, Cher Goh B, Chan E, Duan W, Huang M, McLeod HL. Mechanism-based inhibition of cytochrome P450 3A4 by therapeutic drugs. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2005; **44**: 279-304
88 **Metz DC**, Getz HD. Helicobacter pylori gastritis therapy with omeprazole and clarithromycin increases serum carbamazepine levels. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40**: 912-915
89 **Rubinstein E**. Comparative safety of the different macrolides. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2001; **18** Suppl 1: S71-S76
90 **Amsden GW**, Kuye O, Wei GC. A study of the interaction potential of azithromycin and clarithromycin with atorvastatin in healthy volunteers. *J Clin Pharmacol* 2002; **42**: 444-449
91 **Apseloff G**, Foulds G, LaBoy-Goral L, Willavize S, Vincent J. Comparison of azithromycin and clarithromycin in their interactions with rifabutin in healthy volunteers. *J Clin Pharmacol* 1998; **38**: 830-835
92 **Yeates RA**, Laufen H, Zimmermann T, Schumacher T. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interaction study between midazolam and the macrolide antibiotics, erythromycin, clarithromycin, and the azalide azithromycin. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1997; **35**: 577-579
93 **Gooderham MJ**, Bolli P, Fernandez PG. Concomitant digoxin toxicity and warfarin interaction in a patient receiving clarithromycin. *Ann Pharmacother* 1999; **33**: 796-799
94 **Breckenridge A**. Clinical significance of interactions with antifungal agents. *Br J Dermatol* 1992; **126** Suppl 39: 19-22
95 **Janssen**. Prescribing information for SPORANOX® (ITRACONAZOLE) INJECTION. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/medwatch/SAFETY/2004/jul_PI/SporanoxInj_PI.pdf
96 **Pfizer Inc**. Prescribing information for DIFLUCAN®. Available from: URL:http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/ac/05/briefing/2005-4180b_04_05_Diflucan%20label%2010-04%20Division.pdf
97 **Niemi M**, Backman JT, Fromm MF, Neuvonen PJ, Kivistö KT. Pharmacokinetic interactions with rifampicin: clinical relevance. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2003; **42**: 819-850
98 **Smith J**, Safdar N, Knasinski V, Simmons W, Bhavnani SM, Ambrose PG, Andes D. Voriconazole therapeutic drug monitoring. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2006; **50**: 1570-1572
99 **Pfizer Inc**. Prescribing information for VFEND® (voriconazole) Tablets/ Injection. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/medwatch/SAFETY/2003/03MAR_PI/Vfend_PI.pdf
100 **Donnelly JP,** De Pauw BE. Voriconazole-a new therapeutic agent with an extended spectrum of antifungal activity. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2004; **10** Suppl 1: 107-117
101 **Ikeda Y**, Umemura K, Kondo K, Sekiguchi K, Miyoshi S, Nakashima M. Pharmacokinetics of voriconazole and cytochrome P450 2C19 genetic status. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **75**: 587-588
102 **Piscitelli SC**, Gallicano KD. Interactions among drugs for HIV and opportunistic infections. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **344**: 984-996
103 **Kaukonen KM**, Olkkola KT, Neuvonen PJ. Fluconazole but not itraconazole decreases the metabolism of losartan to E-3174. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 1998; **53**: 445-449
104 **Kivistö KT**, Kantola T, Neuvonen PJ. Different effects of itraconazole on the pharmacokinetics of fluvastatin and lovastatin. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 1998; **46**: 49-53
105 **Rendić S**. Drug interactions of H2-receptor antagonists involving cytochrome P450 (CYPs) enzymes: from the laboratory to the clinic. *Croat Med J* 1999; **40**: 357-367
106 **Mizuki Y**, Fujiwara I, Yamaguchi T. Pharmacokinetic interactions related to the chemical structures of fluoroquinolones. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 1996; **37** Suppl A: 41-55
107 **Fuhr U**, Strobl G, Manaut F, Anders EM, Sörgel F, Lopez-de-Brinas E, Chu DT, Pernet AG, Mahr G, Sanz F. Quinolone antibacterial agents: relationship between structure and in vitro inhibition of the human cytochrome P450 isoform CYP1A2. *Mol Pharmacol* 1993; **43**: 191-199
108 **Lewis RE**. Managing drug interactions in the patient with aspergillosis. *Med Mycol* 2006; **44** Suppl: 349-356
109 **Venkatakrishnan K**, von Moltke LL, Greenblatt DJ. Effects of the antifungal agents on oxidative drug metabolism: clinical relevance. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2000; **38**: 111-180

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Ma JY **E- Editor** Liu Y

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5629-5634
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

CLINICAL RESEARCH

New classification of the anatomic variations of cystic artery during laparoscopic cholecystectomy

You-Ming Ding, Bin Wang, Wei-Xing Wang, Ping Wang, Ji-Shen Yan

You-Ming Ding, Bin Wang, Wei-Xing Wang, Ping Wang, Ji-Shen Yan, Department of Hepatobiliary & Laparoscopic Surgery, Renmin Hospital of Wuhan University, Wuhan 430060, Hubei Province, China
Correspondence to: Bin Wang, Department of Hepatobiliary & Laparoscopic Surgery, Renmin Hospital of Wuhan University, Jiefang Road 238#, Wuhan 430060, Hubei Province, China. wb7112@sina.com
Telephone: +86-27-88041911-2212
Received: May 24, 2007 Revised: August 25, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the anatomic variations in the cystic artery by laparoscopy, and to provide a new classification system for the guidance of laparoscopic surgeons.

METHODS: Six hundred patients treated with laparoscopic cholecystectomy from June 2005 to May 2006 were studied retrospectively. The laparoscope of 30° (Stryker, American) was applied. Anatomic structures of cystic artery and conditions of Calot's triangle under laparoscope were recorded respectively.

RESULTS: Laparoscopy has revealed there are many anatomic variations of the cystic artery that occur frequently. Based on our experience with 600 laparoscopic cholecystectomies, we present a new classification of anatomic variations of the cystic artery, which can be divided into three groups: (1) Calot's triangle type, found in 513 patients (85.5%); (2) outside Calot's triangle, found in 78 patients (13%); (3) compound type, observed in 9 patients (1.5%).

CONCLUSION: Our classification of the anatomic variations of the cystic artery will be useful for decreasing uncontrollable cystic artery hemorrhage, and avoiding extrahepatic bile duct injury.

Key words: Cystic artery; Laparoscopic cholecystectomy; Bile duct injury; Calot's triangle

Ding YM, Wang B, Wang WX, Wang P, Yan JS. New classification of the anatomic variations of the cystic artery during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5629-5634

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5629.asp

INTRODUCTION

Since the advent of laparoscopic cholecystectomy in the last two decades, minimally invasive surgery has evolved through advances in videoscopic technology, instrumentation, and surgical techniques[1-14]. Currently, laparoscopic cholecystectomy is widely accepted as the gold standard in the treatment of cholelithiasis[15-18]. This new technique was initially associated with a significant increase in morbidity, and in particular, in iatrogenic biliary injury and arterial hemorrhage[19-30], perhaps due to a lack of knowledge of the laparoscopic anatomy of the gallbladder pedicle. Therefore, the laparoscopic surgeon has to deal with the new anatomical views and must be aware of the possible arterial and biliary variants.

A good knowledge of Calot's triangle is important for conventional and laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Calot's triangle is an important imaginary referent area for biliary surgery. In 1981, Rocko drew attention to possible variations in the region of Calot's triangle bordered by the cystic duct, common hepatic duct, and lower edge of the liver[31]. In 1992, Hugh suggested Calot's triangle should be renamed the hepatobiliary triangle, with the small cystic artery branches supplying the cystic duct being called Calot's arteries[32].

Cystic artery bleeding is a troublesome complication during laparoscopic cholecystectomy, which increases the rate of conversion to open surgery. If surgery is performed incorrectly, injury to the extrahepatic bile duct or intra-abdominal organs is inevitable. The reported incidence of conversion to open surgery because of blood vessel injuries is approximately 0%-1.9% during laparoscopic cholecystectomy[33], and its mortality is about 0.02%[34]. Safe laparoscopic cholecystectomy demands a good knowledge of the anatomy of the cystic artery and its variations.

The cystic artery has many possible origins, with the right hepatic artery being the most common[35]. The anatomy with respect to the cystic artery between laparoscopic cholecystectomy and open cholecystectomy is different. We investigated the appearance of the cystic artery during laparoscopic cholecystectomy, and proposed a new classification system for the cystic artery during laparoscopic cholecystectomy, according to our practical experience.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Between June 2005 and May 2006, we undertook a retrospective evaluation of 600 non-emergency patients, 232 men and 368 women, who underwent laparoscopic

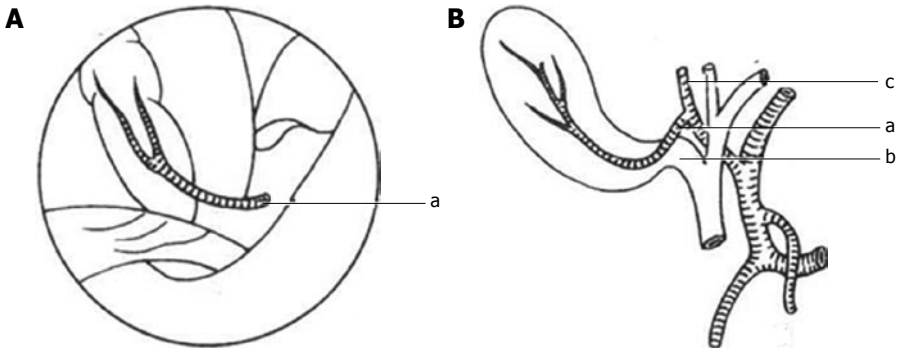


Figure 1 Classical single cystic artery. **A**: Laparoscopic visualization; **B**: Conventional visualization. a: Cystic artery; b: Cystic duct; c: Right hepatic artery.

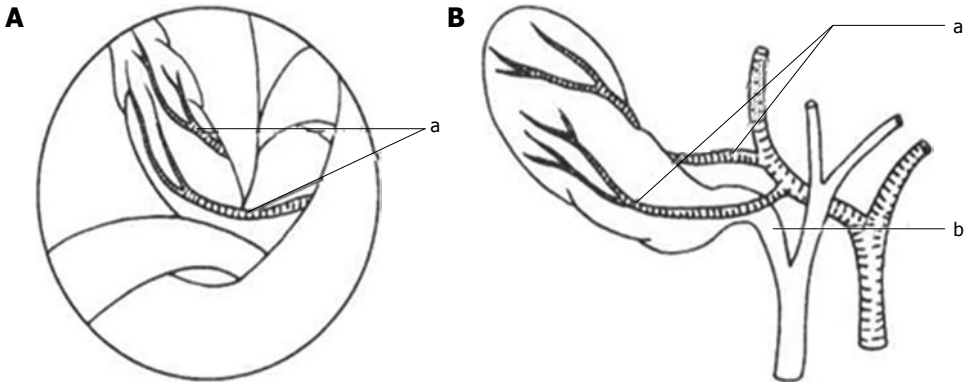


Figure 2 Double cystic artery. **A**: Laparoscopic visualization; **B**: Conventional visualization. a: Cystic artery; b: Cystic duct.

cholecystectomy for different gallbladder diseases, including 530 with cholecystitis and gallstones, and 70 with gallbladder polyps. All of the patients were examined with ultrasound before surgery.

Laparoscopic cholecystectomy was carried out under general anesthesia using the four ports technique. The information of Calot's triangle and distribution of cystic artery on endoscopic visualization was recorded respectively. A laparoscope (Stryker, USA) at 30° tilt angle was used. The anatomical structures were viewed on a three-dimensional video monitor.

RESULTS

Based on our laparoscopic observations, we classified cystic artery anatomy into three groups.

Group I

Group I represents the Calot's triangle type, in which the cystic artery passes through Calot's triangle. The anatomic location of the cystic artery can be found ahead or behind of the cystic duct, and in hepatoduodenal ligament, under laparoscopic observation. This is the most common type and has been reported in about 80%-96% of cases in previous studies[35,36]. We observed this type in 513 of the 600 patients (85.5%). Group I is further subdivided into two subtypes, as follows.

Classical single cystic artery: The cystic artery originates from the right hepatic artery within Calot's triangle. When approaching the gallbladder, the artery is divided into deep and superficial branches at the neck of the gallbladder. The superficial branch proceeds along the left side of the gallbladder. The deep branch runs through the connective tissues between the gallbladder and liver parenchyma. The deep branch gives rise to tiny branches to supply the gallbladder, which anastomose with the superficial branches. This type of cystic artery is laterally positioned from the cystic duct within Calot's triangle during open cholecystectomy, whereas during laparoscopic cholecystectomy it is just behind and slightly deeper than the cystic duct. According to the literature, this type is found in 70%-80% of cases[32,35]. In our study it was recorded in 440 of 600 patients (73.3%) (Figure 1).

Suzuki *et al* has reported a special example of this type. A single cystic artery originates from the right hepatic artery and then hooks around the cystic duct from behind and reappears at the peritoneal surface near the neck of the gallbladder. They named this the cystic artery syndrome[37]. We did not find any examples of this type in our study.

Double cystic artery: The cystic artery also originates from the right hepatic artery, while it divides into the anterior and posterior branches at their cystic artery origin. Congenital absence of the deep branch signifies the existence of another cystic artery, which is occasionally detected by subsequent bleeding control. The posterior cystic artery is very delicate in some cases and is often cut by electrocoagulation during dissection. A double cystic artery has previously been found in 15%-25% of patients[32]. During our laparoscopic cholecystectomy we recorded 73 patients (12.2%) with double cystic artery (Figure 2).

Group II

Cystic artery approaches the gallbladder outside Calot's triangle and cannot be observed within the triangle by

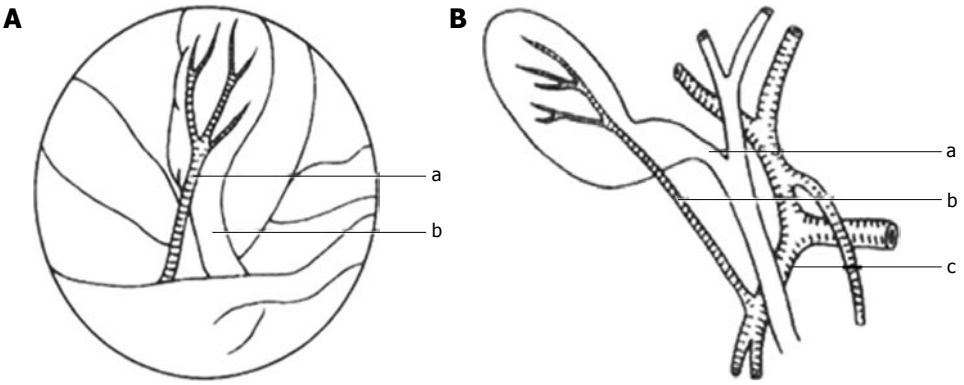
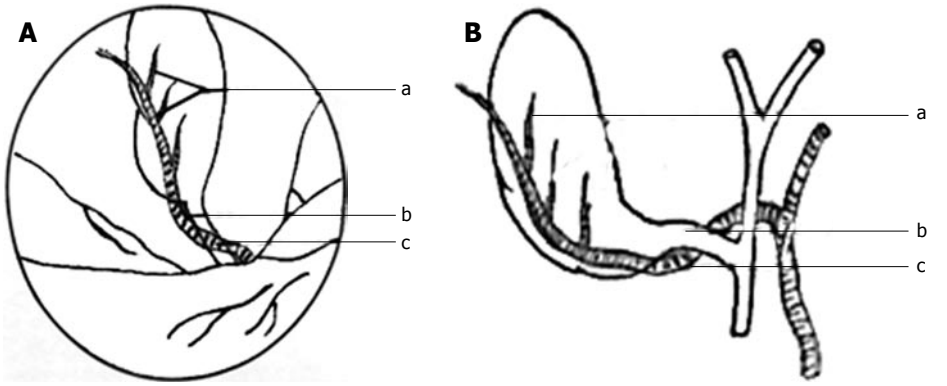


Figure 3 Cystic artery originating from gastroduodenal artery. **A**: Laparoscopic visualization; **B**: Conventional visualization. a: Cystic artery; b: Cystic duct; c: Gastroduodenal artery.



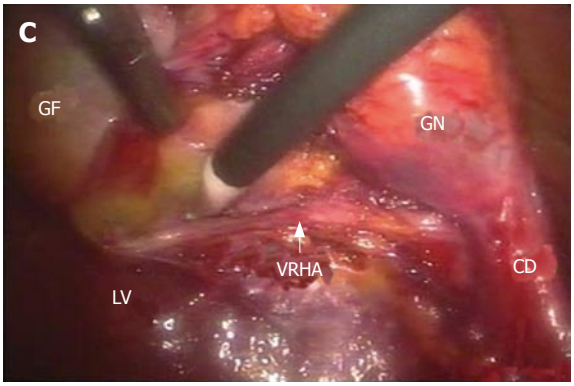


Figure 4 Cystic artery originating from variant right hepatic artery. **A**: Laparoscopic visualization; **B**: Conventional visualization; **C**: Video in operation. a: Cystic artery; b: Cystic duct; c: Variant right hepatic artery; GF: Fundus of gallbladder; CD: Cystic duct; GN: Neck of gallbladder; LV: Liver; VRHA: Variant right hepatic artery.

laparoscopy during dissection. We found 78 patients (13%) in group II during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. This group includes the following four subgroups.

Cystic artery originating from gastroduodenal artery: This type of cystic artery is also called low-lying cystic artery, which does not pass through Calot's triangle but approaches the gallbladder beyond it. In conventional open cholecystectomy it is seen as inferior to the cystic duct, while it usually localizes superficially and anterior to the cystic duct from a laparoscopic viewpoint. Its terminal segment as it approaches the gallbladder is important for laparoscopic surgeons. Because it not only must be manipulated at first, but it is also susceptible to injury and hemorrhage during dissection of the peritoneal folds that connect the hepatoduodenal ligament to Hartman's pouch of the gallbladder or to the cystic duct. This anatomic variation was found in 45 patients (7.5%) in our study (Figure 3).

Cystic artery originating from the variant right hepatic artery: Anatomic variation of the right hepatic artery usually originates from the superior mesenteric artery or aorta[32,38]. It enters Calot's triangle behind the portal vein, and runs parallel to the cystic duct on its passage through the triangle. It can be completely covered by the cystic duct of the gallbladder[32]. We found a very interesting type of right hepatic artery variant. This artery has a long course, approaching the gallbladder deep at its neck, and then passing between the gallbladder and liver parenchyma, extending along the deep right side of the gallbladder, and finally entering the liver parenchyma near the right-lateral side of the gallbladder fundus. It yields multiple small branches to supply the gallbladder at its body, and it is often completely covered by the gallbladder. We should be cautious of this right hepatic artery variation. From the laparoscopic viewpoint it looks like a single large artery. This anatomic variation was found in 18 patients (3%) in our study (Figure 4).

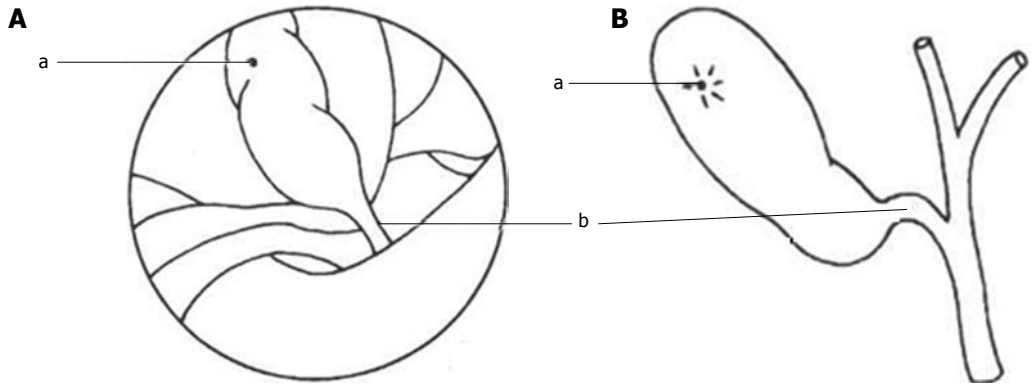


Figure 5 Cystic artery arising from hepatic parenchyma. **A**: Laparoscopic visualization; **B**: Conventional visualization. a: Cystic artery; b: Cystic duct.

Variant right hepatic artery has been shown to have a prevalence of approximate 4%-15%[37,39].

Cystic artery originating directly from the liver parenchyma: This cystic artery pierces the hepatic parenchyma approaching the bladder from the gallbladder bed. It usually situates in the right lateral of the border of gallbladder body and bottom. However, a few are situated in the center of the gallbladder bed or situated left lateral of gallbladder bottom. No other arteries are found within Calot's triangle. This anatomic variation of the cystic artery is not observed until bleeding and is caused by dissection of the gallbladder fundus. It is difficult to explore and requires careful dissection. We found it in 15 patients (2.5%) (Figure 5).

Cystic artery originating from the left hepatic artery: The cystic artery occasionally originates from the left hepatic artery, passes through the liver parenchyma, and reaches the middle of the gallbladder body, at which point it bifurcates into ascending and descending branches. This has a prevalence of 1%[39]. However, we did not find this type of variant cystic artery.

Group Ⅲ

This group has more than one blood supply. We named it the compound cystic artery type. The cystic arteries exist not only in Calot's triangle, but also outside it. We found that nine patients (1.5%) belonged to this group. Five of these patients (0.8%) had a normal single cystic artery in Calot's triangle, and an artery extending along the cystic duct but posterior to it, and some small arteries that passed immediately from the liver parenchyma to the gallbladder. Three of the nine patients (0.5%) had another cystic artery superficial to the cystic duct in addition to the normal cystic artery. Finally, one patient (0.17%) had multiple cystic arteries, including the double cystic artery in Calot's triangle, and one of the arteries crossed anterior to the common bile duct, while another was situated on the right side of the border of the gallbladder body and fundus.

DISCUSSION

Anatomic variations in and around Calot's triangle are frequent (biliary tree, cystic artery)[40,41], and we found them in 20%-50% of patients. Therefore, careful blunt dissection of Calot's triangle is necessary for both conventional and laparoscopic cholecystectomy.

Since the introduction of laparoscopic gallbladder surgery, surgeons have been very interested in gallbladder vascularization. A great number of papers on this issue have been published[36,42-44], although some vagueness still exists, because of the diversity of data and classification. There have been relatively few reports on the laparoscopic anatomy of the hepatobiliary triangle, especially of the cystic artery.

It is important for every laparoscopic surgeon to be familiar with the anatomic variations in the extrahepatic biliary tree and those of the arterial supply of the gallbladder. The possible anatomic position and variations of the cystic artery are difficult to establish before surgery. They were only identified during disconnection of Calot's triangle and the gallbladder. The laparoscopic anatomy of the cystic artery can be considered as a precondition for performing safe laparoscopic procedures. The variations of cystic artery often make surgeons recognize an error, causing them to abscise incorrectly and, subsequently, leading to a hemorrhage. When hemorrhage cannot be controlled, conversion to open cholecystectomy is inevitable.

The position of the cystic artery appears differently during laparoscopic and conventional cholecystectomy for the following reasons. (1) Under laparoscopy, as the gallbladder fundus is pulled, the liver is moved upward, thereby opening the subhepatic space. (2) By pulling Hartman's pouch downward, the anterior aspect of Calot's triangle is presented. On the contrary, by pulling Hartman's pouch upward, the posterior aspect of Calot's triangle is clearly exposed. (3) Better transparency and visualization under laparoscopy facilitates recognition of cystic artery variation by the surgeon.

Previous studies have contained fewer reports on the laparoscopic classification of the cystic artery. Some have divided the cystic artery into low-lying cystic artery and cystic artery originating from variant right hepatic artery. Balija classified cystic artery variations into two groups. Group I comprises five variations of the cystic artery within the hepatobiliary triangle: (a) normal position; (b) frontal cystic artery; (c) backside; (d) multiple; and (e) short cystic artery that arises from an aberrant right hepatic artery. Group Ⅱ consists of variations of the cystic artery that approaches the gallbladder beyond the hepatobiliary

triangle: (a) low-lying; (b) transhepatic; and (c) recurrent cystic artery[36]. Ignjatovic has divided the cystic artery into three types in minimally invasive surgical procedures: type 1 shows normal anatomy; type 2 more than one artery in Calot's triangle; and type 3 no artery in Calot's triangle[45]. However, none of the above classifications satisfies the practical needs of laparoscopic surgery. Based on our experience, the anatomic variations of the cystic artery can be classified into three groups. Group I showed the cystic artery passing within Calot's triangle. It included two types: (1) single cystic artery, found in 440 patients (73.3%); and (2) double cystic artery, observed in 73 patients (12.2%). Group Ⅱ showed the cystic artery situated outside Calot's triangle. This group included four variations: (1) cystic artery originating from the gastroduodenal artery, found in 45 patients (7.5%); (2) cystic artery originating from the variant right hepatic artery, found in 18 patients (3%); (3) cystic artery directly arising from the liver parenchyma, observed in 15 patients (2.5%); and (4) cystic artery originating from the left hepatic artery. Group Ⅲ had a compound appearance, with the variant cystic artery situated not only within Calot's triangle, but also outside it. This classification of cystic artery can help surgeons understand the cystic artery more thoroughly, and may be more practical to use in real operations.

Variations in the cystic artery are miscellaneous, and we must be cautious during the performance of laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Our laparoscopic classification of the cystic artery is very useful for dissection of Calot's triangle, reduces uncontrollable cystic artery hemorrhage, and may be advantageous for avoiding extrahepatic bile duct injury.

COMMENTS

Background

Uncontrolled bleeding from the cystic artery and its branches is a serious problem that may increase the risk of intraoperative injury to vital vascular and biliary structures. Anatomic variations of the cystic artery are frequent and can differ in origin, position and number. We investigated 600 cases treated with laparoscopic cholecystectomy and analyzed the anatomic structure of the cystic arteries under laparoscopic observation. The cystic artery variations were classified into three groups: (1) Calot's triangle, (2) outside Calot's triangle, and (3) compound type. These will be helpful to laparoscopic surgeons.

Research frontiers

Laparoscopic cholecystectomy is widely accepted as the gold standard in the treatment of gallstone disease. However, the incidence of bile duct injury caused by this procedure is more than that caused by conventional cholecystectomy. The main areas of research in laparoscopic cholecystectomy are as follows: (1) biliary injury during laparoscopic cholecystectomy; (2) anatomic characteristics of the cystic artery; (3) intraoperative bleeding during laparoscopic cholecystectomy; (4) cholecystectomy techniques.

Innovations and breakthroughs

There are few reports concerning classification of the cystic artery during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Some authors have classified it into two groups: Group Ⅰ comprises variations of the cystic artery within the hepatobiliary triangle; and Group Ⅱ comprises variations of the cystic artery that approach the gallbladder beyond the hepatobiliary triangle. Other authors have divided cystic artery variations into three types: type 1, normal anatomy; type 2, more than one artery in Calot's triangle; and type 3, no artery in Calot's triangle. We present a new classification of cystic artery variations based on three groups. Group I shows the cystic artery passing within the Calot's triangle. This includes two types: (1) single cystic artery, and (2) double cystic artery. Group Ⅱ shows the cystic artery situated outside Calot's triangle. This group includes four variations: (1) cystic artery originating from the gastroduodenal artery; (2) cystic artery originating from the variant right hepatic artery; (3) cystic artery arising directly from the liver parenchyma; (4) cystic artery originating from the left hepatic artery. Group Ⅲ shows the cystic artery is compound in nature; the variant cystic artery was situated not only within Calot's triangle, but also outside it. Furthermore, we found a new variant right hepatic artery (Figure 4), which has not been reported before.

Peer review

The authors introduce a new classification of cystic artery variations during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Their system is different from those reported previously. The new system divides the anatomic variations of the cystic artery into three groups according to the position of the cystic artery relative to Calot's triangle, as seen by laparoscopy. The classification system should be useful to laparoscopic surgeons, and help reduce incidences of bile duct injury and intraoperative bleeding during laparoscopic cholecystectomy.

REFERENCES

1 **Leggett PL**, Churchman-Winn R, Miller G. Minimizing ports to improve laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Surg Endosc* 2000; **14**: 32-36
2 **Catani M**, Guerricchio R, De Milito R, Capitano S, Chiaretti M, Guerricchio A, Manili G, Simi M. "Low-pressure" laparoscopic cholecystectomy in high risk patients (ASA III and IV): our experience. *Chir Ital* 2004; **56**: 71-80
3 **Reardon PR**, Kamelgard JI, Applebaum B, Rossman L, Brunicardi FC. Feasibility of laparoscopic cholecystectomy with miniaturized instrumentation in 50 consecutive cases. *World J Surg* 1999; **23**: 128-131; discussion 131-132
4 **Watanabe Y**, Sato M, Ueda S, Abe Y, Horiuchi A, Doi T, Kawachi K. Microlaparoscopic cholecystectomy--the first 20 cases: is it an alternative to conventional LC? *Eur J Surg* 1998; **164**: 623-625; discussion 626
5 **Vidovszky TJ**, Smith W, Ghosh J, Ali MR. Robotic cholecystectomy: learning curve, advantages, and limitations. *J Surg Res* 2006; **136**: 172-178
6 **Luketich JD**, Fernando HC, Buenaventura PO, Christie NA, Grondin SC, Schauer PR. Results of a randomized trial of HERMES-assisted versus non-HERMES-assisted laparoscopic antireflux surgery. *Surg Endosc* 2002; **16**: 1264-1266
7 **Satava RM**. Surgical robotics: the early chronicles: a personal historical perspective. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2002; **12**: 6-16
8 **Himpens J**, Leman G, Cadiere GB. Telesurgical laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Surg Endosc* 1998; **12**: 1091
9 **Ali MR**, Bhaskerrao B, Wolfe BM. Robot-assisted laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. *Surg Endosc* 2005; **19**: 468-472
10 **Welter FH**. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy--a never-ending success story? *MMW Fortschr Med* 2006; **148**: 38-39
11 **Hobbs MS**, Mai Q, Knuiman MW, Fletcher DR, Ridout SC. Surgeon experience and trends in intraoperative complications in laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Br J Surg* 2006; **93**: 844-853
12 **Mori T**, Ikeda Y, Okamoto K, Sakata K, Ideguchi K, Nakagawa K, Yasumitsu T. A new technique for two-trocar laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Surg Endosc* 2002; **16**: 589-591
13 **Lichten JB**, Reid JJ, Zahalsky MP, Friedman RL. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy in the new millennium. *Surg Endosc* 2001; **15**: 867-872
14 **Gadacz TR**. Update on laparoscopic cholecystectomy, including a clinical pathway. *Surg Clin North Am* 2000; **80**: 1127-1149
15 **Tebala GD**, Innocenti P, Ciani R, Zumbo A, Fonsi GB, Bellini P, De Chiara F, Fittipaldi D, Hadjiamiri H, Lamaro S, Marinoni R. Identification of gallbladder pedicle anatomy during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Chir Ital* 2004; **56**: 389-396
16 **Kamitani S**, Tsutamoto Y, Hanasawa K, Tani T. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy in situs inversus totalis with "inferior" cystic artery: a case report. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 5232-5234
17 **Tebala GD**. Three-port laparoscopic cholecystectomy by harmonic dissection without cystic duct and artery clipping. *Am J Surg* 2006; **191**: 718-720
18 **Hüscher CG**, Lirici MM, Di Paola M, Crafa F, Napolitano C, Mereu A, Recher A, Corradi A, Amini M. Laparoscopic

cholecystectomy by ultrasonic dissection without cystic duct and artery ligature. *Surg Endosc* 2003; **17**: 442-451
19 **De Silva WM**, Sivananthan S, De Silva D, Fernando N. Biliary tract injury during cholecystectomy: a retrospective descriptive review of clinical features, treatment and outcome. *Ceylon Med J* 2006; **51**: 132-136
20 **Targarona EM**, Marco C, Balagué C, Rodriguez J, Cugat E, Hoyuela C, Veloso E, Trias M. How, when, and why bile duct injury occurs. A comparison between open and laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Surg Endosc* 1998; **12**: 322-326
21 **Z'graggen K**, Aronsky D, Maurer CA, Klaiber C, Baer HU. Acute postoperative pancreatitis after laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Results of the Prospective Swiss Association of Laparoscopic and Thoracoscopic Surgery Study. *Arch Surg* 1997; **132**: 1026-1030; discussion 1031
22 **El-Banna M**, Abdel-Atty M, El-Meteini M, Aly S. Management of laparoscopic-related bowel injuries. *Surg Endosc* 2000; **14**: 779-782
23 **Hjelmqvist B**. Complications of laparoscopic cholecystectomy as recorded in the Swedish laparoscopy registry. *Eur J Surg Suppl* 2000: 18-21
24 **Lillemoe KD**, Petrofski JA, Choti MA, Venbrux AC, Cameron JL. Isolated right segmental hepatic duct injury: a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2000; **4**: 168-177
25 **Sawaya DE**, Johnson LW, Sittig K, McDonald JC, Zibari GB. Iatrogenic and noniatrogenic extrahepatic biliary tract injuries: a multi-institutional review. *Am Surg* 2001; **67**: 473-477
26 **Thompson MH**, Benger JR. Cholecystectomy, conversion and complications. *HPB Surg* 2000; **11**: 373-378
27 **Taylor B**. Common bile duct injury during laparoscopic cholecystectomy in Ontario: does ICD-9 coding indicate true incidence? *CMAJ* 1998; **158**: 481-485
28 **Sarker SK**, Chang A, Vincent C, Darzi SA. Development of assessing generic and specific technical skills in laparoscopic surgery. *Am J Surg* 2006; **191**: 238-244
29 **McKenzie S**, Schwartz R. The management of bile duct injuries occurring during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Curr Surg* 2006; **63**: 20-23
30 **Doganay M**, Kama NA, Reis E, Kologlu M, Atli M, Gozalan U. Management of main bile duct injuries that occur during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Surg Endosc* 2002; **16**: 216
31 **Rocko JM**, Di Gioia JM. Calot's triangle revisited. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1981; **153**: 410-414
32 **Hugh TB**, Kelly MD, Li B. Laparoscopic anatomy of the cystic artery. *Am J Surg* 1992; **163**: 593-595
33 **Thompson JE**, Bock R, Lowe DK, Moody WE. Vena cava injuries during laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Surg Laparosc Endosc* 1996; **6**: 221-223
34 **Deziel DJ**, Millikan KW, Economou SG, Doolas A, Ko ST, Airan MC. Complications of laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a national survey of 4,292 hospitals and an analysis of 77,604 cases. *Am J Surg* 1993; **165**: 9-14
35 **Chen TH**, Shyu JF, Chen CH, Ma KH, Wu CW, Lui WY, Liu JC. Variations of the cystic artery in Chinese adults. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2000; **10**: 154-157
36 **Balija M**, Huis M, Stulhofer M, Nikolic V. Contribution to the nomenclature of variations of the cystic artery. *Chirurg* 2001; **72**: 154-158
37 **Suzuki M**, Akaishi S, Rikiyama T, Naitoh T, Rahman MM, Matsuno S. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy, Calot's triangle, and variations in cystic arterial supply. *Surg Endosc* 2000; **14**: 141-144
38 **Scott-Conner CE**, Hall TJ. Variant arterial anatomy in laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Am J Surg* 1992; **163**: 590-592
39 **Balija M**, Huis M, Nikolic V, Stulhofer M. Laparoscopic visualization of the cystic artery anatomy. *World J Surg* 1999; **23**: 703-707; discussion 707
40 **Cimmino PT**, Bocchetti T, Izzo L. Anatomo-surgical considerations in laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *G Chir* 1992; **13**: 149-151
41 **Larobina M**, Nottle PD. Extrahepatic biliary anatomy at laparoscopic cholecystectomy: is aberrant anatomy important? *ANZ J Surg* 2005; **75**: 392-395
42 **Loukas M**, Fergurson A, Louis RG, Colborn GL. Multiple variations of the hepatobiliary vasculature including double cystic arteries, accessory left hepatic artery and hepatosplenic trunk: a case report. *Surg Radiol Anat* 2006; **28**: 525-528
43 **Mlakar B**, Gadzijev EM, Ravnik D, Hribernik M. Anatomical variations of the cystic artery. *Eur J Morphol* 2003; **41**: 31-34
44 **Futara G**, Ali A, Kinfu Y. Variations of the hepatic and cystic arteries among Ethiopians. *Ethiop Med J* 2001; **39**: 133-142
45 **Ignjatović D**, Zivanović V, Vasić G, Kovacević-Mcilwaine I. Cystic artery anatomy characteristics in minimally invasive surgical procedures. *Acta Chir Iugosl* 2006; **53**: 63-66

S-Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Kerr C **E- Editor** Wang HF

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5635-5641
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Constitutive androstane receptor agonist, TCPOBOP, attenuates steatohepatitis in the methionine choline-deficient diet-fed mouse

Edwina S Baskin-Bey, Akira Anan, Hajime Isomoto, Steven F Bronk, Gregory J Gores

Edwina S Baskin-Bey, Akira Anan, Hajime Isomoto, Steven F Bronk, Gregory J Gores, Department of Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Miles and Shirely Fitterman Center for Digestive Diseases, Mayo Clinic College of Medicine, Rochester, MN 55905, United States
Supported by NIH grants T32 DK07198-26 (to ESB) and DK41876 (to GJG), and the Palumbo and Mayo Foundation
Correspondence to: Gregory J Gores, MD, Professor of Medicine, Mayo Clinic College of Medicine, 200 First Street SW, Rochester, Minnesota 55905,
United States. gores.gregory@mayo.edu
Telephone: +1-507-2840686 Fax: +1-507-2840762
Received: June 15, 2007 Revised: August 10, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To ascertain whether constitutive androstane receptor (CAR) activation by 1,4-bis-[2-(3,5,-dichloropyridyloxy)] benzene (TCPOBOP) modulates steatohepatitis in the methionine choline-deficient (MCD) diet-fed animal.

METHODS: C57/BL6 wild-type mice were fed the MCD or standard diet for 2 wk and were treated with either the CAR agonist, TCPOBOP, or the CAR inverse agonist, androstanol.

RESULTS: Expression of CYP2B10 and CYP3A11, known CAR target genes, increased 30-fold and 45-fold, respectively, in TCPOBOP-treated mice fed the MCD diet. TCPOBOP treatment reduced hepatic steatosis (44.6 ± 5.4% *vs* 30.4 ± 4.5%, $P < 0.05$) and serum triglyceride levels (48 ± 8 *vs* 20 ± 1 mg/dL, $P < 0.05$) in MCD diet-fed mice as compared with the standard diet-fed mice. This reduction in hepatic steatosis was accompanied by an increase in enzymes involved in fatty acid microsomal ω-oxidation and peroxisomal β-oxidation, namely CYP4A10, LPBE, and 3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase. The reduction in steatosis was also accompanied by a reduction in liver cell apoptosis and inflammation. In contrast, androstanol was without effect on any of the above parameters.

CONCLUSION: CAR activation stimulates induction of genes involved in fatty acid oxidation, and ameliorates hepatic steatosis, apoptosis and inflammation.

Key words: Apoptosis; CYP4A; Fatty acid oxidation; Inflammation

Baskin-Bey ES, Anan A, Isomoto H, Bronk SF, Gores GJ. Constitutive androstane receptor agonist, TCPOBOP, attenuates steatohepatitis in the methionine choline-deficient diet-fed mouse. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5635-5641

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5635.asp

INTRODUCTION

Hepatic steatosis or fatty infiltration of the liver has reached epidemic proportions in Western Society. Approximately 30 million adults in the United States have hepatic steatosis, and a subset of these individuals will develop accompanying hepatic inflammation referred to as steatohepatitis[1]. If the steatohepatitis is not associated with significant alcohol intake, it is commonly referred to as nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH). Unfortunately, NASH can progress to cirrhosis and chronic liver failure with considerable morbidity and mortality[2]. Treatment options for NASH are limited and, therefore, there is an unmet need for the pharmacologic treatment of this liver disease.

Although the precise etiopathogenesis of NASH remains to be defined, it is a disease due to perturbations of intermediary fat metabolism. In hepatic steatosis, an excess of non-esterified fatty acids are released from peripheral tissues into the serum[3]. These excess serum-free fatty acids are cleared by the liver where they are esterified and accumulate as neutral fat. The formation of neutral fat is presumably due to a limited capacity to oxidize excess fatty acids. Mechanisms to enhance hepatic fatty acid oxidation are, therefore, a potential strategy to protect the liver from hepatic steatosis. Hepatic fatty acid oxidation occurs by three pathways[4]. β-oxidation is a predominant pathway, which occurs in the mitochondria, and is rate-regulated by carnitine palmitoyltransferase (CPT1) and the mitochondrial trifunctional protein (MPT) complex. Peroxisomal β-oxidation oxidation occurs within peroxisomes and is rate-limited by the peroxisomal L-bifunctional enzyme (L-PBE), acetyl-COA oxidase (ACO), and urate oxidase (UO). The third

pathway is ω-oxidation which occurs in the endoplasmic reticulum. This pathway is dependent upon expression of the cytochrome enzymes CYP4A10 and CYP4A14. Stimulation of these pathways either individually or collectively could help remove excess free fatty acids from the liver and attenuate NASH.

Nuclear receptors are a family of transcription factors, which regulate metabolism of endo- and xenobiotic compounds[5]. In particular, the constitutive androstane receptor (CAR), which is highly expressed in the liver, is a biosensor for endo- and xenobiotic compounds, such as toxic bile acids[6-8] and steroids[9]. CAR mediates the induction of detoxifying enzymes by the widely used antiepileptic drug phenobarbital in humans and by the potent synthetic inducer, 1,4-bis-[2-(3,5,-dichloropyridyloxy)] benzene (TCPOBOP) in mice. Once stimulated, CAR increases expression of *CYP2B* genes in the mouse[7,8,10] and human[11]. From a teleological perspective, this nuclear receptor can be viewed as a general hepatoprotective response system, as it detoxifies potentially injurious endo- and xenobiotics. In addition, it serves as a hepatic mitogen and as an anti-apoptotic agent by increasing transcriptional expression of the anti-apoptotic protein, Mcl-1[12,13]. These composite effects eliminate toxins, enlarge the liver[14], and render it resistant to liver injury-all hepatoprotective responses. Whether CAR also protects the liver from injurious endobiotics, such as free fatty acids, is less clear but a viable concept.

Based on the above concepts, we postulated that CAR would protect the liver from the development of steatohepatitis by enhancing processes involved in fatty acid oxidation. Thus, the overall objective of the current study was to ascertain whether CAR activation by TCPOBOP modulates steatohepatitis induced by the methionine choline-deficient diet, a well known murine model of NASH[15]. Two fundamental questions were formulated. In TCPOBOP-treated MCD diet-fed mice: (1) Does CAR activation modify steatosis, and if so, does it alter expression of genes involved in fatty acid oxidation? and (2) does CAR alter apoptosis and inflammation in this model of NASH? The results indicate that CAR activation can stimulate an induction of genes involved in fatty acid oxidation, ameliorating hepatic steatosis, apoptosis and inflammation. These observations suggest CAR stimulation renders the liver resistant to MCD diet-mediated steatohepatitis. An understanding of these mechanisms may allow the development of CAR agonists as therapeutic strategies for NASH.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animal models

The care and use of the animals for this study were reviewed and approved by the Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee (IACUC). C57/BL wild-type mice (Jackson laboratories, Bar Harbor, ME), weighing 20-25 g, were fed a methionine choline-deficient (MCD) diet (Harland Tech Lad, Madison, WI) for 2, 3 or 4 wk. This diet rapidly induces steatosis and steatohepatitis in rodents[16]. The mice were maintained in a temperature-controlled, pathogen-free environment and fed a standard rodent chow diet and water ad libitum. To assess the effect of CAR modulation, mice were intraperitoneally (ip) injected with either vehicle (corn oil), 1,4-bis [2-(3,5-dichloropyridyloxy)] benzene (TCPOBOP) (Sigma-Aldrich, St Louis, MO) (3 g/kg) daily for the first 3 d[7] at the starting of the MCD diet, or 5β-androstan-3β-ol (androstanol) (a CAR inverse agonist) (Steraloids, Newport, RI) (100 mg/kg) daily for 3 d at the starting of weeks one and two of the MCD diet (total of 6 injections). Androstanol was used as negative control for CAR target genes. At selected times, the animals were anesthetized with ether, and a hepatectomy was performed prior to euthanasia *via* exsanguination. Blood was drawn *via* the portal vein to examine triglyceride levels. Liver tissue sections were placed in fixative for subsequent microscopic analyses. Liver sections were also subjected to RNA extraction using the Trizol Reagent (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA).

Oil red O staining and fat quantification

Liver sections were cut into a thickness of 20 μm in a cryostat, air dried, and then stained with oil red O as per standard techniques[17]. Slides were then viewed under microscopy (Axioplan 2, Carl Zeiss, Inc. Oberkochen, Germany). Digital pictures were captured to quantitate percent fat (red color in area/field area × 100) of digital photomicrographs as described previously[18].

Histology, TUNEL assay and immunohistochemical identification of activated caspases 3/7

Histology, TUNEL assay, and immunohistochemical analysis for activated caspases 3/7 was performed as previously described by us[18]. To accurately quantitate TUNEL-positive and caspase 3/7-positive cells, slides were examined by digital image analysis to quantitate the percent fluorescence/field area of digital photomicrographs as described previously[13].

Measurement of Leukotriene B4

LTB4 was quantitated using a specific ELISA kit (R&D systems) according to the manufacturer's instructions[19].

Immunohistochemistry for CD68

Unstained slides of liver tissue specimens were deparaffinized and hydrated. Antigen retrieval was performed using EDTA (1 mmol/L, pH 8.0). Slides were placed in a vegetable steamer for 40 min at 97℃, followed by a cooling for 2 min. Thereafter, the catalyzed signal amplification system (DAKO, Carpinteria, CA) was used according to manufacturer's instructions. CD68 immunostaining was performed as previously described by us[20].

Real time-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR)

Total RNA was obtained from whole liver as previously described by us[21]. After the reverse transcription reaction, the cDNA template was amplified by PCR with Taq polymerase (Invitrogen) and mRNA was quantitated for acetyl-CoA oxidase (ACO), carnitine palmitoyltransferase (CPT1); peroxisomal 3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase (ketoacyl thiolase), L-peroxisomal bifunctional enzyme (L-PBE), mitochondrial trifunctional protein (MTP) subunits alpha

Table 1 Primer sequences used for RT-PCR

Target	Primer sequence	Product size (bp)
ACO	F 5'-GAACTCCAGATAATTGGCACCTA-3'	75
	R 5'-AGTGGTTTCCAAGCCTCGAA-3'	
CPT-1b	F 5'-ATCATGTATCGCCGCAAACT-3'	85
	R 5'-CCATCTGGTAGGAGCACATGG-3'	
CYP2B10	F 5'-CAA TGGGGA ACG TTG GAA GA-3'	176
	R 5'-TGATGCACTGGAAGAGGA AC-3'	
CYP3A11	F 5'-CTCAATGGTGTGTATATCCCC-3'	423
	R 5'-CCGATGTTCTTAGACACTGCC-3'	
CYP4A10	F 5'-AGTGTCTCTGCTCTAAGCC-3'	180
	R 5'-CCCAAAGAACCAGTGAAA-3'	
Ketoacyl thiolase	F 5'-GCATCCCAGAGACTGTACCTTT-3'	202
	R 5'-GTCTCTGGCCTTCTCGTTCT-3'	
L-PBE	F 5'-TGGCTCTTGGAGGAGGACTAG A-3'	125
	R 5'-AAGCTGCGTTCCTCTTGCA-3'	
MPT-α	F 5'-GGCAGTCTCAGTCGCTTCTC-3'	240
	R 5'-GCACTCCTGATTTGGTCGTT-3'	
MPT-β	F 5'-AGAGCTGCACTTTCGGGTTT-3'	202
	R 5'-CTGTGGTCATGGCTTGGTTT-3'	
PPAR-α	F 5'-GTACGGTGT GTATGAAGCCATCTT-3'	76
	R 5'-GCCGTACGCGATCAGCAT-3'	
Urate oxidase	F 5'-ACCTCCCGTCATTCACTCT-3'	438
	R 5'-ACTGTCCCTGTTATTTTGCC-3'	

ACO: Acetyl-CoA oxidase; CPT1: Carnitine palmitoyltransferase; Ketoacyl thiolase: Peroxisomal 3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase; L-PBE: L-peroxisomal bifunctional enzyme; MTP: Mitochondrial trifunctional protein subunits alpha and beta; PPAR-α: Peroxisome proliferators-activated receptor-alpha.

and bet, peroxisome proliferators-activated receptor-alpha (PPAR-α) as previously described[22]. Primers used are listed in Table 1. 18S primers (Ambion, Austin TX) were used as a control for RNA isolation and integrity. All PCR products were confirmed by gel electrophoresis. Real-time PCR was performed using the LightCycler (Roche Diagnostics, Mannheim, Germany) and SYBR green as the fluorophore (Molecular probes). The results were expressed as a ratio of product copies per milliliter to copies per milliliter of housekeeping gene 18S from the same RNA (respective cDNA) sample and PCR run.

Statistical analysis

All data represent at least three independent experiments and are expressed as mean ± SE of the mean. Differences between groups were compared using Student *t*-tests and one-way analysis of variance with post hoc Dunnett test was used for multiple comparisons. $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Stimulating CAR target genes in the MCD diet-fed mouse by TCPOBOP

CYP2B10 and CYP3A11 have been identified as CAR target genes[10,23,24]. Therefore, to determine if TCPOBOP activates CAR in the MCD diet-fed mouse, expression of these genes was examined. When TCPOBOP treatment was administered to the MCD diet-fed mice, expressions of both CYP2B10 and CYP3A11 increased (Figure 1A and B). We also observed 45-fold and 30-fold elevations in CYP2B10 mRNA level in TCPOBOP-treated standard

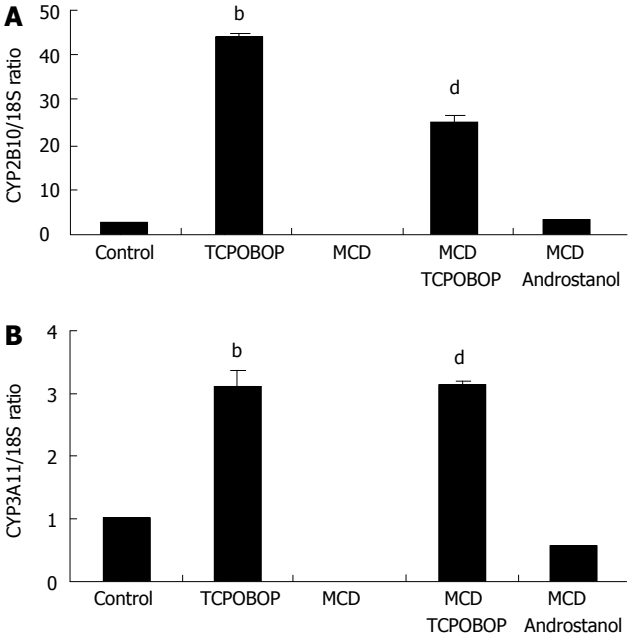


Figure 1 Over-expression of CAR target genes in MCD diet-fed mice treated with TCPOBOP. CAR activation was assessed by measuring CYP2B10 and CYP3A11 (CAR target genes) expression in whole liver from vehicle-treated and TCPOBOP-treated chow-fed and MCD diet-fed mice. Expression was measured by real-time PCR and normalized as a ratio using 18S mRNA as housekeeping genes. A value of 1 for this ratio was arbitrarily assigned to the data obtained from vehicle-treated $CAR^{+/+}$ mice. (**A**) CYP2B10 and (**B**) CYP3A11 mRNA expressions were increased in TCPOBOP-treated (3 mg/kg ip for 3 d) chow-fed mice ($^bP < 0.01$ for CYP2B10 and CYP3A11 compared to control) and MCD diet-fed mice ($^dP < 0.01$ for CYP2B10 and CYP3A11 compared to untreated). This phenomenon was abated by treatment with a CAR inhibitor androstanol (100 mg/kg ip) daily for 3 d at the starting of weeks one and two of the MCD diet (total of 6 injections), ($n = 5$ in each group).

diet-fed mice and MCD diet-fed mice, respectively. CYP3A11 mRNA levels were also similarly increased in TCPOBOP-treated animals. Administration of the CAR inverse agonist, androstanol[10,25], did not alter expression of these gene products (Figure 1A and B). Androstanol was, therefore, used as a negative control for CAR target genes in this model, as it blocks basal activity of CAR[26]. Unexpectedly, CYP2B10 and CYP3A11 mRNA levels remained elevated for 2 wk after initial TCPOBOP administration, mRNA expression of these target enzymes began to decrease by week three (down to 7-fold elevation) and further decreased by week four (down to 6-fold elevation) (data not shown). This data illustrates that TCPOBOP is a potent CAR agonist in the fatty liver and its effects are long-lasting after initial treatment.

Effects of TCPOBOP on hepatic and serum lipid content in MCD diet-fed mice

Animals treated with TCPOBOP and fed the MCD diet for 2 wk had 25% less hepatic steatosis than animals fed the MCD diet alone (Figure 2A). Interestingly, MCD diet-fed animals treated with androstanol had 15% more hepatic steatosis per surface area than untreated MCD diet-fed littermates. Of note, the fat pattern observed in the androstanol-MCD group was homogenously macrovesicular, where in untreated MCD diet-fed animals, the steatosis pattern was heterogeneous with both

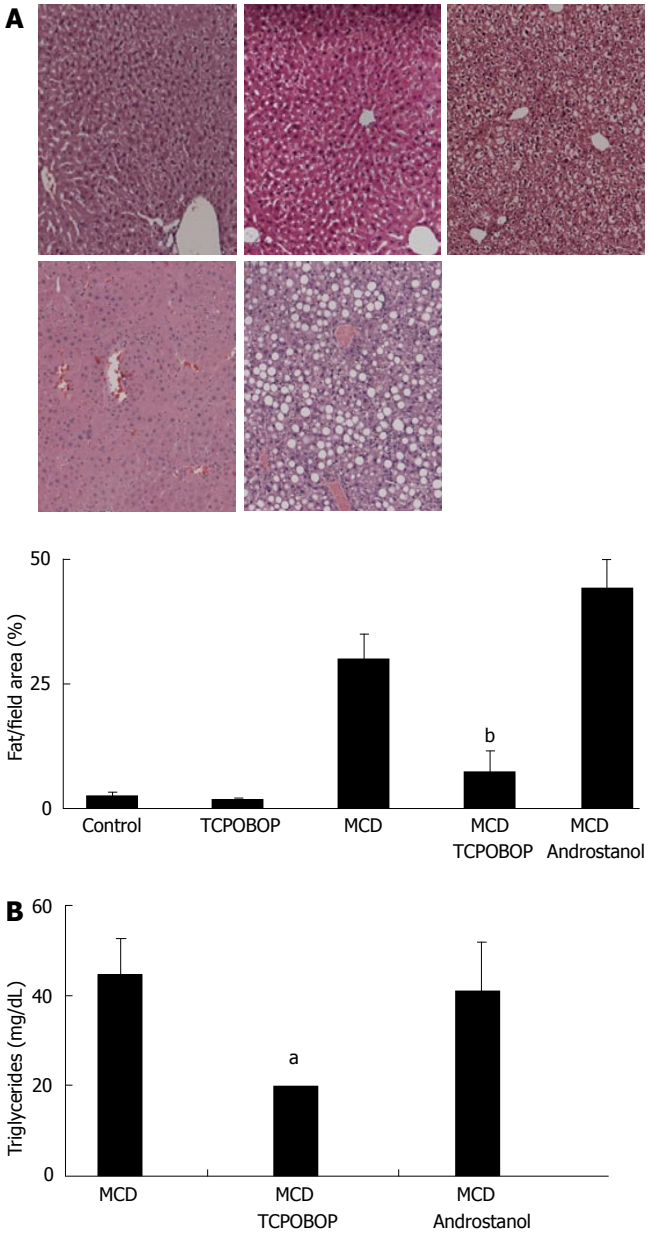


Figure 2 Hepatic and serum fat content reduced by TCPOBOP treatment in the MCD diet-fed mice. (**A**) Top panel, from left to right: Fixed liver specimens from vehicle-treated chow-fed mice, TCPOBOP-treated (3 mg/kg ip for 3 d) chow-fed mice, vehicle-treated (corn oil) MCD diet-fed diet mice for 2 wk, TCPOBOP-treated MCD diet-fed mice for 2 wk; CAR inhibitor, androstanol-treated MCD diet-fed mice for 2 wk were stained by conventional H&E. Lower panel: Quantitation of hepatic fat content by Oil red O staining. Note the marked reduction of hepatic fat in the TCPOBOP-treated MCD diet-fed mice (^{b}P = 0.001); (**B**) Serum triglyceride levels from mice fed the MCD diet for 2 wk with either TCPOBOP or androstanol treatment. Treatment with TCPOBOP reduced serum triglyceride levels by half (^{a}P = 0.03).

microvesicular and macrovesicular steatosis. Administration of TCPOBOP to the MCD diet-fed animals also markedly lowered serum triglyceride levels by 2-fold (Figure 2B). As expected, treatment with androstanol did not alter serum triglyceride levels. Collectively, these data demonstrate that TCPOBOP treatment decreased hepatic fat accumulation and improved serum triglyceride levels.

Modulation of hepatic expression of genes involved in fatty acid oxidation by TCPOBOP

The reduction in hepatic steatosis was consistent with stimulation of fatty acid oxidation by TCPOBOP. Therefore, we evaluated the effect of TCPOBOP on expression of several target genes involved in fatty acid oxidation (Table 2). In the liver, microsomal, mitochondrial and peroxisomal fatty acid oxidation systems are regulated by PPAR-α. PPAR-α mRNA expression levels were not altered by treatment with TCPOBOP in the MCD diet-fed animal (data not shown). However, CYP4A10 and CYP4A14, target enzymes for PPAR-α involved in the microsomal ω-oxidation system, were altered by TCPOBOP administration (Table 2). CYP4a10 mRNA expression was increased 4-fold ($P < 0.001$), while, CYP4A14 mRNA expression was actually decreased by TCPOBOP treatment ($P < 0.01$). L-PBE and peroxisomal 3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase (ketoacyl thiolase), genes involved in peroxisomal β-oxidation were also significantly modified by TCPOBOP. mRNA expression was increased 6-fold for L-PBE, ($P < 0.001$) and 2-fold for ketoacyl thiolase ($P < 0.05$), when compared to MCD diet-fed untreated animals (Table 2). Two key genes involved in mitochondrial β-oxidation, carnitine palmitoyltransferase (CPT1) and mitochondrial trifunctional protein (MTP), showed no significant difference between TCPOBOP-treated and -untreated MCD diet-fed mice. These data demonstrated a PPAR-α-like effect on microsomal ω-oxidation and peroxisomal β-oxidation by TCPOBOP, which may confer protection against steatosis in the MCD diet-fed animal.

Table 2 Effect of TCPOBOP on genes involved in fatty acid oxidation

Type of fatty acid oxidation	Gene	MCD	MCD-TCPOBOP[a]	Fold-change	*P* value
ω-oxidation	CYP4A10	1.40 ± 1.69	6.07 ± 1.73	4.3	0.001
(ER)	CYP4A14	0.81 ± 0.04	0.07 ± 0.02	-11.6	0.008
β-oxidation	L-PBE	0.07 ± 0.01	0.39 ± 0.01	5.6	0.0004
(peroxisome)	Ketoacyl thiolase	0.12 ± 0.03	0.28 ± 0.06	2.3	0.04
	ACO	0.25 ± 0.14	0.32 ± 0.08	1.3	NS
	Urate oxidase	0.29 ± 0.02	0.16 ± 0.02	-1.8	NS
β-oxidation	CPT1	0.79 ± 0.21	0.77 ± 0.19	-1.0	NS
(mitochondria)	MTP-α	0.60 ± 0.30	0.88 ± 0.71	1.5	NS
	MTP-β	0.50 ± 0.40	0.59 ± 0.07	1.2	NS

Values are expressed as mRNA expression/18S ratio ± SD. [a]Animals fed methionine choline-deficient (MCD) diet for 2 wk and pre-treated with the CAR agonist, TCPOBOP (3 mg/kg ip for 3 d at starting of diet). NS: Not significant; ER: Endoplasmic reticulum; L-PBE: L-peroxisomal bifunctional enzyme; ACO; Acetyl-CoA oxidase; Ketoacyl thiolase: Peroxisomal 3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase; CPT1: Carnitine palmitoyltransferase; MTP: Mitochondrial trifunctional protein subunits alpha and beta.

Alteration of apoptosis and inflammation in the MCD diet-fed animals by TCPOBOP treatment

Although TCPOBOP reduced hepatic steatosis, this reduction may or may not be sufficient to attenuate liver inflammation. Therefore, we assessed the effect of TCPOBOP on hepatocyte apoptosis and its effect on inflammation by quantitating macrophage/Kupffer cell numbers. Apoptosis was assessed by quantitating TUNEL- and caspase 3/7-positive cells. TUNEL- and caspase 3/7-positive cells were reduced in TCPOBOP-treated MCD diet-fed mice; this reduction of apoptosis was not observed with androstanol treatment (Figure 3A and B). Hepatic inflammation was assessed by

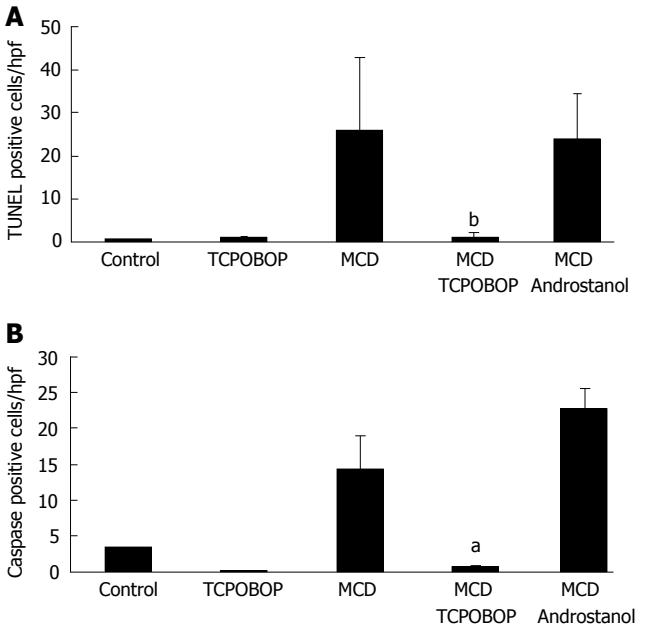


Figure 3 Hepatocyte apoptosis is attenuated by TCPOBOP in the MCD-diet fed animal. (**A** and **B**) Fixed liver specimens were analyzed by TUNEL and immunofluorescence for active caspase 3/7 to identify apoptotic liver cells. The percent/field area of TUNEL- (^bP = 0.01) and active caspase 3/7-positive cells (^aP = 0.03) were significantly higher in vehicle-treated MCD diet-fed mice than TCPOBOP-treated (3 mg/kg ip for 3d) MCD diet-fed mice (n = 5 in each group).

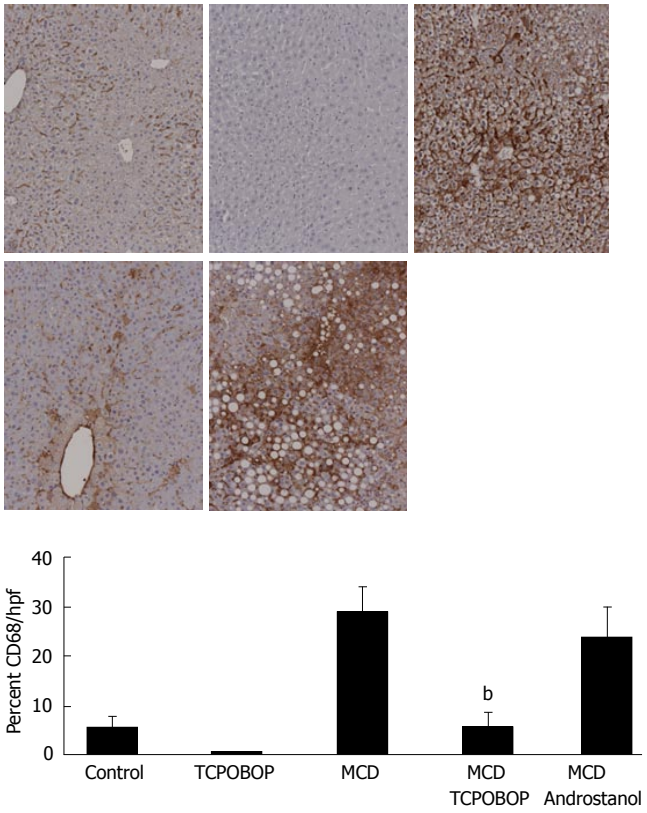


Figure 4 Hepatic inflammation attenuated by TCPOBOP treatment in the MCD diet-fed mice. Top panel: Representative photomicrographs of immunohistochemistry for CD68, a marker of Kupffer cells; Lower panel: The percentage of CD68-positive areas in the liver sections was quantitated using digital image analysis. Immunoreactivity for CD68 was significantly reduced in TCPOBOP-treated MCD diet-fed mice as compared with vehicle- and androstanol-treated mice (^bP = 0.002) (n = 5 in each group).

immunohistochemical staining for CD68, a marker for macrophage/Kupffer cells[27] (Figure 4). CD68-positive cells were less abundant in the MCD diet-fed mice treated with TCPOBOP as compared with the untreated mice on MCD diet; androstanol treatment did not reduce the number of CD68 immunoreactive cells. Consistent with these findings, leukotriene B4 (LTB4), a potent chemotactic agent that initiates, sustains and amplifies the inflammatory response, was also reduced in TCPOBOP-treated MCD diet-fed animals (55.6 ± 2.8 pg/mL) as compared to untreated MCD diet-fed mice (266.9 ± 12.1 pg/mL) (P = 0.001). These results suggest that TCPOBOP pre-treatment abrogates apoptosis and inflammation induced by the MCD diet.

DISCUSSION

The principle findings of this study relate to the effect of CAR modulation of steatohepatitis. The observations suggest TCPOBOP stimulation of CAR in the MCD diet-fed mice model of NASH: (1) reduces hepatic steatosis; (2) increases expression of genes involved in microsomal ω-oxidation and peroxisomal β-oxidation pathways; (3) and reduces hepatic inflammation.

We utilized the MCD animal model of steatosis for this study. The MCD diet stimulates steatosis by inhibition of fatty acid oxidation[15]. This animal model of hepatic steatosis is unique in that mice fed the MCD diet develop inflammation, thereby mimicking human NASH. Recently, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor α (PPAR-α) agonists have been shown to be useful in ameliorating steatohepatitis induced by the MCD diet in mice by increasing genes involved in fatty acid oxidation[28,29]. PPAR-α is a transcription factor belonging to the nuclear receptor superfamily (NRSF) that increases hepatic uptake and breakdown of fatty acids by up-regulating genes involved in peroxisomal and mitochondrial β-oxidation and microsomal ω-oxidation[5]. In our current study, TCPOBOP administration demonstrated a PPAR-α-like effect on fatty acid microsomal ω-oxidation and peroxisomal β-oxidation enzymes, by increasing expression of CYP4A10, L-PBE and 3-ketoacyl-CoA thiolase. Our observations are consistent with findings from other studies in which protection from hepatic steatosis was afforded by changes in fatty acid microsomal ω-oxidation and peroxisomal β-oxidation without alteration of genes involved in the mitochondrial β-oxidation pathway[30]. These results indicate that upregulation of peroxisomal and microsomal enzymes was primarily responsible for the CAR-dependent reduction in hepatic steatosis.

Our data indicated that CAR activation by TCPOBOP had a PPAR-α-like effect on enhancing expression of genes involved in fatty acid oxidation. How CAR activation mimics PPAR-α activation is unclear, but suggests a potential interaction between the two nuclear receptors. CAR binds to its cognate DNA motif as a heterodimer with the retinoid X receptor (RXR), which serves as a common heterodimerization partner for other nuclear receptors in the superfamily, such as PPAR-α, pregnane X receptor (PXR), liver X receptor (LXR), and farnesol

X receptor (FXR)[31]. Although evidence exists for cross-talk between nuclear receptors of this superfamily[32,33], it is unknown if there is a direct link between CAR and PPAR-α activation. CAR could potentially bind to PPAR-α/RXR heterodimer, as LXR has been shown to bind directly to the PPAR-α/RXR complex[34]. This may afford CAR's ability to enhance expression of PPAR-α target genes involved in fatty acid oxidation. CAR has been shown to increase expression of gene targets otherwise thought to be regulated by other nuclear receptors. Recent experiments have illustrated CAR's ability to activate CYP3A, normally thought as the target of PXR[35]. Further studies are necessary to define the nature of the potential cross-talk between CAR and PPAR-α.

Apoptosis of markedly steatotic hepatocytes may incite the inflammatory response in NASH[36]. Apoptotic markers were reduced in TCPOBOP-treated MCD diet-fed animals in the present study. Indeed, previous work by us[13] has demonstrated CAR to have anti-apoptotic properties. In these studies, CAR activation by TCPOBOP depleted hepatocytes of the pro-apoptotic proteins Bak and Bax and increased expression of the potent anti-apoptotic protein Mcl-1 by directly promoting Mcl-1 transcription. These CAR-dependent processes rendered the liver resistant to death receptor-induced liver injury by Fas. The steatotic liver is highly susceptible to Fas-mediated apoptosis[37]. Perhaps, the CAR-induced resistance to Fas or other death ligands, such as tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), accounts for its cytoprotective effects on the MCD diet-fed mouse. Finally, we noted that CAR can modify bile acid metabolism, and the role of bile acids in lipotoxicity remains unexplored[38].

The accumulation of fat in hepatocytes (steatosis) and the onset of steatohepatitis may reflect successive stages in fatty liver disease. The "two-hit" hypothesis postulates that the steatotic liver is susceptible to secondary insults including vulnerability to reactive oxygen species, tumor necrosis factor-α and other cytokines, which ultimately culminates in a sustained inflammatory response[39]. TCPOBOP treatment of MCD diet-fed mice resulted in a marked reduction in steatosis as well as inflammation. CAR-stimulated MCD diet-fed animals had decreased hepatic macrophage/Kupffer cell numbers and less circulating serum leukotriene B4 (LTB4). LTB4 is a potent chemotactic agent that initiates, sustains and amplifies the inflammatory response. Catabolism of LTB4 occurs in hepatocytes, as the liver is the principle organ for clearance of LTB4 from circulating blood[40]. In the liver, degradation of the fatty acid-like derivative LTB4 is modulated by PPAR-α regulation of microsomal ω-oxidation and peroxisomal β-oxidation pathways. Upregulation of PPAR-α-regulated genes involved in fatty acid oxidation by CAR activation may have attributed to a reduction in the inflammatory response, in part by enhancing LTB4 hepatic clearance.

In summary, our findings suggest that CAR activation is sufficient to attenuate hepatic steatosis, apoptosis and inflammation in the MCD diet-fed mice. The CAR-dependent PPAR-α-like stimulation of genes involved in microsomal ω-oxidation and peroxisomal β-oxidation pathways may, in part, be responsible for the hepatic cytoprotective effects observed in this model. These data also implicate a mechanistic link between fatty acid oxidation, hepatocyte apoptosis and Kupffer cell infiltration or inflammation. These preclinical studies suggest the employment of CAR agonists in the treatment of fatty liver diseases merits further attention.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We appreciate the excellent secretarial service provided by Erin Bungum.

COMMENTS

Background

Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) is a progressive spectrum of fatty liver disease for which there are limited therapeutic options. Apoptosis or programmed cellular death is a prominent histopathologic feature of NASH and correlates with disease severity. Recently, the constitutive androstane receptor (CAR), a nuclear receptor, has been reported to promote hepatic cytoprotection against apoptosis. Therefore, we hypothesized that CAR may ameliorate apoptosis induced by NASH.

Research frontiers

The incidence of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis is increasing with the rise in obesity over the last decade. New therapeutic regimens to slow down the process of fibrosis and cirrhosis in these patients will be important.

Innovations and breakthroughs

There is a prominent role for CAR cytoprotection against Fas-mediated hepatocyte injury *via* a mechanism involving upregulation of Mcl-1 (anti-apoptotic proteins) and, likely, downregulation of Bax and Bak (pro-apoptotic proteins).

Applications

At this time the use of CAR agonists to reduce the liver injury caused by NASH-induced hepatocyte apoptosis is still in its early phase of development. We need more data to fully evaluate its role in NASH.

Terminology

CAR is highly expressed in the liver and the small intestine, two key tissues expressing xenobiotic metabolizing enzymes, and mediates the induction of their expression by the widely used antiepileptic drug, phenobarbital (PB) and the potent synthetic inducer 1,4-bis-[2-(3,5,-dichloropyridyloxy)] benzene (TCPOBOP). TCPOBOP is an agonist ligand for CAR. PB induces its nuclear translocation, which results in increased expression of CAR target genes. The nuclear receptor, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor alpha (PPAR-α), mediates many, if not all, of the adaptive consequences of peroxisome proliferator exposure in the liver, including alteration in lipid metabolism genes, hepatomegaly, and increases in liver tumors. Apoptosis is executed by caspases, a family of proteases that sequentially disassemble a cell. The pathways leading to caspase activation are dependent on the cytotoxic stimulus. Cytotoxic stress activates caspases by initiating signaling pathways that converge on the Bcl-2 family of proteins. After apoptotic stimulation, changes in the balance between pro- and anti-apoptotic members of this family lead to alteration of mitochondrial pore structure or integrity and permeabilization and release of proteins that promote cell death.

Peer review

This paper describes a series of experiments investigating the modulation of the CAR of steatotohepatitis in experimental rat model of NASH. The paper is well written and the methodology seems adequate. There are some issues that have to be addressed.

REFERENCES

1 **Angulo P**. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **346**: 1221-1231

2 **Bacon BR**, Farahvash MJ, Janney CG, Neuschwander-Tetri

BA. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: an expanded clinical entity. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 1103-1109
3 **Browning JD**, Horton JD. Molecular mediators of hepatic steatosis and liver injury. *J Clin Invest* 2004; **114**: 147-152
4 **Reddy JK**, Rao MS. Lipid metabolism and liver inflammation. II. Fatty liver disease and fatty acid oxidation. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2006; **290**: G852-G858
5 **Waxman DJ**. P450 gene induction by structurally diverse xenochemicals: central role of nuclear receptors CAR, PXR, and PPAR. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 1999; **369**: 11-23
6 **Uppal H**, Toma D, Saini SP, Ren S, Jones TJ, Xie W. Combined loss of orphan receptors PXR and CAR heightens sensitivity to toxic bile acids in mice. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 168-176
7 **Huang W**, Zhang J, Chua SS, Qatanani M, Han Y, Granata R, Moore DD. Induction of bilirubin clearance by the constitutive androstane receptor (CAR). *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 4156-4161
8 **Huang W**, Zhang J, Moore DD. A traditional herbal medicine enhances bilirubin clearance by activating the nuclear receptor CAR. *J Clin Invest* 2004; **113**: 137-143
9 **Chawla A**, Repa JJ, Evans RM, Mangelsdorf DJ. Nuclear receptors and lipid physiology: opening the X-files. *Science* 2001; **294**: 1866-1870
10 **Yamazaki Y**, Kakizaki S, Horiguchi N, Takagi H, Mori M, Negishi M. Role of nuclear receptor CAR in carbon tetrachloride-induced hepatotoxicity. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 5966-5972
11 **Inoue K**, Borchers CH, Negishi M. Cohesin protein SMC1 represses the nuclear receptor CAR-mediated synergistic activation of a human P450 gene by xenobiotics. *Biochem J* 2006; **398**: 125-133
12 **Ledda-Columbano GM**, Pibiri M, Concas D, Molotzu F, Simbula G, Cossu C, Columbano A. Sex difference in the proliferative response of mouse hepatocytes to treatment with the CAR ligand, TCPOBOP. *Carcinogenesis* 2003; **24**: 1059-1065
13 **Baskin-Bey ES**, Huang W, Ishimura N, Isomoto H, Bronk SF, Braley K, Craig RW, Moore DD, Gores GJ. Constitutive androstane receptor (CAR) ligand, TCPOBOP, attenuates Fas-induced murine liver injury by altering Bcl-2 proteins. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 252-262
14 **Huang W**, Zhang J, Washington M, Liu J, Parant JM, Lozano G, Moore DD. Xenobiotic stress induces hepatomegaly and liver tumors via the nuclear receptor constitutive androstane receptor. *Mol Endocrinol* 2005; **19**: 1646-1653
15 **Koteish A**, Mae Diehl A. Animal models of steatohepatitis. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2002; **16**: 679-690
16 **Ghoshal AK**, Ahluwalia M, Farber E. The rapid induction of liver cell death in rats fed a choline-deficient methionine-low diet. *Am J Pathol* 1983; **113**: 309-314
17 **Hausman GJ**. Techniques for studying adipocytes. *Stain Technol* 1981; **56**: 149-154
18 **Baskin-Bey ES**, Canbay A, Bronk SF, Werneburg N, Guicciardi ME, Nyberg SL, Gores GJ. Cathepsin B inactivation attenuates hepatocyte apoptosis and liver damage in steatotic livers after cold ischemia-warm reperfusion injury. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **288**: G396-G402
19 **Weller CL**, Collington SJ, Brown JK, Miller HR, Al-Kashi A, Clark P, Jose PJ, Hartnell A, Williams TJ. Leukotriene B4, an activation product of mast cells, is a chemoattractant for their progenitors. *J Exp Med* 2005; **201**: 1961-1971
20 **Wuestefeld T**, Klein C, Streetz KL, Beraza N, Schölmerich J, Burgart LJ, Zender L, Kubicka S, Baskin-Bey E, Gores GJ, Manns MP, Trautwein C. Lack of gp130 expression results in more bacterial infection and higher mortality during chronic cholestasis in mice. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 1082-1090
21 **Canbay A**, Higuchi H, Bronk SF, Taniai M, Sebo TJ, Gores GJ. Fas enhances fibrogenesis in the bile duct ligated mouse: a link between apoptosis and fibrosis. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1323-1330
22 **Taimr P**, Higuchi H, Kocova E, Rippe RA, Friedman S, Gores GJ. Activated stellate cells express the TRAIL receptor-2/death receptor-5 and undergo TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 87-95
23 **Tzameli I**, Pissios P, Schuetz EG, Moore DD. The xenobiotic compound 1,4-bis[2-(3,5-dichloropyridyloxy)]benzene is an agonist ligand for the nuclear receptor CAR. *Mol Cell Biol* 2000; **20**: 2951-2958
24 **Zhang J**, Huang W, Chua SS, Wei P, Moore DD. Modulation of acetaminophen-induced hepatotoxicity by the xenobiotic receptor CAR. *Science* 2002; **298**: 422-424
25 **Forman BM**, Tzameli I, Choi HS, Chen J, Simha D, Seol W, Evans RM, Moore DD. Androstane metabolites bind to and deactivate the nuclear receptor CAR-beta. *Nature* 1998; **395**: 612-615
26 **Moore DD**. CAR: three new models for a problem child. *Cell Metab* 2005; **1**: 6-8
27 **Kwekkeboom J**, Kuijpers MA, Bruyneel B, Mancham S, De Baar-Heesakkers E, Ijzermans JN, Bouma GJ, Zondervan PE, Tilanus HW, Metselaar HJ. Expression of CD80 on Kupffer cells is enhanced in cadaveric liver transplants. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2003; **132**: 345-351
28 **Ip E**, Farrell GC, Robertson G, Hall P, Kirsch R, Leclercq I. Central role of PPARalpha-dependent hepatic lipid turnover in dietary steatohepatitis in mice. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 123-132
29 **Ip E**, Farrell G, Hall P, Robertson G, Leclercq I. Administration of the potent PPARalpha agonist, Wy-14,643, reverses nutritional fibrosis and steatohepatitis in mice. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1286-1296
30 **Huong DT**, Takahashi Y, Ide T. Activity and mRNA levels of enzymes involved in hepatic fatty acid oxidation in mice fed citrus flavonoids. *Nutrition* 2006; **22**: 546-552
31 **Mangelsdorf DJ**, Evans RM. The RXR heterodimers and orphan receptors. *Cell* 1995; **83**: 841-850
32 **Columbano A**, Ledda-Columbano GM, Pibiri M, Concas D, Reddy JK, Rao MS. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-alpha mice show enhanced hepatocyte proliferation in response to the hepatomitogen 1,4-bis [2-(3,5-dichloropyrid yloxy)] benzene, a ligand of constitutive androstane receptor. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 262-266
33 **Wei P**, Zhang J, Dowhan DH, Han Y, Moore DD. Specific and overlapping functions of the nuclear hormone receptors CAR and PXR in xenobiotic response. *Pharmacogenomics J* 2002; **2**: 117-126
34 **Miyata KS**, McCaw SE, Patel HV, Rachubinski RA, Capone JP. The orphan nuclear hormone receptor LXR alpha interacts with the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor and inhibits peroxisome proliferator signaling. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 9189-9192
35 **Sueyoshi T**, Kawamoto T, Zelko I, Honkakoski P, Negishi M. The repressed nuclear receptor CAR responds to phenobarbital in activating the human CYP2B6 gene. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274**: 6043-6046
36 **Feldstein AE**, Canbay A, Angulo P, Taniai M, Burgart LJ, Lindor KD, Gores GJ. Hepatocyte apoptosis and fas expression are prominent features of human nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 437-443
37 **Feldstein AE**, Canbay A, Guicciardi ME, Higuchi H, Bronk SF, Gores GJ. Diet associated hepatic steatosis sensitizes to Fas mediated liver injury in mice. *J Hepatol* 2003; **39**: 978-983
38 **Stedman CA**, Liddle C, Coulter SA, Sonoda J, Alvarez JG, Moore DD, Evans RM, Downes M. Nuclear receptors constitutive androstane receptor and pregnane X receptor ameliorate cholestatic liver injury. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 2063-2068
39 **Day CP**, James OF. Steatohepatitis: a tale of two "hits"? *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 842-845
40 **Harper TW**, Garrity MJ, Murphy RC. Metabolism of leukotriene B4 in isolated rat hepatocytes. Identification of a novel 18-carboxy-19,20-dinor leukotriene B4 metabolite. *J Biol Chem* 1986; **261**: 5414-5418

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Wang HF

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5642-5647
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Viral blips during long-term treatment with standard or double dose lamivudine in HBe antigen negative chronic hepatitis B

Gianfranca Stornaiuolo, Maria Stanzione, Giuseppina Brancaccio, Gianluca Cuomo, Vincenza Precone, Sebastiano Di Biase, Francesca M Felaco, Felice Piccinino, Giovanni B Gaeta

Gianfranca Stornaiuolo, Giuseppina Brancaccio, Gianluca Cuomo, Vincenza Precone, Giovanni B Gaeta, Viral Hepatitis Unit, Department of Infectious Diseases, Second University, Naples, Italy
Maria Stanzione, Francesca M Felaco, Felice Piccinino, Infectious Disease Unit, Department of Infectious Diseases, Second University, Naples, Italy
Sebastiano Di Biase, Merigen, Laboratory of Molecular Biology, Naples, Italy
Correspondence to: Giovanni B Gaeta, Professor, Viral Hepatitis Unit, Department of Infectious Diseases, Second University of Naples, Via Cotugno 1, c/o Osp. Gesù e Maria, Naples 80135, Italy. giovannib.gaeta@unina2.it
Telephone: +39-81-5666208
Received: April 24, 2007 Revised: June 15, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To evaluate safety and effect on hepatitis B virus (HBV) suppression of a long-term treatment with lamivudine (LAM) at standard (100 mg/d) or double (200 mg/d) dose in chronic hepatitis B.

METHODS: This was a case study with matched controls (1:3) in patients with chronic hepatitis B with anti-HBe antibodies.

RESULTS: Twelve patients received LAM 200 mg/d and 35 LAM 100 mg/d, for a median of 28 mo. A primary response (PR; i.e., negative HBV-DNA with Amplicor assay) was achieved in 100% of LAM-200 patients and 83% of LAM-100 patients. A virological breakthrough occurred in 16.7 and 24.7%, respectively, of the PR-patients, with the appearance of typical LAM resistance mutations in all but one patient. Viremia blips (i.e., transient HBV-DNA below 80 IU/mL in patients who tested negative at Amplicor assay) were detected using a real time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and occurred in seven out of nine patients with subsequent BT and in four out of 32 patients with end-of-study response (77.7% *vs* 12.5%; $P = 0.001$) at chi-square test). At the end of the study, 51.4% of LAM-100 patients and 83.3% of LAM-200 patients had remained stably HBV-DNA negative. Double-dose LAM was well tolerated.

CONCLUSION: Long-term treatment of anti-HBe positive chronic hepatitis B with double dose lamivudine causes a more profound and stable viral suppression as compared to conventional treatment.

Key words: Lamivudine; Hepatitis B; Chronic; Hepatitis; Polymerase chain reaction

Stornaiuolo G, Stanzione M, Brancaccio G, Cuomo G, Precone V, Di Biase S, Felaco FM, Piccinino F, Gaeta GB. Viral blips during long-term treatment with standard or double dose lamivudine in HBe antigen negative chronic hepatitis B. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5642-5647

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5642.asp

INTRODUCTION

Lamivudine (LAM) treatment has changed the therapeutic approach to chronic hepatitis B (CHB), since it has a potent antiviral effect and an excellent tolerability profile[1-4]. In chronic hepatitis B with anti-HBe antibodies, lamivudine must be administered indefinitely, since drug discontinuation causes an immediate rebound in the vast majority of patients[5,6]. Unfortunately, the drug has a low genetic barrier which causes the emergence of resistant mutants and disease resurgence at a rate of approximately 15% a year[7-10]. In addition, a percentage of patients ranging from 11% to 32% are primary non-responders to treatment[11-14], which limits further the efficacy of lamivudine in this setting.

At present, about 80% of patients with CHB in the Mediterranean area lack HBeAg in serum and present anti-HBe antibodies with the presence of HBV-DNA in serum[15]. This percentage is expanding in other parts of the world[16], due to the control measures against HBV and the subsequent decline in the proportion of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infections in young patients.

Lamivudine is registered for the treatment of chronic hepatitis B at a standard daily dose of 100 mg. This dosage derives from studies which compared the efficacy of 25, 100 and 300 mg/d given for 12-24 wk and found that viral suppression was similar at 100 and 300 mg[17,18]. As a consequence, 100 mg was adopted as the standard of therapy and the potential of higher doses in improving long-term outcomes has never been investigated.

In this pilot study we investigated the feasibility and the effects on viral suppression of a long-term treatment with a daily dose of 200 mg lamivudine in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B compared with matched patients treated with the standard dose.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

The study enrolled consecutive patients with HBeAg-negative, anti-HBe positive CHB between June 1999 and December 2002. The patients had to be negative for anti-HDV, anti-HCV and anti-HIV antibodies and present HBV-DNA in serum at levels $> 2 \times 10^4$ IU/mL. Basal evaluation comprised routine liver function tests, abdominal ultrasound (US) and liver biopsy. Histological specimens were evaluated using the Ishak's scores for necroinflammation and fibrosis[19]; minimal requirements for a specimen to be evaluated were a length of at least 2 cm and the presence of $\geqslant$ 10 portal tracts.

Twelve consecutive patients received lamivudine at the daily dose of 200 mg (LAM 200; 100 mg b.i.d.). As a reference group, we selected three age matched patients for each case, with anti-HBe positive CHB treated in the same period with the standard dose of 100 mg according to an open label, long-term study. In both cases and controls, the therapy was continued indefinitely; the therapy was stopped in patients who did not clear HBV-DNA after 12 mo of treatment. The study was closed on June 30, 2005.

The patients were followed-up monthly, including medical examination and alanine aminotransaminase (ALT) determination; at each visit a serum sample was stored at -40℃ for HBV-DNA testing. An abdominal US was performed every six months. Lamivudine tablets were dispensed directly monthly.

HBV-DNA analysis

Routine quantitative testing for HBV-DNA in serum was performed using Amplicor HBV Monitor (Roche, Branchburg, NJ, USA; detection limit 80 IU/mL).

In addition, analysis of HBV-DNA in serum was performed by the use of a Real Time PCR (RT-PCR) and Sybr Green as a fluorescent intercalating agent of the double strand DNA. The reference standards used for the external calibration were the WHO hepatitis B virus DNA International Standards No. 97/746 and the working reagent HBV No. 98/780, both provided by the National Institute of Biological Standards and Controls. HBV-DNA was extracted from serum by a slightly modified guanidinium thiocyanate method. Briefly, 100 μL of serum or plasma were added to 400 μL of the extraction solution and 0.5 mL of 2-propanol were added to the tube. The mixture was centrifuged for 10 min, then supernatant was removed and pellets washed twice with 70% ethanol. Each sample was dissolved in 50 μL sterile water and 10 μL were used for PCR (sensitivity = 10 IU/mL).

Processed specimens were added to 40 μL of an amplification buffered (pH = 8.0) mixture containing 0.5 μmol/L each of the reverse and forward primers directed toward the highly conserved HBV pre-core/core region and Sybr Green (BMA Molecular Probe), 2.5 IU of Taq Gold (Applied Biosystem) and 0.5 IU of Uracil DNA Glycosylase (Amersham Life Science - USB). The PCR process was carried out with the following amplification cycles: 50℃ for 2 min; 94℃ for 10 min; two cycles, each of 1 min duration, at 94℃, 60℃ and 72℃; 38 cycles at 94℃, 60℃ and 72℃, of 20 s each. Real time detection was performed using a ABI PRISM 7000 Sequence Detection System (Applied Biosystem).

HBV polymerase mutant and HBV genotype assay

Polymerase mutants conferring LAM resistance were detected using a commercial assay (InnoLipa HBV-DR, Innogenetics, Gent, Belgium) in all patients who presented serum HBV-DNA reappearance while on therapy and in those who remained viremic from the beginning of the therapy. HBV genotypes were identified using the INNOLIPA HBV-Genotyping test (Innogenetics, Gent, Belgium).

Therapy outcome definitions

Virological response (VR) to treatment was a fall in HBV-DNA below 80 IU/mL with or without a biochemical response (BR). Patients who remained constantly serum HBV-DNA positive over a 12 mo therapy period were defined as primary non-responders (PNR). A virological breakthrough (VBT) was defined as an increase $\geqslant$ 1 log in serum HBV-DNA in a previous responder patient while continuing LAM therapy; a biochemical breakthrough (BBT) was an ALT elevation above 2 × in a virological BT. An ALT flare was an ALT elevation > 500 U/L. A viral blip was a transient HBV-DNA below 80 IU/mL detected by RT-PCR in patients who tested negative at Amplicor assay. Complete viral suppression was a stably undetectable HBV-DNA in serum using RT-PCR.

Safety

A clinical examination was performed monthly. At the same time, differential blood count and serum biochemistry were performed, including serum amylase, lipase and creatinine phosphokinase (CPK) determination. Any adverse event was registered.

Statistical analysis

The data were analyzed according to an intention to treat procedure. Patients who were lost at follow-up were considered as non-responders. Chi-square and Fisher's exact test were used to analyze categorical variables and Student's *t* test for continuous data. The data were analyzed using SPSS software, version 12. The study was approved by the local Ethics Committee.

RESULTS

Twelve patients received LAM 200 mg/d and 35 patients LAM 100 mg/d (one patient receiving 200 mg LAM was matched with two controls only). The basal characteristics of the patients are reported in Table 1. There was no difference between the groups relating to demographic data and ALT values, serum HBV-DNA values and liver histology. Overall, a liver biopsy taken within 18

Table 1 Baseline characteristics of the patients

	Lam-200	Lam-100	*P*
Number of patients	12	35	NS
Age (median; range)	44.5 (32-60)	44 (23-72)	NS
BMI median (range)	24.3 (23.2-28.7)	25.5 (20.9-34.3)	NS
Gender (M/F)	11/1	26/9	NS
Histology			NS
Minimal-Mild	1 (14%)	6 (22%)	
Moderate-Severe	3 (43%)	7 (26%)	
Cirrhosis	3 (43%)	14 (52%)	
ALT (x n.v.)			NS
< 3	4 (33.3%)	16 (50%)	
3-5	3 (25%)	5 (15.6%)	
> 5	5 (41.7%)	11 (34.4%)	
HBV-DNA IU/mL median (range)	1.06×10^6 (3.2×10^4-3.8×10^6)	6×10^5 (2.4×10^4-3.5×10^6)	NS
Months of therapy median (range)	28 (8-50)	28 (9-48)	NS

Table 2 Virological responses in the two treatment groups *n* (%)

	Lam-100 (*n* = 35)	Lam-200 (*n* = 12)
Primary responses	29 (82)	12 (100)
Breakthroughs	7 (24.6)	2 (16.6)
End of study responses (amplicor)	22 (62.8)	10 (83.3)
Stably undetectable HBV-DNA by RT-PCR	18 (51.4)[a]	10 (83.3)[a]

[a]*P* = 0.051; 51.4% *vs* 83.3%.

mo before therapy was available in 34 patients; 50% of whom had cirrhosis. In both groups median treatment duration was 28 mo. Based on Roche Monitor assay, a primary VR was observed in all the patients treated with 200 mg lamivudine and in 83% of those treated with the standard regimen (Table 2). In both groups, median HBV-DNA disappearance time was 3 mo and in no patients did HBV-DNA become undetectable at Monitor test later than the sixth months of therapy. Primary non-response was observed in six patients, all belonging to the 100 mg group. In PNRs LAM therapy was discontinued after 12 mo; during treatment, HBV-DNA levels remained above 2×10^4 IU/mL.

During treatment, a VBT was detected in nine patients, of whom two belonged to the 200 mg group (2/12; 16.6%) and seven to the 100 mg group (7/29; 24.1%). A BBT followed in all patients with VBT; in these patients, the ALT values were below 2 × the basal value in eight out of nine patients and in the range of a hepatitis flare in one patient (belonging to 100 mg group). At the end of the study, 63% of the patients in LAM-100 group and 83% in LAM-200 group were still VR (Table 2). None of the basal variables considered in Table 1 was associated with the outcome of the treatments.

In 11 patients who were constantly negative at the HBV-Monitor test, the RT-PCR revealed transient viremia blips below 80 IU/mL. This feature was recorded in seven out of the nine patients who subsequently presented a BT and in four out of the 32 patients with end of study response, the latter belonging to the 100 mg group (Table 3; $P = 0.001$).The negative predictive value and positive predictive value for BT were 0.93 and 0.63, respectively. Viremia blips occurred in 10 out of 29 (34.4%) patients who were initially responders to LAM 100 mg and in one out of 12 (8.4%) of those responding to LAM 200 mg. On the whole, the patients who showed absent or partial viral suppression (i.e., a PNR or a VBT or viral blips) were 17 out of 35 treated with LAM 100 mg and two out of 12 treated with LAM 200 mg ($P = 0.051$).

Lamivudine resistance mutations were researched in 13 cases, five of whom were PNRs and eight BTs (Table 4). None of the primary non responders had detectable mutations at baseline; however, all of them developed rtM204V/I mutant (none with concomitant rtL180M) while continuing LAM therapy, two with an ALT increase after the appearance of the mutation and one with a hepatitis-like flare. Among BT patients, seven presented rtM204V/I (four with concomitant rtL180M) and one patient presented an ALT flare with no detectable mutations. Mutations preceded the clinical BT by one to

Table 3 Viral blips observed during treatment. A viral blip is a transiently detectable viremia below 4×10^2 copies/mL in a responder patient

	Lam 100	Lam 200	Total
Primary responders (*n*)	29	12	41
Viral blips *n* (%)	10 (34.4)	1 (8.3)	11
Breakthroughs no.	7	2	9
Viral blips *n* (%)	6 (85.7)	1 (50)	7 (77.7)[a]
End of study responses (Amplicor)	22	10	32
Viral blips *n* (%)	4 (18.2)	0	4 (12.5)[a]

[a]Viral blips among patients with breakthroughs *vs* viral blips among patients with end of study response; 77.7% *vs* 12.5%; *P* = 0.001.

Table 4 Lamivudine resistance mutations and HBV genotypes in patients with a virological breakthrough or primary non-response

Patients	Genotype	Baseline	Mutation (mo)
Breakthrough			
[1]1	D	Wt	rtM204V (11)
[1]2	D	Wt	None (19)
[2]3	D	Wt	rtM204V (24)
[1]4	A	Wt	rtM204V rtL180M (28)
[1]5	D	Wt	rtM204V rtL180M (32)
[1]6	D	Wt	rtM204V rtL180M (19)
[1]7	D	Wt	rtM204V rtL180M (21)
[1]8	D	Wt	rtM204I (12)
Primary non-response			
[1]1	D	Wt	rtM204I (9)
[1]2	D	Wt	rtM204V (11)
[1]3	D	Wt	rtM204I (11)
[1]4	D	Wt	rtM204I (9)
[1]5	D	Wt	rtM204I (12)

Treatment group: [1]LAM:100; [2]LAM:200.

eight months. HBV genotypes were detected in 24 patients, all but one were genotype D.

Lamivudine was well tolerated; one patient belonging to the 100 mg group discontinued the treatment due to an increase in serum amylase to eight times the UNL. No serious adverse events were recorded in either treatment group.

DISCUSSION

This study was designed to check whether a long-term, double dose lamivudine treatment is feasible in patients with chronic hepatitis B and has the potential for a more profound and stable suppression of viral replication.

Basically, lamivudine pharmacokinetic is subjected to significant individual variability[20-22]. Plasma concentrations of lamivudine do not reflect its antiviral activity, since it depends on the 5-triphosphate anabolite of the drug, which is formed through an intracellular, saturable enzymatic process. Higher dosage of lamivudine produced higher intracellular lamivudine triphosphate concentrations. The intracellular half-life of active compound varies from 17 to 19 h in hepatic cell lines and from 10.5 to 15.5 h in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs)[23,24] which suggested a dose interval of 12 h in HIV patients. In our study giving daily LAM 200 mg in two refracted doses may have enhanced intracellular active drug availability and even reached adequate anti-viral concentrations in extrahepatic sites of HBV replication.

In chronic hepatitis B, lamivudine doses ranging from 25 to 300 mg/d were used obtaining a steady viral inhibition at 100 mg[17,18] as measured by a hybridization assay. Looking at long term efficacy, Yuen *et al*[25] found no difference in the cumulative incidence of resistance mutations between patients treated with lamivudine 100 mg/d and those who received 25 mg/d for one to three years, though viral suppression was less effective at lamivudine 25 mg than at lamivudine 100 mg. This suggests that viral suppression may be sub-optimal even at the dose of 100 mg and is in keeping with our results at 100 and 200 mg.

In our study, the use of a sensitive PCR method highlighted that viral suppression was less efficient at 100 mg/d and this was the background for mutant selection and viral breakthroughs. Indeed, some patients classified as VR by Monitor assay had viremia blips below 80 IU/mL. This phenomenon was significantly associated with subsequent stable resurgence of viral replication and was mostly observed in patients receiving 100 mg lamivudine. At the end of the study a stable viral suppression was achieved in 83% of the patients receiving 200 mg LAM and in 51% of those treated at 100 mg/d.

There are some practical consequences from these observations, which are summarized in Figure 1. First of all, patients under treatment with lamivudine require strict follow-up with a high-sensitivity PCR assay, in order to detect, as soon as possible, even low level viremia. Secondly, an early change in therapeutic strategy is advisable for patients with viremia blips, by switching to adefovir or to entecavir[26-28], in order to prevent virological and biochemical BTs. Finally, patients with undetectable HBV-DNA and no viremia blips are candidates for continuing long-term lamivudine monotherapy, since the absence of viremia blips is predictive of long-term response.

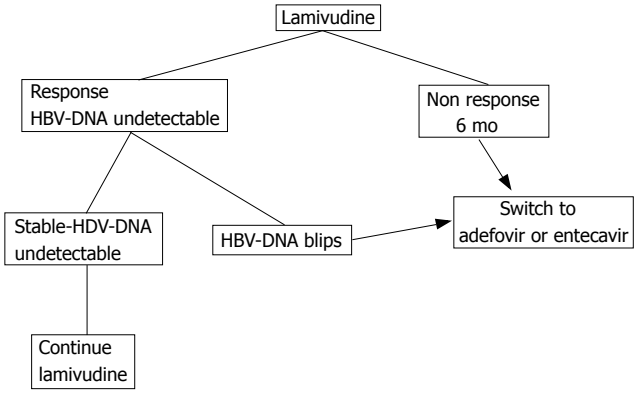


Figure 1 Flow-chart for patients under lamivudine treatment.

Genotype D of HBV was largely prevalent in our series and this raises the question as to whether the results are applicable to different HBV genotypes. There is evidence that response rates to Peg-interferon depend on HBV genotypes while less clear-cut results were obtained with anti-HBV analogs[1,29-31].

None of the primary non-response was associated with a pre-existing mutation, supporting the concept that the pharmacokinetic of the drug may play an important role in primary non-response and that higher drug doses may force this pharmacokinetic defect. Alternatively, PNR patients might harbour viral variants not detected by our method. Lamivudine resistance mutations were detected in all but one patient with virological BT.

In all primary non-responders continuing the treatment caused the appearance of resistance mutations, with further ALT elevation. From a practical point of view, patients who do not respond to a standard lamivudine dose should stop the treatment within the first six months (Figure 1), since a response after this period is unlikely. There is no data on early shifting to a higher lamivudine dose after an initial non-response to a standard dose.

In conclusion, our results indicate that the patients under lamivudine should be monitored using a high sensitivity PCR assay. An extended treatment with a double dose of lamivudine is feasible in chronic hepatitis B, and has the potential for a more pronounced viral suppression than a standard dose. Since lamivudine is a well-used, non-toxic and non-expensive anti-viral agent, these data should stimulate more powered studies aimed at optimizing treatment strategies.

COMMENTS

Background

Sustained viral suppression is the main goal of antiviral therapy in chronic hepatitis B. Lamivudine was the first antiviral drug approved for HBV treatment, at the standard daily dose of 100 mg. Although it was safe and potent, it caused the emergence of drug-resistant viral strains, at a rate of about 15% a year. At present, other antiviral drugs against HBV are available (adefovir, entecavir, telbivudine) that show a higher genetic barrier than lamivudine. Recent guidelines do not recommend the use of lamivudine as first line therapy in chronic hepatitis B.

Research frontiers

Thousands of patients with chronic hepatitis B are under lamivudine treatment.

Furthermore, lamivudine is the cheapest anti-HBV drug. After five years of continued treatment approximately 25% of the patients have an undetectable HBV-DNA. Can we improve the efficacy of lamivudine and predict the long-term response to treatment? There is a lack of studies with a higher than standard dosage of lamivudine in immunocompetent patients. This article examines the possibility of prolonged treatment with double daily dose of lamivudine (200 mg) and the predictive value of close monitoring of serum HBV-DNA using a highly sensitive real-time PCR.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Patients treated with lamivudine 200 mg/d achieved a more rapid primary response and a more profound and long-lasting viral suppression. In fact, the use of a sensitive PCR for HBV-DNA detection showed that transient low viremia levels ("viral blips") were more frequently detected in patients receiving lamivudine 100 mg and predicted a virological breakthrough and the emergence of lamivudine resistance mutations.

Applications

Patients under lamivudine treatment require a strict follow-up using a highly sensitive PCR. Real time PCR has a lower detection limit of 10 IU/mL and seems the best method for this purpose. Detecting even low level viremia during treatment may predict the emergence of resistance mutations. In this case, an early change in therapeutic strategy is advisable as indicated in Figure 1 of the paper. The paper suggests that therapy with double dose lamivudine is feasible and may achieve better results than the standard dose.

Terminology

Virological breakthrough is the increase of at least one log of the plasma viral concentration during anti-viral therapy. In most of the cases it is due to the emergence of viral resistant strains. Biochemical breakthrough is the increase of ALT value that follows the virological breakthrough. Genetic barrier may be defined as the probability of not reaching any resistant escape strains.

Peer review

The aim and content of the study were considered innovative. However, some limits come from the low number of patients enrolled in the 200 mg lamivudine group. As the authors stated, these results should encourage further trials.

REFERENCES

1 **Tillmann HL**. Antiviral therapy and resistance with hepatitis B virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 125-140

2 **Lai CL**, Ching CK, Tung AK, Li E, Young J, Hill A, Wong BC, Dent J, Wu PC. Lamivudine is effective in suppressing hepatitis B virus DNA in Chinese hepatitis B surface antigen carriers: a placebo-controlled trial. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 241-244

3 **Lai CL**, Chien RN, Leung NW, Chang TT, Guan R, Tai DI, Ng KY, Wu PC, Dent JC, Barber J, Stephenson SL, Gray DF. A one-year trial of lamivudine for chronic hepatitis B. Asia Hepatitis Lamivudine Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1998; **339**: 61-68

4 **Tassopoulos NC**, Volpes R, Pastore G, Heathcote J, Buti M, Goldin RD, Hawley S, Barber J, Condreay L, Gray DF. Efficacy of lamivudine in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-negative/hepatitis B virus DNA-positive (precore mutant) chronic hepatitis B.Lamivudine Precore Mutant Study Group. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 889-896

5 **Wong VW**, Chan HL, Wong ML, Tam JS, Leung NW. Clinical course after stopping lamivudine in chronic hepatitis B patients with lamivudine-resistant mutants. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 323-329

6 **Honkoop P**, de Man RA, Niesters HG, Zondervan PE, Schalm SW. Acute exacerbation of chronic hepatitis B virus infection after withdrawal of lamivudine therapy. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 635-639

7 **Lau DT**, Khokhar MF, Doo E, Ghany MG, Herion D, Park Y, Kleiner DE, Schmid P, Condreay LD, Gauthier J, Kuhns MC, Liang TJ, Hoofnagle JH. Long-term therapy of chronic hepatitis B with lamivudine. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 828-834

8 **Lok AS**, Hussain M, Cursano C, Margotti M, Gramenzi A, Grazi GL, Jovine E, Benardi M, Andreone P. Evolution of hepatitis B virus polymerase gene mutations in hepatitis B e antigen-negative patients receiving lamivudine therapy. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 1145-1153

9 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Dimou E, Laras A, Papadimitropoulos V, Hadziyannis SJ. Course of virologic breakthroughs under long-term lamivudine in HBeAg-negative precore mutant HBV liver disease. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 219-226

10 **Liaw YF**, Leung NW, Chang TT, Guan R, Tai DI, Ng KY, Chien RN, Dent J, Roman L, Edmundson S, Lai CL. Effects of extended lamivudine therapy in Asian patients with chronic hepatitis B. Asia Hepatitis Lamivudine Study Group. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 172-180

11 **Hadziyannis SJ**, Papatheodoridis GV, Dimou E, Laras A, Papaioannou C. Efficacy of long-term lamivudine monotherapy in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 847-851

12 **Gaia S**, Marzano A, Smedile A, Barbon V, Abate ML, Olivero A, Lagget M, Paganin S, Fadda M, Niro G, Rizzetto M. Four years of treatment with lamivudine: clinical and virological evaluations in HBe antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **20**: 281-287

13 **Rizzetto M**, Tassopoulos NC, Goldin RD, Esteban R, Santantonio T, Heathcote EJ, Lagget M, Taak NK, Woessner MA, Gardner SD. Extended lamivudine treatment in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 173-179

14 **Di Marco V**, Marzano A, Lampertico P, Andreone P, Santantonio T, Almasio PL, Rizzetto M, Craxì A. Clinical outcome of HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B in relation to virological response to lamivudine. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 883-891

15 **Gaeta GB**, Stornaiuolo G, Precone DF, Lobello S, Chiaramonte M, Stroffolini T, Colucci G, Rizzetto M. Epidemiological and clinical burden of chronic hepatitis B virus/hepatitis C virus infection. A multicenter Italian study. *J Hepatol* 2003; **39**: 1036-1041

16 **Funk ML**, Rosenberg DM, Lok AS. World-wide epidemiology of HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B and associated precore and core promoter variants. *J Viral Hepat* 2002; **9**: 52-61

17 **Dienstag JL**, Perrillo RP, Schiff ER, Bartholomew M, Vicary C, Rubin M. A preliminary trial of lamivudine for chronic hepatitis B infection. *N Engl J Med* 1995; **333**: 1657-1661

18 **Nevens F**, Main J, Honkoop P, Tyrrell DL, Barber J, Sullivan MT, Fevery J, De Man RA, Thomas HC. Lamivudine therapy for chronic hepatitis B: a six-month randomized dose-ranging study. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 1258-1263

19 **Ishak K**, Baptista A, Bianchi L, Callea F, De Groote J, Gudat F, Denk H, Desmet V, Korb G, MacSween RN. Histological grading and staging of chronic hepatitis. *J Hepatol* 1995; **22**: 696-699

20 **Yuen GJ**, Morris DM, Mydlow PK, Haidar S, Hall ST, Hussey EK. Pharmacokinetics, absolute bioavailability, and absorption characteristics of lamivudine. *J Clin Pharmacol* 1995; **35**: 1174-1180

21 **Johnson MA**, Moore KH, Yuen GJ, Bye A, Pakes GE. Clinical pharmacokinetics of lamivudine. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 1999; **36**: 41-66

22 **Moore KH**, Yuen GJ, Hussey EK, Pakes GE, Eron JJ, Bartlett JA. Population pharmacokinetics of lamivudine in adult human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients enrolled in two phase III clinical trials. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1999; **43**: 3025-3029

23 **Gao WY**, Agbaria R, Driscoll JS, Mitsuya H. Divergent anti-human immunodeficiency virus activity and anabolic phosphorylation of 2',3'-dideoxynucleoside analogs in resting and activated human cells. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 12633-12638

24 **Kewn S**, Veal GJ, Hoggard PG, Barry MG, Back DJ. Lamivudine (3TC) phosphorylation and drug interactions in vitro. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1997; **54**: 589-595

25 **Yuen MF**, Sablon E, Hui CK, Yuan HJ, Decraemer H, Lai CL. Factors associated with hepatitis B virus DNA breakthrough in patients receiving prolonged lamivudine therapy. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 785-791

26 **Schiff ER**, Lai CL, Hadziyannis S, Neuhaus P, Terrault N, Colombo M, Tillmann HL, Samuel D, Zeuzem S, Lilly L,

Rendina M, Villeneuve JP, Lama N, James C, Wulfsohn MS, Namini H, Westland C, Xiong S, Choy GS, Van Doren S, Fry J, Brosgart CL. Adefovir dipivoxil therapy for lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B in pre- and post-liver transplantation patients. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 1419-1427

27 **Lampertico P**, Viganò M, Manenti E, Iavarone M, Lunghi G, Colombo M. Adefovir rapidly suppresses hepatitis B in HBeAg-negative patients developing genotypic resistance to lamivudine. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 1414-1419

28 **Sherman M**, Yurdaydin C, Sollano J, Silva M, Liaw YF, Cianciara J, Boron-Kaczmarska A, Martin P, Goodman Z, Colonno R, Cross A, Denisky G, Kreter B, Hindes R. Entecavir for treatment of lamivudine-refractory, HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 2039-2049

29 **Kramvis A**, Kew MC. Relationship of genotypes of hepatitis B virus to mutations, disease progression and response to antiviral therapy. *J Viral Hepat* 2005; **12**: 456-464

30 **Westland C**, Delaney W, Yang H, Chen SS, Marcellin P, Hadziyannis S, Gish R, Fry J, Brosgart C, Gibbs C, Miller M, Xiong S. Hepatitis B virus genotypes and virologic response in 694 patients in phase III studies of adefovir dipivoxil1. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 107-116

31 **Bonino F**, Marcellin P, Lau GK, Hadziyannis S, Jin R, Piratvisuth T, Germanidis G, Yurdaydin C, Diago M, Gurel S, Lai MY, Brunetto MR, Farci P, Popescu M, McCloud P. Predicting response to peginterferon alpha-2a, lamivudine and the two combined for HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 699-705

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Roberts SE **E- Editor** Lu W

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5648-5653
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Effect of sustained virological response on long-term clinical outcome in 113 patients with compensated hepatitis C-related cirrhosis treated by interferon alpha and ribavirin

Roland El Braks, Nathalie Ganne-Carrié, Hélène Fontaine, Jacques Paries, Véronique Grando-Lemaire, Michel Beaugrand, Stanislas Pol, Jean-Claude Trinchet

Roland El Braks, Nathalie Ganne-Carrié, Véronique Grando-Lemaire, Michel Beaugrand, Jean-Claude Trinchet, Department of Hepatology, Hopital Jean Verdier (AP-HP) and UPRES EA 3409 (University Paris 13), Bondy 93140, France
Hélène Fontaine, Stanislas Pol, Department of Hepatology, Hopital Cochin (AP-HP) and University Paris 5, Paris 75014, France
Jacques Paries, Department of Public Health, Jean Verdier Hospital (AP-HP) and UPRES EA 3409 (University Paris 13), Bondy 93140, France
Correspondence to: Nathalie Ganne-Carrié, Department of Hepatology, Hopital Jean Verdier, Bondy 93140, France. nathalie.ganne@jvr.aphp.fr
Telephone: +33-1-48026280 Fax: +33-1-48026202
Received: June 6, 2007 Revised: August 25, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To assess the long-term clinical benefit of sustained virological response (SVR) in patients with hepatitis C virus (HCV) cirrhosis treated by antiviral therapy using mostly ribavirin plus interferon either standard or pegylated.

METHODS: One hundred and thirteen patients with uncomplicated HCV biopsy-proven cirrhosis, treated by at least one course of antiviral treatment ⩾ 3 mo and followed ⩾ 30 mo were included. The occurrence of clinical events [hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), decompensation and death] was compared in SVR and non SVR patients.

RESULTS: Seventy eight patients received bitherapy and 63 had repeat treatments. SVR was achieved in 37 patients (33%). During a mean follow-up of 7.7 years, clinical events occurred more frequently in non SVR than in SVR patients, with a significant difference for HCC (24/76 *vs* 1/37, $P = 0.01$). No SVR patient died while 20/76 non-SVR did ($P = 0.002$), mainly in relation to HCC (45%).

CONCLUSION: In patients with HCV-related cirrhosis, SVR is associated with a significant decrease in the incidence of HCC and mortality during a follow-up period of 7.7 years. This result is a strong argument to perform and repeat antiviral treatments in patients with compensated cirrhosis.

Key words: Hepatitis C; Cirrhosis; Interferon alpha

Braks RE, Ganne-Carrié N, Fontaine H, Paries J, Grando-Lemaire V, Beaugrand M, Pol S, Trinchet JC. Effect of sustained virological response on long-term clinical outcome in 113 patients with compensated hepatitis C-related cirrhosis treated by interferon alpha and ribavirin. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5648-5653

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5648.asp

INTRODUCTION

In patients with chronic liver diseases, the prognosis strongly depends on the extent of liver fibrosis, as life-threatening complications mainly occur in patients with cirrhosis. In chronic hepatitis C in particular, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is observed only in case of cirrhosis or severe fibrosis (some of them presumably with under diagnosed cirrhosis due to sampling error of liver biopsy). In patients with compensated hepatitis C virus (HCV)-related cirrhosis, the annual incidence of HCC, decompensation and death reach around 3%, 4% and 3%, respectively[1-4] and the main cause of death is HCC[1].

Interferon-α was approved for use in chronic hepatitis C in 1991. During the past 15 years, subsequent improvements have included extension of therapy to 48 wk, the combination of interferon-α with ribavirin, and the use of pegylated interferon. These progresses have resulted in improvement in the sustained virological response (SVR) rate in patients included in randomized trials from less than 10% with the initially recommended 24-wk course of interferon-α monotherapy to as high as 50%-60% with the combination of peg interferon and ribavirin for 48 wk. In unselected patients, the percentage of SVR is expected to be lower particularly in patients with cirrhosis.

Most studies of antiviral therapy of HCV have been limited to 6 mo of follow-up after the end of treatment and have not included HCC, liver decompensation or death as end points. Therefore, studies of the effect of antiviral therapy on clinical outcome of HCV-cirrhosis have largely been retrospective analyses of therapeutic trials using interferon-α alone, focusing on patients with cirrhosis[4-11]. Only three randomized trials have assessed

this effect, giving conflicting results[12-15]. Recent meta-analysis suggested a slight, but significant preventive effect of standard interferon-α monotherapy on HCC occurrence in patients with HCV-cirrhosis, especially in those who achieve SVR, who intrinsically represent a small proportion of patients in these trials[16,17]. The influence of interferon-α on the incidence of decompensation or death in patients with HCV-cirrhosis was less studied and more controversial[4,8,10,12,14,18].

At present, bitherapy with standard then pegylated interferon plus ribavirin has created a new perspective for patients with HCV because of the higher rate of SVR reported[19,20]. The clinical long-term benefit of bitherapy with standard interferon-α has been recently assessed in Chinese patients with HCV-cirrhosis[21]. Such data are still not available in Western patients. Therefore, to assess the impact of achievement of a SVR on clinical long-term outcome of cirrhosis, we conducted a long-term, retrospective, bi-centre analysis of prospective collected data from a cohort of 113 French patients with histological proven HCV cirrhosis treated at least 3 mo by different regimens including ribavirin plus standard or pegylated interferon, and periodically followed and screened for HCC according to standardized criteria.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

We retrospectively selected all the consecutive patients followed-up in two French liver centres between 1989 and 2006 fulfilling the following criteria: (1) HCV-related cirrhosis defined by association of positive serum anti-HCV antibodies and RNA, with typical liver histology; (2) absence of complication before or at inclusion (Child-Pugh class A); (3) absence of HBV or HIV co infection (negative serum HBsAg and HIV antibodies); (4) daily alcohol consumption < 50 g; (5) absence of contra-indication to antiviral treatment, particularly platelet and polymorphonuclear counts ⩾ 80 000/mm^3 and 1500/mm^3, respectively; (6) at least a 3 mo course of antiviral treatment using standard or pegylated interferon with or without ribavirin, according to therapeutic advance over time and international guidelines; (7) a regular follow-up ⩾ 30 mo after the starting of the first treatment; (8) absence of HCC or even suspicious findings such as liver nodule or serum level of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) above 50 ng/mL; (9) residence in France allowing regular follow up.

Assessment of Response to antiviral treatment

SVR was defined as undetectable serum HCV RNA 6-mo after discontinuation of the last treatment. Non responder patients to a first line treatment were retreated once or more each time it was possible with the same or a different regimen according to therapeutic advance over time. Serum HCV RNA was measured annually during follow-up and at the time of the last visit. According to final virological response, patients were separated into SVR and non SVR groups. Patients not fulfilling SVR criteria, including all patients who relapsed after the achievement of the end of treatment response, were classified as non-SVR.

Follow-up

All patients were prospectively followed-up according to the same schedule in both centres. Complete physical examination, standard biochemical tests, serum AFP determination and abdominal ultrasonography (US) were repeated every 6 mo, whatever the virological response. Baseline then annual endoscopy of the upper gastrointestinal tract allows assessment of the presence of gastrooesophageal varices. In case of significant endoscopic portal hypertension, prophylactic treatment (propranolol and/or endoscopic treatment) was started. The length of the study was calculated from the starting date of antiviral therapy and ended at death or at the last follow-up visit.

Endpoints

When a focal liver lesion or increased AFP levels were detected, tomodensitometry and, whenever possible, fine needle guided liver biopsy were performed. Diagnostic criteria for HCC were: (1) histological and (2) clinical, in patients with AFP value greater than 400 ng/mL and evidence of focal liver lesion at imaging techniques. After 2002, the HCC diagnosis was based on the guidelines of the European Association for the Study of the Liver[22].

Liver-related complications (ascites, upper gastro-intestinal bleeding, and hepatic encephalopathy) were considered an endpoint in all patients with or without the occurrence of HCC. In the subjects who developed HCC, liver complications were recorded only when they occurred before tumour development. Ascites was diagnosed by clinical examination and/or US detection. Porto-systemic encephalopathy was defined by clinical parameters. The source of gastro oesophageal bleeding was confirmed by endoscopy whenever possible.

Dates and causes of deaths were recorded. Liver transplantation was considered as liver-related death endpoint. Reference date was February 2006.

Statistical analysis

Continuous variables are reported as mean and standard deviation, and categorical variables as absolute and relative frequencies. The Mann-Whitney rank-sum test (M-W) and the Kruskal-Wallis nonparametric analysis of variance (K-W) were applied to compare the means. The associations between Non-SVR or SVR status and events in 2 × 2 cross tabulations were tested using Fisher's exact test. In case of larger cross tabulations, we tested the correlation by computing Pearson's Chi-square, or by computing either the exact probability value, or the Monte Carlo estimate of the exact probability value. Cumulative incidence curves of liver-related complications, HCC and mortality according to response to interferon treatment were plotted using the Kaplan-Meier method. The differences between groups were assessed using log-rank tests. Data was censored when individuals died, received a liver transplantation or were lost during follow-up. The variables which proved to be significant at univariate analysis were tested by the multivariate Cox proportional hazards regression model to assess their independent effect on the development of events during the follow-up. The

Table 1 Baseline characteristics of patients, as a whole and according to final virological response

Characteristics	All $n = 113$	SVR $n = 37$	Non SVR $n = 76$	P^1
Male gender (%)	69 (61.1%)	31 (83.8%)	38 (50.0%)	0.0005
Age (mean, yr)	54.1 ± 11.2	50.6 ± 11.1	55.8 ± 10.9	0.02
Alcohol (g/d)				0.4
0	71 (62.8%)	21 (56.8%)	50 (65.8%)	
< 20	20 (17.7%)	9 (24.3%)	11 (14.5%)	
⩾ 20	22 (19.5%)	7 (18.9%)	15 (19.7%)	
HCV genotype[2]				0.0001
1	58 (61.1%)	11 (35.5%)	47 (73.4%)	
2	10 (10.5%)	7 (22.6%)	3 (4.7%)	
3	15 (15.8%)	8 (25.8%)	7 (10.9%)	
4	8 (8.4%)	1 (3.2%)	7 (10.9%)	
5	2 (2.1%)	2 (6.5%)	0 (0.0%)	
6	2 (2.1%)	2 (6.5%)	0 (0.0%)	
Body mass index (kg/m^2)	25.9 ± 4.0	24.6 ± 3.8	26.5 ± 4.0	0.015
Platelets (10^3/mm^3)	149.4 ± 56.2	152.9 ± 50.1	147.9 ± 59.2	0.4
Serum albumin (g/L)	43.0 ± 5.0	45.4 ± 6.1	41.8 ± 4.0	0.001
Bilirubin (μmol/L)	14.6 ± 9.6	14.3 ± 7.5	14.8 ± 10.5	0.6
Prothrombin activity (%)	83.7 ± 13.3	84.5 ± 12.6	83.4 ± 13.8	0.7
AFP (ng/mL)	14.4 ± 25.2	8.7 ± 12.9	17.3 ± 29.2	0.008
AST (× ULN)	2.9 ± 2.0	2.4 ± 1.4	3.1 ± 2.3	0.2
ALT (× ULN)	3.1 ± 1.9	3.1 ± 1.9	3.1 ± 2.0	0.7

ULN: Upper limit of normal range; SVR: Sustained virological response. [1]Between SVR and Non-SVR groups; [2]Not determinate in 18 patients (15.9%).

Table 2 Duration of follow-up and characteristics of treatment according to final virological response

	All $n = 113$	SVR $n = 37$	Non SVR $n = 76$	P^1
Follow-up from the first liver biopsy (mean ± SD, yr)	8.2 ± 3.1	8.2 ± 2.7	8.2 ± 3.3	0.7
Follow-up from the beginning of first treatment (mean ± SD, yr)	7.7 ± 3.0	7.7 ± 2.6	7.6 ± 3.1	0.6
Number of treatment courses				0.25
1	50 (44.2%)	19 (51.4%)	31 (40.8%)	
2	42 (37.2%)	15 (40.5%)	27 (35.5%)	
3	19 (16.8%)	3 (8.1%)	16 (21.1%)	
4	2 (1.8%)	0 (0.0%)	2 (2.6%)	
Type of treatment				1.00
α-interferon monotherapy	35 (31.0%)	11 (29.7%)	24 (31.6%)	
Bitherapy	78 (69.0%)	26 (70.3%)	52 (68.4%)	
Type of bitherapy				< 0.0001
α-interferon + ribavirin	40 (51.3%)	22 (84.6%)	18 (34.6%)	
Peg-interferon + ribavirin	38 (48.7%)	4 (15.4%)	34 (65.4%)	
Total duration of treatment (mo)	15.3 ± 9.05	14.3 ± 6.4	15.8 ± 10.1	0.4

SVR: Sustained virological response. [1]*P* values were obtained between SVR and non SVR groups.

results were expressed as hazard ratio (HR) and their 95% confidence interval (CI). Data handling and analysis were performed with the Statistical Package for Social Sciences (SPSS 13.0; SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL) and STATXACT. All tests were 2-sided and $P < 0.05$ was considered to be statistically significant.

RESULTS

Patients and treatment regimens

One hundred thirteen patients fulfilled inclusion criteria (mean age: 54 ± 11 years, males: 61%, HCV genotype 1: 51%) (Table 1). As a whole, the mean (± SD) cumulated duration of treatment was 15.3 ± 9 (range: 3-42, median 12) mo. Treatment courses were performed 1, 2, 3 and 4 times in 50 (44.2%), 42 (37.2%), 19 (16.8%) and 2 (1.8%) patients respectively (Table 2). Interferon-ribavirin bitherapy was administered in 78 patients (69%), using pegylated interferon in 38 cases. SVR was obtained in 37 patients (33%). Nineteen out of 113 treated patients (16.8%) became SVR after the first treatment, 15/113 (13.3%) after the second, 3/113 (2.7%) after the third and 0/113 (0%) after the fourth treatment. Among the 37 SVR patients, 11 (29.7%) received only a monotherapy versus 24 (31.6%) in the 76 non SVR group ($P = 1.00$). Cumulated duration of antiviral treatment (14 mo ± 6 mo *vs* 16 mo ± 10 mo) did not significantly differ between SVR and non SVR patients ($P = 0.99$). There was no significant difference between the 2 groups regarding the number and the patterns of treatment (Table 2). Furthermore, there was no heterogeneity among the 2 centres in terms of duration and patterns of treatment.

The main patients' baseline characteristics according to final response are reported in Table 1. Compared to non SVR, SVR patients were more often males (84% *vs* 50%, $P = 0.0005$), younger (51 ± 11 *vs* 56 ± 11 years, $P = 0.02$), leaner (25 *vs* 26.5 kg/m^2, $P = 0.015$), less frequently infected with HCV genotype 1 (35.5% *vs* 73.4%, $P = 0.0001$), and had higher serum albumin levels (45 *vs* 42 g/L, $P = 0.001$) and lower AFP serum level (8.7 *vs* 17.3 ng/ mL, $P = 0.008$).

Follow-up and clinical events occurrence

The mean duration of follow-up was 7.7 ± 3.0 years from the beginning of the first treatment in the whole population. SVR and non SVR patients did not differ in term of follow-up (7.7 ± 2.6 *vs* 7.6 ± 3.1 years, $P = 0.6$) (Table 2).

During the follow-up, at least one severe clinical event (HCC or ascites or hepatic encephalopathy or gastrointestinal bleeding or death) occurred in 37 patients with a significant higher frequency in non-SVR (44.7% versus 8.1%, Hazard Ratio 6.3 (95% Confidence Interval 1.9-20.4), $P = 0.002$). Ascites, hepatic encephalopathy or gastrointestinal bleeding occurred in 11/76 non-SVR and in 3/37 SVR (Figure 1); HCC occurred in 24/76 non-SVR and in 1/37 SVR (Figure 2). The difference between the two groups was significant only for HCC [$P = 0.01$, Hazard Ratio 13.6 (95% Confidence Interval 1.8-100.5)], while there was no significant difference for the occurrence of other clinical events [ascites, hepatic encephalopathy or gastrointestinal bleeding: $P = 0.44$, Hazard Ratio 1.65 (95% Confidence Interval 0.46-5.9)] (Table 3). The diagnosis of HCC was assessed by histology in 9 patients (before June 2002) and according to guidelines of European Association for the Study of the Liver[22] in 16 patients (after July 2002). The median number of nodules was 1.5 (range, 1-8) and the median size 30 (range, 10-65) mm. The median times from the beginning of the first treatment until complications were not different in SVR and non-SVR: 6.99 years in SVR and 6.36 years in non-SVR for the occurrence of HCC ($P = 0.150$); 6.91 years in SVR and

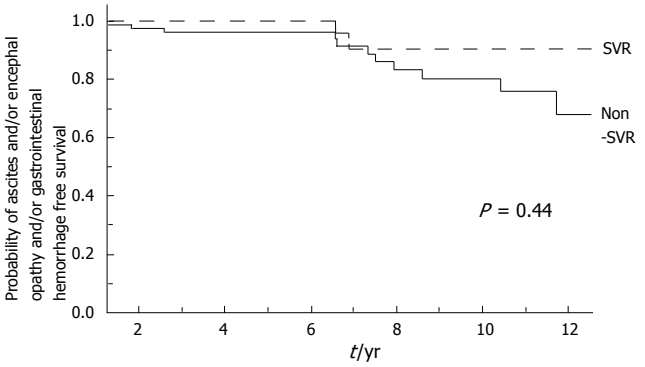


Figure 1 Incidence of ascites or encephalopathy or gastrointestinal haemorrhage from the beginning of the first treatment according to the response to antiviral treatment (SVR: Sustained virological response in dotted line; non-SVR in full line; Log-Rank, $P = 0.44$).

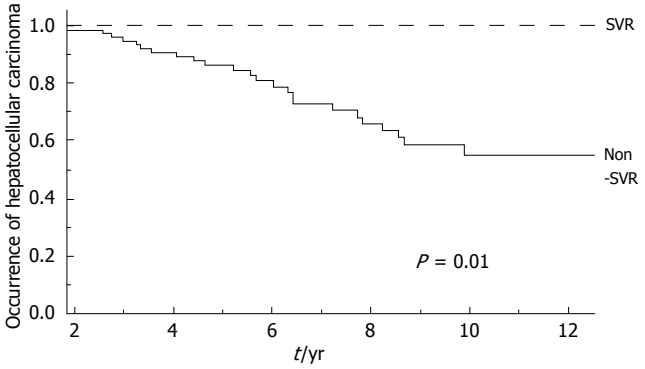


Figure 2 Incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma from the beginning of the first treatment according to response to antiviral treatment. SVR: Sustained virological response in dotted line; Non-SVR in full line; Log-Rank, $P = 0.01$.

6.78 years in non-SVR for the onset of decompensation or upper GI bleeding ($P = 0.531$). For the 37 patients who achieved a SVR, the median time from SVR (i.e., 6 mo after the end of the successful antiviral treatment) to the occurrence of complication was 4.79 years for HCC and 4.66 for decompensation. Death rate was significantly higher in case of non-SVR patients (20/76 *vs* 0/37; $P = 0.002$, Figure 3). Deaths were mainly related to liver disease and HCC was causative of 45% of the deaths. There was no heterogeneity among the 2 centres in terms of patterns of the duration of follow-up and of the number of events observed.

The multivariate analysis (Cox model) found two independent predictive factors for clinical events: SVR [$P = 0.001$, HR 7.1 (95% CI 2.2; 23.2)] and duration of treatment [$P = 0.001$, HR 0.93 (95% CI 0.89; 0.97)]. In other words, the Hazard for HCC was 7% lower for each additional year of treatment.

There was no significant difference with age, gender, or viral genotype for HCC occurrence.

DISCUSSION

Our study demonstrates a significant difference in long-term outcome between initially uncomplicated HCV cirrhotic patients with and without SVR after antiviral treatment. Over a mean follow-up period of 7.7 years, there were no deaths and virtually no severe clinical events in patients with SVR. At the opposite, HCC and liver decompensation occurred in patients without SVR with incidence rates similar to those previously reported in untreated cirrhotic patients[23]. We should emphasize that HCC was carefully screened before treatment, which eliminates HCC of small size appearing a few months after antiviral treatment.

Several studies performed in patients with chronic hepatitis C have suggested that successful antiviral treatment could result in a dramatic decrease in severe clinical events and mortality, life expectancy of patients with SVR being close to general population[6,9,10,24,25]. However, those studies used only interferon-α. In the past, interferon-α monotherapy resulted in a small rate of SVR in patients with cirrhosis due to low virological efficacy and poor tolerance resulting in a high rate of premature interruption of treatment. Accordingly, in the studies including a subset of cirrhotic patients, SVR rates in those populations did not usually exceed 15%.

Table 3 Severe liver-related events and deaths occurring from the beginning of first treatment according to final virological response

	SVR *n* = 37	Non SVR *n* = 76	*P*
Number of patients with at least one liver-related events or death during follow-up (%)	3[1] (8.1%)	34[2] (44.7%)	0.002
Number of patients (%) with			
HCC	1 (2.7%)	24 (31.6%)	0.01
Ascites	2 (5.4%)	8 (10.5%)	0.43
Digestive haemorrhage	1 (2.7%)	4 (5.3%)	0.62
Encephalopathy	0	2 (5.4%)	0.56
Number of deaths	0	20 (26.3%)	0.002
Liver-related	0	17	
Liver failure	0	7	
GI haemorrhage	0	1	
HCC	0	9	
Non liver-related	0	3	
Suicide	0	1	
Miscellaneous	0	2	

[1]1 patient had 2 complications; [2]4 patients had 2 complications. SVR: Sustained virological response; GI: Gastrointestinal.

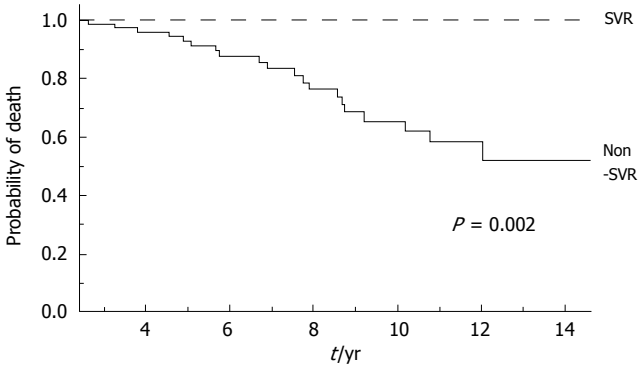


Figure 3 Incidence of death from the beginning of the first treatment according to response to antiviral treatment. SVR: Sustained virological response in dotted line; Non-SVR in full line; Log-Rank, $P = 0.002$.

Our study has several differences. Firstly, it was strictly restricted to patients with histological proven cirrhosis. This population is clearly at high risk of severe short-term complications occurrence as demonstrated by previous studies[1,26]. Secondly bitherapy using interferon-α and ribavirin was used in about 70% of cases in our study, with pegylated interferon in 38 cases. Thirdly antiviral treatment was repeated each time it was possible due to the absence of a priori contra-indication to treatment in those patients. Overall, after one (51.4%) or repeated (48.6%) antiviral treatments, 33% of our patients achieved HCV eradication, which is a rate twice higher than those obtained in previous studies.

Due to the lack of randomization, patients with SVR were obviously different from non SVR. Particularly, they were younger, more often men and significantly more frequently infected with HCV genotypes 2 or 3 than non SVR patients, as observed by Bruno *et al*[10]. Excepted male gender, these factors had been previously identified as predictive factors of SVR and it is not surprising to identify them in our study. The reduced rate of serious events in patients with SVR could result more from the presence of protective factors than from antiviral treatment. Patients with SVR were younger and this could result in a lower risk to develop complications as demonstrated for HCC occurrence. The role of genotype in spontaneous outcome of HCV-related cirrhosis although still debated does not seem to be a determinant factor in this setting and the male sex is a favouring factor of fibrosis progression and HCC occurrence. Subsequently the absence of serious event seems related to the complete response to treatment.

Several successive treatment courses have been performed in most of the patients, representing a cumulated time of treatment of 15.3 ± 9 mo. It could explain why clinical event incidence was decreased with a linear fashion from the start of treatment even if viral eradication was obtained later with further treatment. About half of SVR patients had no HCV eradication after the first course of treatment. It could seem questionable that severe events incidence have been reduced even before eradication was achieved in those patients. We postulate that it could reflect a more complete blockade of HCV replication in those patients occurring from the first course of treatment and due to higher sensitivity of virus. The fact that patients received similar duration of treatment in both groups is in favour of this hypothesis and against a non specific effect of treatment such as antifibrotic and/or antiproliferative effects of interferon.

The association between SVR and a significantly reduced number of clinical events has been previously reported[10,16,17,25]. However, this result cannot be applied to the whole population of patients with HCV-cirrhosis. In this study as in others, patients were selected and those with initial major contra-indication to treatment were excluded. These patients are probably the most severe with the higher risk of developing complications such as HCC. In addition, due to the selection of patients, the risk of death related to co morbidity was very low in our study.

Even in case of SVR, the periodic follow-up of cirrhotic patients should be recommended, particularly HCC screening as it is worth noting that the only HCC observed in SVR occurred 4.8 years after the achievement of viral clearance. In spite of a significant decrease in the incidence of HCC in case of SVR, several isolated cases of HCC were reported 4.5 to 6.6 years after the achievement of a SVR[27-30].

In conclusion, repeated antiviral therapy actually results in SVR in 33% of patients with HCV-cirrhosis. Virological cure seems to be associated with a strong decrease in the incidence of complications particularly HCC. These results are a strong argument to perform and repeat antiviral treatments in patients with compensated cirrhosis.

COMMENTS

Background

HCV cirrhosis is a life threatening disease with annual incidences of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), decompensation and death reaching around 3%, 4% and 3% respectively. The achievement of a sustained viral eradication (SVR) with the initially recommended 24-wk course of interferon-α monotherapy is associated with a slight preventive effect on HCC occurrence but its influence on the incidence of decompensation or death was less studied and more controversial.

Reasearch frontiers

Subsequent progresses in the field of HCV treatment (including extension of therapy to 48 wk, the combination of interferon-α with ribavirin, and the use of pegylated interferon) have created a new perspective for patients with HCV-cirrhosis because of the higher rate of SVR. Thus, the clinical long-term benefit of antiviral treatment in patients with HCV cirrhosis needed to be re-assessed.

Innovation and breakthroughs

Long-term effect of standard interferon-α plus ribavirin therapy on incidence of HCC in patients with HCV cirrhosis was recently studied in Chinese patients. Our results are the first in Western patients. In addition, death was a clinical end-point and we showed a significant reduced mortality in patients who achieved SVR.

Applications

While firm recommandations on antiviral treatment for patients with compensated HCV-cirrhosis was not made by international conferences, this is a strong argument to perform and repeat antiviral bitherapy in these patients to achieve SVR.

Terminology

Sustained virological response (SVR) is defined by the absence of detectable serum HCV RNA six months after the end of antiviral treatment and is associated with a durable viral eradication in most patients. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most frequent primary liver cancer and the first cause of death in patients with HCV-cirrhosis.

Peer review

The manuscript by El Barks *et al* demonstrates that antiviral treatment in patients with HCV-related cirrhosis decreases the incidence of HCC. The data provided argue for an antiviral treatment in HCV patients. The study was well performed and the data are clearly presented.

REFERENCES

1 **Benvegnù L**, Gios M, Boccato S, Alberti A. Natural history of compensated viral cirrhosis: a prospective study on the incidence and hierarchy of major complications. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 744-749

2 **Degos F**, Christidis C, Ganne-Carrie N, Farmachidi JP, Degott C, Guettier C, Trinchet JC, Beaugrand M, Chevret S. Hepatitis C virus related cirrhosis: time to occurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma and death. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 131-136

3 **Fattovich G**, Giustina G, Degos F, Tremolada F, Diodati G, Almasio P, Nevens F, Solinas A, Mura D, Brouwer JT, Thomas H, Njapoum C, Casarin C, Bonetti P, Fuschi P, Basho J, Tocco

A, Bhalla A, Galassini R, Noventa F, Schalm SW, Realdi G. Morbidity and mortality in compensated cirrhosis type C: a retrospective follow-up study of 384 patients. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 463-472

4 **Serfaty L**, Aumaître H, Chazouillères O, Bonnand AM, Rosmorduc O, Poupon RE, Poupon R. Determinants of outcome of compensated hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1998; **27**: 1435-1440

5 **Ikeda K**, Saitoh S, Kobayashi M, Suzuki Y, Suzuki F, Tsubota A, Arase Y, Murashima N, Chayama K, Kumada H. Long-term interferon therapy for 1 year or longer reduces the hepatocellular carcinogenesis rate in patients with liver cirrhosis caused by hepatitis C virus: a pilot study. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **16**: 406-415

6 **Gramenzi A**, Andreone P, Fiorino S, Cammà C, Giunta M, Magalotti D, Cursaro C, Calabrese C, Arienti V, Rossi C, Di Febo G, Zoli M, Craxì A, Gasbarrini G, Bernardi M. Impact of interferon therapy on the natural history of hepatitis C virus related cirrhosis. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 843-848

7 **Effect of interferon-alpha on progression of cirrhosis to hepatocellular carcinoma: a retrospective cohort study**. International Interferon-alpha Hepatocellular Carcinoma Study Group. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 1535-1539

8 **Benvegnù L**, Chemello L, Noventa F, Fattovich G, Pontisso P, Alberti A. Retrospective analysis of the effect of interferon therapy on the clinical outcome of patients with viral cirrhosis. *Cancer* 1998; **83**: 901-909

9 **Mazzella G**, Accogli E, Sottili S, Festi D, Orsini M, Salzetta A, Novelli V, Cipolla A, Fabbri C, Pezzoli A, Roda E. Alpha interferon treatment may prevent hepatocellular carcinoma in HCV-related liver cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 1996; **24**: 141-147

10 **Bruno S**, Stroffolini T, Colombo M, Bollani S, Benvegnù L, Mazzella G, Ascione A, Santantonio T, Piccinino F, Andreone P, Mangia A, Gaeta GB, Persico M, Fagiuoli S, Almasio PL. Sustained virological response to interferon-alpha is associated with improved outcome in HCV-related cirrhosis: a retrospective study. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 579-587

11 **Kobayashi S**, Takeda T, Enomoto M, Tamori A, Kawada N, Habu D, Sakaguchi H, Kuroda T, Kioka K, Kim SR, Kanno T, Ueda T, Hirano M, Fujimoto S, Jomura H, Nishiguchi S, Seki S. Development of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic hepatitis C who had a sustained virological response to interferon therapy: a multicenter, retrospective cohort study of 1124 patients. *Liver Int* 2007; **27**: 186-191

12 **Fartoux L**, Degos F, Trépo C, Goria O, Calès P, Tran A, Buffet C, Poynard T, Capron D, Raabe JJ, Roulot D, Naveau S, Grange JD, Poupon RE, Poupon R, Serfaty L. Effect of prolonged interferon therapy on the outcome of hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis: a randomized trial. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 502-507

13 **Nishiguchi S**, Kuroki T, Nakatani S, Morimoto H, Takeda T, Nakajima S, Shiomi S, Seki S, Kobayashi K, Otani S. Randomised trial of effects of interferon-alpha on incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic active hepatitis C with cirrhosis. *Lancet* 1995; **346**: 1051-1055

14 **Nishiguchi S**, Shiomi S, Nakatani S, Takeda T, Fukuda K, Tamori A, Habu D, Tanaka T. Prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic active hepatitis C and cirrhosis. *Lancet* 2001; **357**: 196-197

15 **Valla DC**, Chevallier M, Marcellin P, Payen JL, Trepo C, Fonck M, Bourliere M, Boucher E, Miguet JP, Parlier D, Lemonnier C, Opolon P. Treatment of hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis: a randomized, controlled trial of interferon alfa-2b versus no treatment. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 1870-1875

16 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Davies S, Dhillon AP, Teixeira R, Goulis J, Davidson B, Rolles K, Dusheiko G, Burroughs AK. The role of different immunosuppression in the long-term histological outcome of HCV reinfection after liver transplantation for HCV cirrhosis. *Transplantation* 2001; **72**: 412-418

17 **Cammà C**, Giunta M, Andreone P, Craxì A. Interferon and prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in viral cirrhosis: an evidence-based approach. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 593-602

18 **Shiratori Y**, Ito Y, Yokosuka O, Imazeki F, Nakata R, Tanaka N, Arakawa Y, Hashimoto E, Hirota K, Yoshida H, Ohashi Y, Omata M. Antiviral therapy for cirrhotic hepatitis C: association with reduced hepatocellular carcinoma development and improved survival. *Ann Intern Med* 2005; **142**: 105-114

19 **Fried MW**, Shiffman ML, Reddy KR, Smith C, Marinos G, Gonçales FL, Häussinger D, Diago M, Carosi G, Dhumeaux D, Craxi A, Lin A, Hoffman J, Yu J. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 975-982

20 **Manns MP**, McHutchison JG, Gordon SC, Rustgi VK, Shiffman M, Reindollar R, Goodman ZD, Koury K, Ling M, Albrecht JK. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin compared with interferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for initial treatment of chronic hepatitis C: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2001; **358**: 958-965

21 **Hung CH**, Lee CM, Lu SN, Wang JH, Hu TH, Tung HD, Chen CH, Chen WJ, Changchien CS. Long-term effect of interferon alpha-2b plus ribavirin therapy on incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis. *J Viral Hepat* 2006; **13**: 409-414

22 **Bruix J**, Sherman M, Llovet JM, Beaugrand M, Lencioni R, Burroughs AK, Christensen E, Pagliaro L, Colombo M, Rodés J. Clinical management of hepatocellular carcinoma. Conclusions of the Barcelona-2000 EASL conference. European Association for the Study of the Liver. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 421-430

23 **Heathcote EJ**. Prevention of hepatitis C virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: S294-S302

24 **Cammà C**, Di Marco V, Lo Iacono O, Almasio P, Giunta M, Fuschi P, Vaccaro A, Fabiano C, Magrin S, Di Stefano R, Bonura C, Pagliaro L, Craxì A. Long-term course of interferon-treated chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 1998; **28**: 531-537

25 **Veldt BJ**, Saracco G, Boyer N, Cammà C, Bellobuono A, Hopf U, Castillo I, Weiland O, Nevens F, Hansen BE, Schalm SW. Long term clinical outcome of chronic hepatitis C patients with sustained virological response to interferon monotherapy. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1504-1508

26 **Sangiovanni A**, Prati GM, Fasani P, Ronchi G, Romeo R, Manini M, Del Ninno E, Morabito A, Colombo M. The natural history of compensated cirrhosis due to hepatitis C virus: A 17-year cohort study of 214 patients. *Hepatology* 2006; **43**: 1303-1310

27 **Yamaura T**, Matsumoto A, Rokuhara A, Ichijo T, Tanaka E, Hanazaki K, Kajikawa S, Kiyosawa K. Development of small hepatocellular carcinoma in a patient with chronic hepatitis C after 77 months of a sustained and complete response to interferon therapy. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17**: 1229-1235

28 **Yamaguchi K**, Omagari K, Kinoshita H, Yoshioka S, Furusu H, Takeshima F, Nanashima A, Yamaguchi H, Kohno S. Development of hepatocellular carcinoma in a patient with chronic hepatitis C after 6 years of a sustained and complete response to IFN-alpha. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1999; **29**: 207-209

29 **Yamada M**, Ichikawa M, Matsubara A, Ishiguro Y, Yamada M, Yokoi S. Development of small hepatocellular carcinoma 80 months after clearance of hepatitis C virus with interferon therapy. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2000; **12**: 1029-1032

30 **Miyano S**, Togashi H, Shinzawa H, Sugahara K, Matsuo T, Takeda Y, Saito K, Saito T, Ishiyama S, Kaneko M, Takahashi T. Case report: Occurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma 4.5 years after successful treatment with virus clearance for chronic hepatitis C. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **14**: 928-930

S- Editor Zhu LH **L- Editor** Alpini GD **E- Editor** Wang HF

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5654-5658
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Pre-existing cirrhosis is associated with increased mortality of traumatic patients: Analysis of cases from a trauma center in East China

Zuo-Bing Chen, Lin-Mei Ni, Yuan Gao, Chen-Yan Ding, Yun Zhang, Xue-Hong Zhao, Yun-Qing Qiu

Zuo-Bing Chen, Lin-Mei Ni, Yuan Gao, Chen-Yan Ding, Yun Zhang, Xue-Hong Zhao, Yun-Qing Qiu, Department of Emergency Surgery, First Affiliated Hospital, College of Medicine, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310003, Zhejiang Province, China

Correspondence to: Yun-Qing Qiu, MD, Department of Emergency Surgery, First Affiliated Hospital, Zhejiang University School of Medicine, 79 Qing-chun Road, Hangzhou 310003, Zhejiang Province, China. bigzyun1@sina.com

Telephone: +86-571-87236303 Fax: +86-571-87236626
Received: June 29, 2007 Revised: August 6, 2007

Abstract

AIM: To determine the impact of cirrhosis on trauma patients and define the factors predicting death.

METHODS: The data on patients admitted to the trauma center from January 2000-2005 were studied retrospectively. The clinical variables were recorded and compared to identify the factors differentiating cirrhotic trauma survivors from non survivors. Child's classification criteria were derived from the reviewed charts of cirrhotic trauma patients to evaluate their predictive value in cirrhotic trauma. Trauma registry was also used to generate a trauma control group by matching for age, sex, abbreviated injury score (AIS) over the same period of time. The outcome variables compared were mortality rate, time of ICU and hospital stay. Results were expressed as mean ± SD. These data were analyzed by SPSS.11.0 statistical software. Univariate analysis was performed to identify significant medical factors for survivor and non survivors subjected to chi-square test. Fisher's exact test and Student's *t* test were performed to determine the statistical difference between cirrhotic and control groups. $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS: Poor prognosis of traum patients was associated with one or more of the following findings: ascitcs, hyperbilirubinemia (more than 2 mg/dL), hypoalbuminemia (less than 3.5 mg/dL), and prolonged prothrombin time (more than 12.5 seconds). Although Child's classification was used to predict the outcome in cirrhotic patients undergoing portacaval shunt procedures, no significant difference was found in mortality rate as a function of Child's classification.

CONCLUSION: Cirrhosis is associated with a higher mortality, a longer time of ICU and hospital stay of trauma patients. It seems that treatment of trauma patients with pre-existing severe liver disease is a challenge to surgeons.

Key words: Pre-existing cirrhosis; Trauma; Mortality rate

Chen ZB, Ni LM, Gao Y, Ding CY, Zhang Y, Zhao XH, Qiu YQ. Pre-existing cirrhosis is associated with increased mortality of traumatic patients: Analysis of cases from a trauma center in East China. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5654-5658

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5654.asp

INTRODUCTION

Liver cirrhosis is the tenth leading cause of death[1]. Although cirrhosis-related deaths have decreased over the years, the impact of cirrhosis remains with approximately 30 000 deaths annually, mostly in Asian countries[2]. Cirrhotic patients often suffer from complications[3]. Cirrhosis impairs nutrition, alters response to stress, and affects the functions of other organ systems.

Trauma continues to be a major public health problem in the world. Due to the rapid economic development in China, the number of motor vehicles has increased tremendously in the past decade[4], leading to more deaths and injuries resulting from trauma. WHO predicts that trauma injuries will result in about 2.3 million deaths globally by 2020, becoming the third contributor to the global death[5]. Trauma not only causes a significant loss of life, but also results in loss of economic, medical, educational, and legal resources.

Trauma, in combination with cirrhosis in patients, brings about a unique challenge. Surgeons in trauma centers treat a variety of patients every day, but treatment of traumatized cirrhotic patients remains a challenge[6]. It has been shown that the mortality and morbidity rates increase in patients with cirrhosis undergoing elective or emergency surgery[7]. Also the degree of hepatic insufficiency is a prime factor for determining the outcome in these patients[8]. Despite the interest in the surgical outcome of cirrhotic patients, few reports are available on the outcome of cirrhotic patients after traumatic

injury. This study reviews and analyzes the data on trauma patients with pre-existing cirrhosis who were admitted to a trauma center in East China from 2000 to 2005.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Data on more than 11 000 trauma patients (64 trauma patents with pre-existing liver cirrhosis) admitted to the Trauma Center of the First Affiliated Hospital, College of Medicine, Zhejiang University, China, from January 2000 to January 2005 were contained in their respective trauma registries. The data on patients under the ICDM-3 index for cirrhosis patients with chronic liver disease were analyzed. The trauma registry abstracts and medical records of all patients diagnosed as hepatic cirrhosis were reviewed. Diagnosis of hepatic cirrhosis was confirmed by the past medical history, clinical examination, operation findings, biopsy, and/or imaging.

The clinical variables were recorded and compared to identify the factors affecting prognosis of the patients and prolonging survival of the patients. In addition, evidence of hepatic insufficiency was evaluated by ascites, hyperbilirubinemia (more than 2 mg/dL), hypoalbuminemia (less than 3.5 mg/dL), elevated alkaline phosphatase (more than 125 st/L), serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase (SGOT more than 40 st/L), and/or prothrombin time (more than 12.5 s) detected at admission.

The trauma registry was also used to generate a trauma control group consisting of 86 patients by matching for age, sex, abbreviated injury score (AIS) over the same period of time. The AIS-85 scores were used because they permitted us to match patients with similar injuries. No cirrhosis or chronic liver failure was found in patients within the control group. The outcome variables compared were mortality rate, time of ICU and hospital stay.

Results were expressed as mean ± SD. The data were analyzed by SPSS.11.0 statistical software. As our sample size was too small to perform multivariate analysis, a univariate analysis was performed to identify the significant predictive factors. The data were subjected to chi-square test. To determine the statistical difference between the cirrhotic and control groups, we compared the mortality rates by Fisher's exact test. Parametric values of AIS, and time of hospital and ICU stay were compared by Student's *t* test. $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Sixty-four cirrhotic trauma patients (5.9 per 1000 trauma patients) admitted to the Trauma Center of the First Affiliated Hospital, College of Medicine, Zhejiang University were include in this study. These patients were diagnosed as cirrhosis before admission and during laparotomy for traumatic injury, respectively. The etiology of cirrhosis was related to HBV infection and alcohol in 62 and 1 patients, respectively and unidentified in 1 patient. The demographic and outcome data are listed in Table 1. Although the major causes for injury were motor vehicle accidents (MVA) (Table 2), 30.77% (4 of 13) of deaths were due to accidental fall. Other causes for injury included superficial abdominal stab wound, criminal assault. Seven patients had sustained blunt thoracic traumas including rib fracture, pulmonary contusion. Blunt abdominal trauma as evidenced by hemoperitoneum, splenic rupture, and/or liver laceration was the predominant injury in 9 patients. Pelvic fracture or limbic long-bone fracture occurred in 36 patients. Twenty-seven patients had injuries involving multiple sites. The remaining 37 patients had injuries involving a single site and two of them died (Table 3).

Table 1 Demographic and survival data on patients studied (48 males, 16 females)

(*n* = 40)	Range
Mean age = 52	31-84
Mean TS = 12	6-16
Mean ISS = 12	5-34
Surv = 87.5%	

Table 2 Mechanism of injury

Mechanism of injury	Total	Non survivors *n* (%)
Fall	13	4 (30.77)
MVA	48	3 (6.25)
Other	3	1 (33.33)

Table 3 Injury characteristics

Site	Total	Non survivors *n* (%)
Head	22	2 (9.09)
Thorax	7	2 (28.57)
Abdomen	9	3 (33.3)
Pelvis/Ext	26	1 (3.85)
Multiple	27	6 (22.22)
Single	37	2 (5.41)

The clinical or laboratory findings associated with hepatic insufficiency in this group of patients are outlined in Table 4. Ascites was confirmed during operation or radiological examination in 16 patients (6 of them died). An elevated prothrombin time of over 12.5 s was found in 15 patients (including 7 non survivors). Serum bilirubin exceeding 2 mg/dL was found in 15 patients at admission (6 of them died). The presence of any of these parameters was associated with a significant increase in mortality rate ($P < 0.05$). SGOT, alkaline phosphatase and hypoalbuminemia were elevated in many patients, but did not significantly affect their outcome.

Child's classification could predict the outcome of cirrhotic patients undergoing portacaval shunt procedures. In order to identify the predictive value of Child's classification, we retrospectively derived Child's classification criteria from the reviewed charts of cirrhotic trauma patients. The mortality of cirrhotic trauma patients according to the (retrospective) Child's classification is listed in Table 5, showing that 92.2% of our cirrhotic trauma patients corresponded to Child's class A or B. No

Table 4 Presence of HEPATIC insufficiency

Parameters of hepatic insufficiency	Total	Non survivors *n* (%)
Ascites	16	6 (37.50)[a]
SGOT > 40 μ/L	36	3 (8.33)
Alk phos. > 125 μ/L	32	3 (9.37)
Ser bili. > 2.0 md/dL	15	6 (40)[a]
Ser alb. 6 ≤ 3.0 md/dL	16	6 (37.5)[a]
PT > Control	15	7 (46.67)[a]

[a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* survivors.

Table 5 Effect of Child's classification on mortality in cirrhotic trauma patients *n* (%)

Child's classification	No. of patients (% total)	Mortality
Class A	44 (68.75)	5 (11.38)
Class B	15 (23.44)	2 (13.33)
Class C	5 (7.81)	1 (20)
Total	64 (100)	8

significant difference in mortality as a function of Child's classification was found ($P > 0.05$).

The second part of our study focused on comparing the trauma registry data between the cirrhotic trauma and control groups (Table 6). The cirrhotic trauma patients had a statistical ISS score similar to the control trauma patients. The time of ICU and hospital stay, and the mortality rate in the cirrhotic trauma group were greater than those in the control group ($P < 0.05$).

Table 6 Comparison of outcomes of trauma patients and cirrhotic trauma patients

	Cirrhosis	Control
Age (yr)	51.80 ± 13.01	48.70 ± 15.4
Percentage male	75%	76.11%
AIS	14.25 ± 8.31	13.67 ± 6.56
hospital stay	21.26 ± 5.61	8.21 ± 4.25[a]
length of ICU stay	11.24 ± 4.21	4.23 ± 1.36[a]
Mortality rate	12.53%	1.26%[a]

[a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* cirrhotic patients.

DISCUSSION

Hepatitis B is one of the most common infectious diseases in Asian countries[9], and about 10% of Chinese people have been infected with hepatitis B virus (HBV)[10]. It is estimated that about 350 million people worldwide are chronically infected with HBV, approximately 15%-40% of them are expected to develop cirrhosis and end-stage liver disease[11], which is frequently followed by hepatocellular necrosis. Cirrhosis, regardless of its etiology, inhibits the liver's response to injury. The predominant histological features are wide-spread fibrosis and nodule formation with loss of normal hepatic architecture. These changes are manifested clinically as hepatic failure and portal hypertension, the magnitude of which determines the course and prognosis of individual patients[12].

Although great progress in traumatology has been made, the number of traumatic casualties still increases[13]. In China, trauma and intoxication were the 9th, 7th and 4th leading cause of deaths in 1975, 1985 and 2000, respectively. More than 100 000 people die of traumatic injury and millions of people are injured each year in China. Furthermore, experts predict that the number of traumatic casualties will double in the 22nd century[14]. All these suggest that trauma in combination with cirrhosis is a challenge to Chinese doctors.

Adequate hepatic function is necessary in physiological response to surgery or traumatic injury[15]. The liver plays a vital role in protein synthesis, detoxification, and immune responses. In a patient subjected to surgical intervention for traumatic injury, any degree of hepatic insufficiency would diminish the liver's ability to carry out these vital metabolic functions[16]. Because of impaired cirrhotic reserves, a surgical or trauma cirrhotic patient would be at a great risk of developing complications and death may occur during the recovery period[17].

The increased risk of cirrhotic patients undergoing surgery has been well documented[18]. The Child's classification system has been used to define the surgical mortality in cirrhosis patients[19] and is moderately accurate in predicting mortality and complications of portacaval shunt surgery, but less predictive when it is applied to other types of surgery[20]. The Child's classification is mainly to classify the risk of cirrhotic patients undergoing portosystemic shunt surgery[21], showing that the degree of hepatic decompensation correlates with the rate of operative mortality in these patients. Furthermore, if therapeutic measures are taken to improve the clinical status and Child's class of cirrhotic patients before operation, the outcome of portosystemic shunting can be improved.

Child's classification criteria could not be used to classify these patients because nutritional status and response to therapy are unavailable[22]. Furthermore, changes in mental status at admission cannot be solely attributed to the etiology of cirrhosis[23]. However, hepatic insufficiency, as determined by the presence of ascites and/or elevated prothrombin time, is correlated with the outcome of these patients undergoing surgical intervention. Multivariate analysis revealed that cirrhotic trauma victims presenting with ascites, hyperbilirubinemia, or elevated prothrombin time exhibit a uniformly lower rate of survival independent of injury characteristics[24].

The impact of cirrhosis on trauma patients has recently been addressed[25]. Thirty percent of trauma patients with pre-existing liver disease have an increased risk of death and an increased time of hospital stay[26]. Tinkoff *et al*[27] have also tried to define the variables predicting the outcome of survivors and non survivors. The results of these studies suggest that trauma cirrhotic patients behave as cirrhotic patients requiring emergency surgery with similar stress and compensatory responses and that the mortality is directly related to the extent of injury.

In addition, hepatic insufficiency further diminishes survival, regardless of the injury sustained[28]. In the present study, cirrhosis was associated with a higher mortality, a longer time of ICU and hospital stay of trauma patients.

Factors predicting death are APACHE Ⅱ. ISS. RTS2,

the number of packed red blood cells transfused and organs injured, which are associated with the severity of injury[29]. Our study showed that liver insufficiency was positively associated with a poorer outcome. The lower survival and increased complication rates of cirrhotic trauma patients suggest that there is no "margin for error" in managing these patients. Thus, several management suggestions can be proposed for the improvement in cirrhotic patients with abdominal trauma[30]. It is critical to promptly diagnose and treat injuries in cirrhotic trauma patients. Since bleeding complications are frequent in cirrhotic patients, early and aggressive correction of coagulation parameters and hypothermia is crucial[31]. Poor nutrition is common in these patients and low albumin is different in survivors and non survivors. Therefore, early appropriate nutritional support should be provided. Solutions rich in branched-chain amino acids and low in aromatic amino acids can reduce hepatic encephalopathy and improve the outcome[32,33].

In conclusion, cirrhotic patients constitute a small subset of trauma patients admitted to our institution. Cirrhosis has a significantly independent adverse impact on survival of these patients. Treatment of trauma patients with severe pre-existing liver diseases remains a challenge to the surgeon.

COMMENTS

Background

Liver cirrhosis is the tenth leading cause of death. Although cirrhosis-related deaths have decreased, it leads to approximately 30 000 deaths annually, mostly in Asian countries. Trauma is a major public health problem in the world. Trauma in combination with cirrhosis brings about unique challenges and problems in patients. Surgeons in a trauma center treat a variety of patients every day, but treatment of trauma cirrhotic patients remains a challenge.

Research frontiers

Many reports have shown that mortality and morbidity rates are increased in patients with cirrhosis undergoing elective or emergency surgery. Also the degree of hepatic insufficiency is a prime factor for determining the outcome of these patients. Despite the interest in the outcome of surgical cirrhotic patients, few reports are available on their outcome.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The authors reviewed and analyzed the data on trauma patients with pre-existing cirrhosis admitted to a trauma center in East China from 2000 to 2005. This study showed that liver insufficiency was positively associated with a poorer outcome, suggesting that cirrhosis has a significantly independent adverse impact on survival of these patients.

Applications

Several management suggestions are proposed for the improvement in cirrhotic patients with abdominal trauma. It is critical to promptly diagnose and treat injuries for cirrhotic trauma patient. Since bleeding complications are frequent in cirrhotic patients, early and aggressive correction of coagulation parameters and hypothermia is crucial. Early appropriate nutritional support should be provided.

Terminology

Hepatic cirrhosis: a kind of pathological changes in liver. Hepatic cirrhosis is frequently followed by hepatocellular necrosis. Cirrhosis, regardless of its etiology, inhibits the liver's response to injury. The predominant histological features are wide-spread fibrosis and nodule formation with loss of normal hepatic architecture. These changes are manifested clinically as hepatic failure and portal hypertension, the magnitude of which determines the course and prognosis of individual patients.

Peer review

This is an interesting manuscript, showing that cirrhosis is associated with a higher mortality, a longer time of ICU and hospital stay in trauma patients. Treatment of trauma patients with severe pre-existing liver disease remains a challenge to the surgeon.

REFERENCES

1 **Yao XX**, Jiang SL, Yao DM. Current research of hepatic cirrhosis in China. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 617-622
2 **Xiao Z**, Yan H, Wang Z, Zou Z, Xu Y, Chen J, Zhang H, Ross CA, Keyes BB. Trauma and dissociation in China. *Am J Psychiatry* 2006; **163**: 1388-1391
3 **Di Bisceglie AM**, Loyet M, Peters M. Long term follow up of bone mineral density in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Minerva Med* 2004; **95**: 529-534
4 **Tam MM**. Occult pneumothorax in trauma patients: should this be sought in the focused assessment with sonography for trauma examination? *Emerg Med Australas* 2005; **17**: 488-493
5 **Lu W**, Wai CT. Surgery in patients with advanced liver cirrhosis: a Pandora's box. *Singapore Med J* 2006; **47**: 152-155
6 **Cohen SM**, Te HS, Levitsky J. Operative risk of total hip and knee arthroplasty in cirrhotic patients. *J Arthroplasty* 2005; **20**: 460-466
7 **Sandor L**, Kiss L. Isolated injury of the gallbladder. A rare cause of hemorrhagic shock after blunt abdominal trauma in a patient with liver cirrhosis. *Chirurg* 2006; **77**: 730-736
8 **Demetriades D**, Constantinou C, Salim A, Velmahos G, Rhee P, Chan L. Liver cirrhosis in patients undergoing laparotomy for trauma: effect on outcomes. *J Am Coll Surg* 2004; **199**: 538-542
9 **Zhang FK**, Zhang JY, Jia JD. Treatment of patients with alcoholic liver disease. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2005; **4**: 12-17
10 **Wang ZX**, Fu ZR, Ding GS, Zhang JJ, Fu H, Zhang M, Zhang CY. Prevention of hepatitis B virus reinfection after orthotopic liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 2004; **36**: 2315-2317
11 **Zheng SS**. Promoting improvement of liver transplantation in China. *Zhonghua Ganzangbing Zazhi* 2004; **12**: 321-322
12 **Fan WM**, Zhu WF, Zhang SY, Wang QX, Yin LM, Wan H, Gao Y, Tian XL, Yu M, Jin J, Xu XY, Wei L, Zhuang H. Nine-year follow-up of hepatitis C virus infection in a rural area of Hebei province, China. *Zhonghua Yixue Zazhi* 2004; **84**: 392-396
13 **Xiao Z**, Yan H, Wang Z, Zhou Z, Xu Y, Cheng J, Zhang H, Ross CA, Keyes BB. Dissociative experiences in China. *J Trauma Dissociation* 2006; **7**: 23-38
14 **Zhou JH**, Zhao XC, Jiang ZQ, Zhu SY, Zhou JC. Investigation on road traffic safety of the mountain areas in southwest China based on Wulong County, Chongqing Municipality. *Traffic Inj Prev* 2005; **6**: 193-196
15 **Lin VY**, Chee GH, David EA, Chen JM. Medial canal fibrosis: surgical technique, results, and a proposed grading system. *Otol Neurotol* 2005; **26**: 825-829
16 **Lai CC**, Ding LW, Hsueh PR. Wound infection and septic shock due to Aeromonas trota in a patient with liver cirrhosis. *Clin Infect Dis* 2007; **44**: 1523-1524
17 **Ferri-de-Barros JE**, Winter DH, César KG, Gavinier LC, Alencar MJ, Faria MC. Alcohol drinking-related disorders in 1901 patients treated at Taubaté's Municipal Emergency room in 2000: a contribution to sociocentric education in neurology. *Arq Neuropsiquiatr* 2004; **62**: 307-312
18 **Krishna PD**, Malone JP. Isolated adult supraglottic stenosis: surgical treatment and possible etiologies. *Am J Otolaryngol* 2006; **27**: 355-357
19 **Ludwig D**, Borsa JJ, Maier RV. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt for trauma? *J Trauma* 2000; **48**: 954-956
20 **Tanaka S**, Tanaka H, Kubo S, Shuto T, Takemura S, Yamamoto T, Uenishi T, Hai S, Osugi H, Hirohashi K. Bowel injury associated with liver surgery for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2006; **53**: 571-575
21 **K C S**, Matsutani S, Maruyama H, Fukamachi T, Nomoto H, Akiike T, Ebara M, Saisho H. Portal-systemic encephalopathy

in two patients without liver cirrhosis and portal hypertension. *Hepatol Res* 2002; **23**: 122-129
22 **Mattox TW**, Teasley-Strausburg KM. Overview of biochemical markers used for nutrition support. *DICP* 1991; **25**: 265-271
23 **Sharp GB**, Mizuno T, Fukuhara T, Tokuoka S. Lack of association between acute exposure to ionizing radiation and liver cirrhosis. *Int J Radiat Biol* 2006; **82**: 231-240
24 **Mayberry JC**, Welker KJ, Goldman RK, Mullins RJ. Mechanism of acute ascites formation after trauma resuscitation. *Arch Surg* 2003; **138**: 773-776
25 **Dangleben DA**, Jazaeri O, Wasser T, Cipolle M, Pasquale M. Impact of cirrhosis on outcomes in trauma. *J Am Coll Surg* 2006; **203**: 908-913
26 **Velanovich V**. Blunt splenic injury in adults: a decision analysis comparing options for treatment. *Eur J Surg* 1995; **161**: 463-470
27 **Tinkoff G**, Rhodes M, Diamond D, Lucke J. Cirrhosis in the trauma victim. Effect on mortality rates. *Ann Surg* 1990; **211**: 172-177
28 **Cheadle WG**, Mercer-Jones M, Heinzelmann M, Polk HC. Sepsis and septic complications in the surgical patient: who is at risk? *Shock* 1996; **6** Suppl 1: S6-S9
29 **Gerke P**, Hapke U, Rumpf HJ, John U. Alcohol-related diseases in general hospital patients. *Alcohol Alcohol* 1997; **32**: 179-184
30 **Kosaka A**, Hayakawa H, Kusagawa M, Takahashi H, Okamura K, Mizumoto R, Katsuta K. Successful surgical treatment for implanted intraperitoneal metastases of ruptured small hepatocellular carcinoma: report of a case. *Surg Today* 1999; **29**: 453-457
31 **Nishiwaki M**, Ashida H, Nishimura T, Kimura M, Yagyu R, Nishioka A, Utsunomiya J, Yamamura T. Posttraumatic intra-gallbladder hemorrhage in a patient with liver cirrhosis. *J Gastroenterol* 1999; **34**: 282-285
32 **Morris JA**, MacKenzie EJ, Edelstein SL. The effect of preexisting conditions on mortality in trauma patients. *JAMA* 1990; **263**: 1942-1946
33 **Chiarla C**, Giovannini I, Boldrini G, Castagneto M. The branched-chain amino acids. *Minerva Gastroenterol Dietol* 1997; **43**: 189-196

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Liu Y

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5659-5661
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

CASE REPORT

Invasive amebiasis and ameboma formation presenting as a rectal mass: An uncommon case of malignant masquerade at a western medical center

Rosemarie E Hardin, George S Ferzli, Michael E Zenilman, Pratap K Gadangi, Wilbur B Bowne

Rosemarie E Hardin, Michael E Zenilman, Wilbur B Bowne, Department of Surgery, The State University of New York, Health Science Center of Brooklyn, NY 11203, United States
George S Ferzli, Pratap K Gadangi, Department of Surgery, Lutheran Medical Center, Brooklyn, NY 11203, United States
George S Ferzli, Department of Surgery, SUNY-Health Science Center of Brooklyn, United States
Pratap K Gadangi, Department of Surgery, Coney Island Hospital, Brooklyn NY 11203, United States
Wilbur B Bowne, Department of Surgery, Department of Veteran's Affairs, New York Harbor Health Care System, Brooklyn, NY 11203, United States
Correspondence to: Wilbur B Bowne, MD, SUNY Health Science Center @ Brooklyn, Department of Surgery, 450 Clarkson Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11203, United States. wbbowne@earthlink.net
Telephone: +1-718-2701421 Fax: +1-718-6303706
Received: June 15, 2007 Revised: August 21, 2007

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5659.asp

Abstract

A 54-year-old man presented with rectal pain and bleeding secondary to ulcerated, necrotic rectal and cecal masses that resembled colorectal carcinoma upon colonoscopy. These masses were later determined to be benign amebomas caused by invasive *Entamoeba histolytica*, which regressed completely with medical therapy. In Western countries, the occurrence of invasive protozoan infection with formation of amebomas is very rare and can mistakenly masquerade as a neoplasm. Not surprisingly, there have been very few cases reported of this clinical entity within the United States. Moreover, we report a patient that had an extremely rare occurrence of two synchronous lesions, one involving the rectum and the other situated in the cecum. We review the current literature on the pathogenesis of invasive *E. histolytica* infection and ameboma formation, as well as management of this rare disease entity at a western medical center.

Key words: Rectal ameboma; Invasive amebiasis; Ameboma; Amebic dysentery; *Entameoba histolytica*

Hardin RE, Ferzli GS, Zenilman ME, Gadangi PK, Bowne WB. Invasive amebiasis and ameboma formation presenting as a rectal mass: An uncommon case of malignant masquerade at a western medical center. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5659-5661

INTRODUCTION

Amebiasis is an infectious disease caused by the protozoan *Entamoeba histolytica*. Infection rarely, but potentially may evolve into invasive colitis and formation of ameboma, which can closely resemble colorectal carcinoma. In general, the clinical spectrum of colorectal amebiasis ranges from asymptomatic carrier to severe fulminant necrotizing colitis with bleeding and perforation[1]. As previously reported, focal ileocolonic intussusceptions from ameboma formation serving as the lead point, although rare, can occur[2].

The experience with invasive amebiasis is largely from endemic countries. From documentation dating back to 1933, to date 2970 cases of invasive amebiasis have been reported in the United States, mostly comprising recent immigrants from Mexico, Central and South America, plus Asians and Pacific Islanders[3]. With increasing patterns of immigration and travel in and out of the US, continued recognition of this disease is required. Therefore, the roles of the gastroenterologist and surgeon are to maintain a high index of clinical suspicion in patients at increased risk for this disease entity, and to distinguish this from other more common causes of gastrointestinal masses, as well as instituting appropriate therapy. In this report, diagnosis, pathogenesis and treatment of this rare clinical entity from a western medical center are reviewed.

CASE REPORT

A 54-year-old man of Middle Eastern decent, without significant medical history, presented to a community hospital complaining of rectal pain and bleeding for about 2 d. The patient described the pain as constant, without aggravating or alleviating factors. In addition, the patient complained of constipation that led to mild, crampy abdominal pain. He denied nausea, vomiting, diarrhea or fever. The patient also denied any history of weight loss. Pertinent to the patients' presentation was that he had no history of recent travel abroad, anoreceptive intercourse, or family history of carcinoma.

Physical examination revealed a healthy, well-nourished man who was normothermic with normal hemodynamic parameters. His abdominal examination was unremarkable: soft and non-tender, without any appreciable organomegaly.

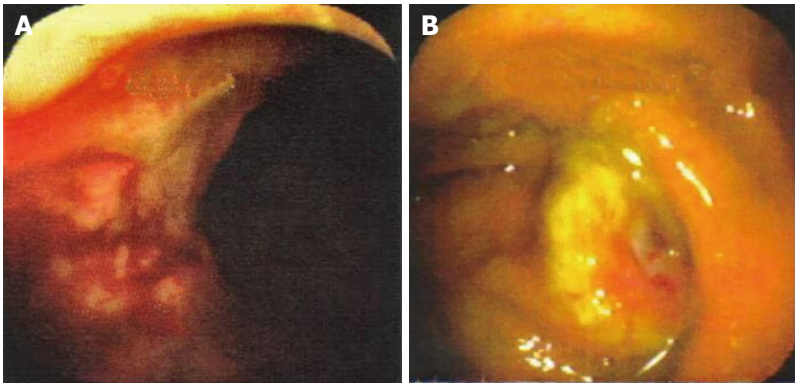


Figure 1 Endoscopy demonstrating ulcerated rectal (**A**) and cecal (**B**) lesions suggestive of carcinoma.

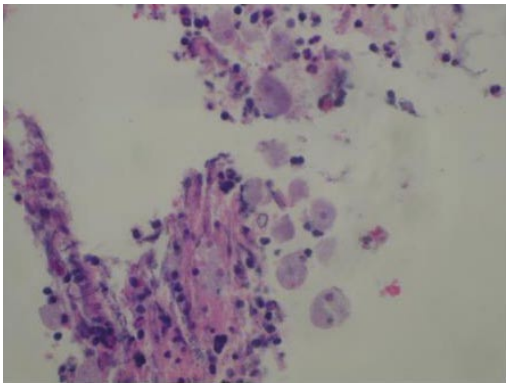


Figure 2 High-powered magnification of a hematoxylin-eosin preparation of a colonic biopsy that demonstrates trophozoites of *E. histolytica*.

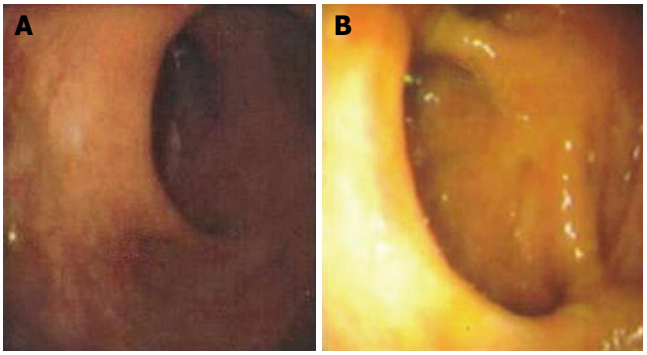


Figure 3 Follow-up colonoscopy subsequent to a completed course of antibiotic therapy, which demonstrates complete resolution of rectal and cecal lesions, with normal appearing colonic mucosa.

External anal inspection was normal. Rectal examination revealed a large, firm mass in the left lateral position, about 3 cm from the anal verge, with gross blood. Rigid proctosigmoidoscopy was performed, which revealed an ulcerated mass starting at the dentate line (Figure 1A). The surface of the lesion appeared necrotic and highly suggestive of carcinoma, which was the preliminary diagnosis. CT scan of the abdomen and pelvis revealed diffuse, non-specific thickening of the rectal wall without intra-abdominal pathology. A colonoscopy was performed that demonstrated an additional ulcerated lesion involving the cecum (Figure 1B). Both lesions were biopsied and were consistent with lymphocytic colitis. Importantly, protozoan organisms, consistent with amebiasis were identified (Figure 2). Serology for *Entamoeba histolytica* infection was also confirmed. The rectal and cecal lesions were determined to be amebomas as a result of invasive amebiasis. The patient was given a course of oral antibiotic therapy with metronidazole for 4 wk, with complete resolution of his symptoms. A follow-up surveillance colonoscopy and CT scan of the abdomen and pelvis demonstrated complete regression of both the rectal and cecal lesions (Figure 3A and B).

DISCUSSION

The intestinal protozoan parasite *E. histolytica* is the causative organism responsible for human amebiasis and amebic dysentery. Of epidemic proportions, it afflicts millions of people worldwide in developing countries, and about 40 000-100 000 people die annually from this disease[4]. Transmission is mostly by ingestion of contaminated food and water; however, venereal transmission *via* the fecal-oral route can occur[5].

Trophozoites are responsible for invasive disease and may lead to colonic mucosal ulceration. The gastrointestinal tract and liver are the two main organ systems affected by the parasite. Rarely, patients with long-standing infection develop ulcerative, exophytic, inflammatory masses that are indistinguishable from carcinomas and can become a considerable size, reportedly up to 15 cm in diameter[5]. Such lesions are referred to as amebomas. Moreover, colonic amebomas may present with synchronous amebic liver abscesses, which can also masquerade as advanced carcinoma of the gastrointestinal tract.

Amebomas result from the formation of annular colonic granulation tissue at single or multiple sites, usually within the cecum or ascending colon (Figure 4). Formation of an ameboma is an uncommon complication of invasive amebiasis. It occurs in 1.5% of all cases with invasive amebiasis[6]. Amebomas usually develop in the untreated or inadequately treated patients with amebiasis years after the attack of dysentery[5]. The current report is atypical, as our patient denied any history of antecedent symptoms suggestive of dysentery or foreign travel. Clinically, amebomas can also cause obstructive symptoms. Patients may also present with diarrhea or constipation and associated systemic symptoms, including weight loss

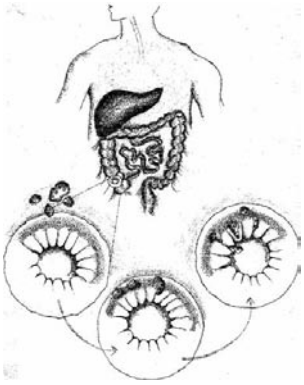


Figure 4 Pathogenesis of ameboma formation: infection is initiated by ingestion of fecally contaminated food or water containing *E. histolytica* cysts. Excystation occurs in the bowel lumen in which motile and potentially invasive trophozoites are formed. Invasion of the mucosa and submucosa may lead to colitis. Ameboma forms when severe inflammatory reaction occurs, with formation of granulation tissue that leads to a pseudotumor appearance.

and fever. In areas in which infection is prevalent, crampy abdominal pain plus a palpable mass usually suggests the diagnosis. In contrast, in western countries, a similar presentation alternatively raises suspicion of malignancy. The differential diagnosis for this clinical picture may also include inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), lymphoma, enterocolitis and intestinal tuberculosis[6]. In most cases in western countries, a diagnosis of colorectal carcinoma or IBD is considered more likely than a parasitic infection. Interestingly, there has been only a single *E. histolytica* outbreak in the United States, which occurred in Chicago in 1933 when sewage pipes contaminated tap water pipes in a hotel, which led to 800 cases of amebiasis[3].

The pathological range of amebic colitis extends from mucosal thickening with discrete ulcer formation, separated by regions of normal colonic mucosa, to diffusely inflamed and edematous mucosa. Severe forms of invasive amebiasis may progress to frank necrosis and perforation of the intestinal wall[3]. These findings are grossly similar to those found with IBD, in particular Crohn's colitis. Parasitic colitis results when the trophozoite penetrates the intestinal mucosal layer. Subsequent invasion occurs as a result of epithelial, neutrophil and lymphocyte cellular destruction by trophozoites[7].

The standard method for diagnosis of intestinal amebiasis is examination of stools by microscopy. However, the reported sensitivity of this method for identifying amebic organisms ranges from 25% to 60%[4]. False-positive results may also occur because *E. histolytica* is morphologically identical to non-pathological species, namely, *Entamoeba dispar* and *Entameba moshkovskii*[4]. Currently, more sensitive and specific methods, including antigen detection in stools and serum, and polymerase chain reaction techniques are now utilized[4].

The primary treatment for amoebic colitis is oral metronidazole therapy. Affected patients should be treated with metronidazole for 5-10 d. Longer intervals of therapy may be warranted in cases with ameboma formation, as in our patient. Treatment with metronidazole may be followed by a luminal agent such as paromomycin, iodoquinol or diloxanide furoate for 5-20 d to eradicate colonization[4]. Surgical intervention is rarely indicated except for rare instances of acute necrotizing colitis with bowel perforation, or if the patient fails to respond to anti-amebic therapy. Although amebiasis is a clinical entity rarely encountered in developed western countries, it should be included in the differential diagnosis of patients presenting with bloody diarrhea and a colon mass, with a history of dysentery along with travel to endemic areas. A high index of suspicion is required for appropriate diagnosis and treatment.

Unfortunately, there are no pathognomonic radiographic or endoscopic features suggestive of invasive ameboma formation; therefore, pathologic confirmation is crucial, as well as appropriate serology. Multiple biopsies may often be required to confirm the diagnosis. Two important caveats are essential to consider when managing patients with invasive amebomas: (1) follow up sigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy after completion of medical therapy to assure complete resolution of disease; and (2) persistent disease or incomplete regression should raise the suspicion for an underlying malignancy as the two entities may coexist[1].

In summary, the equivocal clinical symptoms (i.e., pain, bleeding and obstruction) that differentiate invasive amebiasis presenting as an ameboma from carcinoma may prove problematic. Notwithstanding, in a high-risk patient, clinical suspicion is warranted to assure appropriate diagnostic evaluation. Differentiating amebiasis from colorectal carcinoma by endoscopy with biopsy, serology, and other novel modes of antigen detection provides essential information. Therapeutic intervention with oral anti-parasitic medications rather than surgical management should then occur.

REFERENCES

1 **Ooi BS**, Seow-Choen F. Endoscopic view of rectal amebiasis mimicking a carcinoma. *Tech Coloproctol* 2003; **7**: 51-53
2 **Steer D**, Clarke DL, Buccimazza I, Thomson SR. An unusual complication of intestinal amoebiasis. *S Afr Med J* 2005; **95**: 845
3 **Stanley SL**. Amoebiasis. *Lancet* 2003; **361**: 1025-1034
4 **Ng DC**, Kwok SY, Cheng Y, Chung CC, Li MK. Colonic amoebic abscess mimicking carcinoma of the colon. *Hong Kong Med J* 2006; **12**: 71-73
5 **Simşek H**, Elsürer R, Sökmensüer C, Balaban HY, Tatar G. Ameboma mimicking carcinoma of the cecum: case report. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **59**: 453-454
6 **Misra SP**, Misra V, Dwivedi M. Ileocecal masses in patients with amebic liver abscess: etiology and management. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 1933-1936
7 **Haque R**, Huston CD, Hughes M, Houpt E, Petri WA. Amebiasis. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 1565-1573

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Kerr C **E- Editor** Lu W

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5662-5663
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

CASE REPORT

Black esophagus with concomitant candidiasis developed after diabetic ketoacidosis

Yong Hwan Kim, Si Young Choi

Yong Hwan Kim, Si Young Choi, Department of Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery, Uijeongbu St. Mary's Hospital, The Catholic University of Korea, College of Medicine, Seoul 480-821, Korea
Supported by grants from the catholic university of Korea, College of Medicine
Correspondence to: Yong Hwan Kim, MD, Uijeongbu St. Mary's Hospital 65-1, Geumo-dong, Uijeongbu, Gyeonggi-do, Seoul 480-821, Korea. cmccs@naver.com
Telephone: +82-31-8203586 Fax: +82-31-8472934
Received: August 10, 2007 Revised: September 6, 2007

Abstract

Black esophagus is a very rare disease and its pathogenesis has been unclear. Black esophagus developed concomitantly with candidiasis after diabetic ketoacidosis has not been reported yet. We report a case who developed esophageal stricture after the treatment of black esophagus and thus balloon dilatation was performed several times but failed, hence, surgical treatment was performed.

Key words: Esophagus; Candidiasis; Diabetic ketoacidosis; Surgery

Kim YH, Choi SY. Black esophagus with concomitant candidiasis developed after diabetic ketoacidosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5662-5663

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5662.asp

INTRODUCTION

Black esophagus was reported in 1990 by Goldenberg *et al*[1]. Black esophagus is a rare disease and defined as a dark, pigmented esophagus at endoscopy together with histologic mucosal necrosis. The etiology remains unknown, but is most likely multifactorial, even though most reports have suggested an ischemic pathogenesis[2-5]. It caused by diabetic ketoacidosis or candidiasis, but it is very rare etiology. Here, we present a case of a patient with black esophagus developed concomitantly with candidiasis after diabetic ketoacidosis.

CASE REPORT

A 34 year old male patient with the past history of type Ⅱ diabetes transferred to the emergency room with drowsy mentality. His general condition was poor. He presented with arterial hypotension (60/30 mmHg), hyperglycemia (819 mg/dL), electrolyte imbalance (sodium 118 mEq/L and potassium 6.5 mEq/L), impaired renal function (BUN 194 mg/dL and creatinine 2.90 mg/dL), and an acid-base disorder known as metabolic acidosis (pH = 7.241 with low bicarbonate levels). Urine ketones were elevated (+++). The clinical picture suggested that patient had diabetic ketoacidosis.

Two days after admission, hematemesis was detected, Esophago-gastro-duodenoscopy (EGD) showed black and friable mucosa from 3 to 4 cm below the cricopharyngeus to the cardia (Figure 1). Biopsies of the esophagus were not obtained at this time due to concern about possible perforation.

The patient gradually recovered after the conservative treatments such as intravenous proton pump inhibitor, total parenteral nutrition, oral intake restriction and antibiotics. Six days after admission, biopsies of the esophagus were obtained with EGD and revealed submucosal necrosis and candidiasis. After conservative treatments including antifungal agents (fluconazol 200 mg for seven days), the patient was discharged on the thirtieth day of admission. Subsequently, after 2 months, esophagus stricture was developed. Balloon dilation was performed 3 times during 6 months, but it was not improved (Figure 2A), and thus subtotal esophagectomy and esophagogastrostomy were performed (Figure 2B), and on the eighteenth day of surgery, he was discharged without complication.

DISCUSSION

Black esophagus was reported in 1990 by Goldenberg *et al*[1]. Black esophagus is a rare disease, and the incidence detected by EGD has been reported to be 0.01%-0.2%[2-5]. It is developed preferentially in the male (81%), and it has been reported to occur predominantly in the elderly[4].

The pathogenesis of black esophagus remains undefined and is probably a combination of an low systemic perfusion, gastric outlet obstruction, and malnutrition[2-5].

Several etiologies have been suggested including ischemia, lye ingestion, microbial infection related to a nasogastric tube, anticardiolipin antibody syndrome, herpes simplex esophagitis, diabetic ketoacidosis, severe vomiting, acute gastric outlet obstruction with massive gastroesophageal reflux, *Lactobacillus acidophilus* infection, acute caustic injury from detergent in the endoscope, antibiotics, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and hypothermia[2,3,5]. Among 88 cases of black esophagus reported until now,

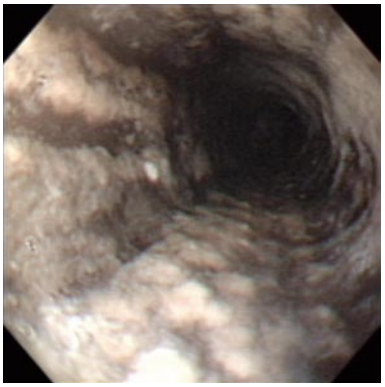


Figure 1 Endoscopy shows that esophagus is circumferentially black and friable.

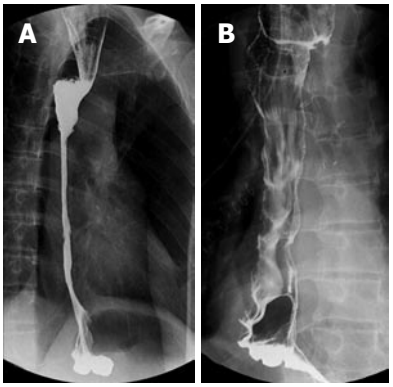


Figure 2 Barium swallow study. **A**: Stricture formation at middle esophagus; **B**: Improvement of the stricture was seen after surgical treatment.

cases whose etiology was diabetic ketoacidosis were 3 cases[4], cases whose etiology was fungal infection were 2 cases[5,6]; however, reports showing diabetic ketoacidosis and candidiasis concomitantly have not been reported.

Most patients are symptomatic, and the most common symptoms are upper gastrointestinal bleeding such as hematemesis, coffee-ground vomiting and melena[2-4].

The diagnosis is based on typical endoscopic appearance and on histopathological findings after the exclusion of true necrosis and ulceration. It shows the finding of the diffusely black esophageal mucosa, and in most cases it disappears suddenly in the Z-line. Histological findings of esophagus biopsy show necrotic debris, and it may show the finding of the necrotic mucosa without the viable epithelium, and occasionally, the submucosa and up to the muscularis propria, although rare, may be involved[2,4]. This case showed that submucosal involvement.

The prognosis of black esophagus is very poor, and its mortality reaches up to 31.8%-50%, although most of the deaths were caused by underlying illnesses[2-4]. Death secondary to esophageal necrosis occurs in less than 6% of cases[4]. Therapeutic modalities are not standardized, but most authors support a conservative approach by correcting the underlying disease, intravenous proton pump inhibitor, total parenteral nutrition, and oral intake restriction[2-5].

The major complications of black esophagus are esophageal stenosis and stricture formation, and they occur in 10.2%-15% of patients. Repeated dilation is required in most patients[2,4,5]. In our case, repeated dilation was not effective, and thus surgical treatment was performed. Other complications are esophageal perforation, mediastinitis and abscess formation, which occurs in approximately 6% patients[4].

Surgical treatments for black esophagus have been reported in 5 cases[4], nevertheless, all 5 cases were performed surgery for early complications such as esophageal perforation and our case is the first case of black esophagus performed surgical treatment for the late complication esophageal stricture.

REFERENCES

1 **Goldenberg SP**, Wain SL, Marignani P. Acute necrotizing esophagitis. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 493-496
2 **Carneiro M**, Lescano M, Romanello L, Módena J, Carneiro F, Ramalho L, Martinelli A, França A. Acute esophageal necrosis. *Digestive Endoscopy* 2005; **17**: 89–92
3 **Grudell AB**, Mueller PS, Viggiano TR. Black esophagus: report of six cases and review of the literature, 1963-2003. *Dis Esophagus* 2006; **19**: 105-110
4 **Gurvits GE**, Shapsis A, Lau N, Gualtieri N, Robilotti JG. Acute esophageal necrosis: a rare syndrome. *J Gastroenterol* 2007; **42**: 29-38
5 **Ben Soussan E**, Savoye G, Hochain P, Hervé S, Antonietti M, Lemoine F, Ducrotté P. Acute esophageal necrosis: a 1-year prospective study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 213-217
6 **Hoffman M**, Bash E, Berger SA, Burke M, Yust I. Fatal necrotizing esophagitis due to Penicillium chrysogenum in a patient with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 1992; **11**: 1158-1160

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Rippe RA **E- Editor** Liu Y

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5664-5667
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

CASE REPORT

Giant submucosal lipoma located in the descending colon: A case report and review of the literature

Li Jiang, Li-Sheng Jiang, Fu-Yu Li, Hui Ye, Ning Li, Nan-Sheng Cheng, Yong Zhou

Li Jiang, Li-Sheng Jiang, Fu-Yu Li, Hui Ye, Ning Li, Nan-Sheng Cheng, Yong Zhou, The First Department of General Surgery, West China Hospital of Sichuan University, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China
Correspondence to: Professor Li-Sheng Jiang, The First Department of General Surgery, West China Hospital of Sichuan University, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China. jls339@126.com
Telephone: +86-13880900287
Received: July 12, 2007 Revised: August 15, 2007

Abstract

Colonic lipoma is an uncommon tumor of the gastrointestinal tract. Most cases are asymptomatic, with a small tumor size, and do not need any special treatment. However, we encountered one patient with a giant submucosal lipoma, with a maximum diameter of 8.5 cm, which exhibited symptoms such as intermittent lower abdominal pain, changes in bowel habits with passage of fresh blood and mucus per rectum, abdominal distension, anorexia and weight loss. Unfortunately, the possibility of colonic malignancy could not be precluded and left hemicolectomy was planned. The exact diagnosis of this special case was accomplished by intraoperative pathology. In the end, local resection was performed instead of left hemicolectomy. To the best of our knowledge, colonic lipoma exceeding 8 cm in diameter has not been previously reported. We, therefore, present this case and discuss age and sex factors, clinical and histopathological findings, diagnostic methods and treatment by reviewing the available literature, to serve as a reminder that colonic lipoma can also exist in patients with significant symptoms. In addition, intraoperative pathology should be investigated in those doubtful cases, so as to guide the exact diagnosis and treatment plan.

Key words: Colon; Lipoma; Age; Diagnosis; Therapy

Jiang L, Jiang LS, Li FY, Ye H, Li N, Cheng NS, Zhou Y. Giant submucosal lipoma located in the descending colon: A case report and review of the literature. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; 13(42): 5664-5667

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/5664.asp

INTRODUCTION

Lipoma of the colon is a rare condition which may be detected incidentally at colonoscopy, surgery or autopsy[1-3]. Most colonic lipomas are asymptomatic and need no treatment, whereas lesions exceeding 2 cm in diameter do produce symptoms[1,3-5]. Large colonic lipomas are usually mistaken for more serious pathology as a result of their rarity and variable presentation. Although the nosopoietic location of colonic lipoma usually varies with different cases, the commonest site is the ascending colon[2,4]. To the best of our knowledge, colonic lipoma exceeding 8 cm in diameter has not been reported previously. We report here, a patient with a giant lipoma, whose maximum diameter reached 8.5 cm, located in the submucosa of the descending colon, and review the literature regarding colonic lipoma.

CASE REPORT

A 42-year-old man presented to us in February 2007 with a 3-wk history of intermittent lower abdominal pain. One month previously, he experienced changes in bowel habits (7-10 times daily), with passing fresh blood and mucus per rectum, abdominal distension, anorexia and weight loss. A routine colonoscopy had been performed in another hospital 15 d previously, which revealed a yellowish, 7.5-cm diameter, spherical polypoid lesion arising from the lateral wall of the descending colon (Figure 1). The related biopsy revealed a lot of inflammatory necrotic tissue and a glandular cell with mildly atypical hyperplasia. Physical examination revealed mild tenderness in the left lower quadrant. Routine blood tests were normal except for mild anemia. Abdominal ultrasonography indicated a space-occupying mass of the lower abdomen. Considering the uncertain diagnosis, we suggested that colonoscopy or computed tomography (CT) should be performed again in our hospital, but this was refused by the patient. In view of his age, symptoms and related examinations, the possibility of colonic malignancy could not be precluded, and left hemicolectomy was subsequently planned.

At laparotomy, an 8.5 cm × 7 cm × 6.5 cm yellowish polypoid lesion, associated with numerous areas of ulceration on its surface, was seen arising from the descending colon. The lesion almost obstructed the whole lumen, and resulted in dilatation of the proximal colon. However, to our surprise, such a large lesion was only located on the submucosa, without invasion of the serosa. Subsequently, microscopical examination confirmed that this lesion was

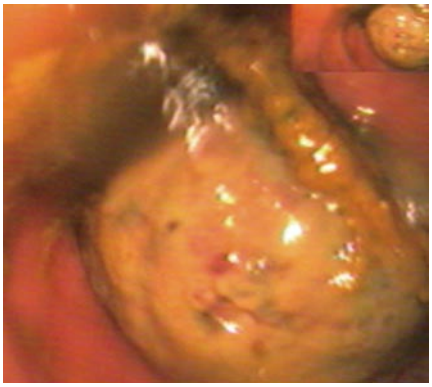


Figure 1 Colonoscopy showed a yellowish, spherical, polypoid lesion, with a lot of inflammatory necrotic tissue and numerous areas of ulceration on its surface, which arose from the lateral wall of the colon. The lesion almost obstructed the whole lumen.

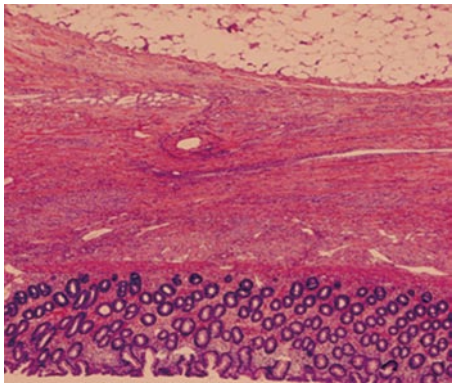


Figure 2 Histopathology showed that the lesion was located in the submucosa, of adipose origin, and was complicated with necrotic tissue and granulation on its surface (HE, × 100).

Table 1 Summary of the clinicopathologic features about treated lipomas in reviewed literature

	No	Sex		Mean age (yr)	Signs and symptoms				Pathology	Location				MMD (cm)
		M	F		AP	BPR	AIBH	anemia		AC	TC	DC	SC	
Ref.1	4	1	3	52	2	2	2	0	SL	1	0	1	2	2.5
Ref.2	3	1	2	51	3	0	0	0	SL	2	1	0	0	6.3
Ref.3	6	2	4	72.5	1	3	1	2	SL	3	0	0	3	2.9
Ref.4	8	4	4	53.3	3	3	1	1	SL (7) MSL (1)	6	1	0	1	3.7
Ref.6	5	1	4	62	3	5	1	0	SL	1	1	2	1	5
Ref.7	1	0	1	71	1	0	1	0	SL	1	0	0	0	5
Ref.8	3	0	3	71	0	3	0	0	SL (2) MSL (1)	1	0	0	2	2.2
Ref.9	2	1	1	56.5	0	1	1	0	SL	0	0	1	1	4
Present series	1	1	0	42	1	1	1	1	SL	0	0	1	0	8.5
Combined data	33	11	22	59.7	14	18	8	4	SL (31) MSL (2)	15	3	5	10	3.8
Percentage (%)		33.3	66.7		42.4	54.5	24.2	12.1	SL (93.9) MSL (6.1)	45.5	9.1	15.2	30.3	11.5

M: Male; F: Female; AP: Abdominal pain; BPR: Bleeding per rectum; AIBH: Alteration in bowel habits; AC: Ascending colon; TC: Transverse colon; DC: Descending colon; SC: Sigmoid colon; MMD: Mean maximum diameter; SSL: Simple submucosal lipoma; MSL: Multiple submucosal lipoma.

only located in the submucosa, and originated from adipose tissue, but it had necrotic tissue and ulcerations on its surface (Figure 2). Finally, the diagnosis was confirmed to be one of submucosal lipoma of the descending colon, and local resection was performed. The patient recovered and was discharged 12 d postoperatively.

DISCUSSION

Lipoma of the colon is an uncommon tumor of the gastrointestinal tract, and belongs to the group of benign non-epithelial tumors. As reported at autopsy, the incidence of colonic lipoma ranges from 0.035 to 4.4%[4]. In general, colonic lipomas do not cause symptoms and, therefore, are usually detected incidentally during colonoscopy, surgery and autopsy. However, a minority of lipomas can cause symptoms when the lesion is large, especially for those with a diameter > 2 cm[1,3-5]. To the best of our knowledge, colonic lipoma with a maximum diameter of 8.5 cm, associated with significant symptoms, has not been previously reported.

The clinicopathologic features of symptomatic lipomas are reviewed in the literature[1-4,6-9] and are summarized in Table 1. Thus, we can conclude that the most common signs and symptoms include abdominal pain (42.4%), bleeding per rectum (54.5%) and alteration in bowel habits (24.2%). With respect to sex distribution, there is a female predominance (66.7%), while other authors have found a nearly equal sex distribution[10]. The most common age is the fifth or sixth decades of life. As for its location, the most typical site for solitary colonic lipoma is the ascending colon (45.5%), whereas the lesion in our report was located in the descending colon. From Table 1, we can see that a solitary lesion is usually found in most cases; by contrast, multiple lesions occur in 6.1% of cases.

Microscopically, colonic lipomas are usually located in the submucosa, and numerous fibra intervals (Figure 3) can be observed in adipose tissue, resulting in the lobulated appearance of lipoma. Furthermore, varying degrees of fat necrosis, granulation and ulceration may be found on the surface of relatively large lipomas.

With the widespread application of colonoscopy, small lesions are found incidentally, and their diagnosis and treatment are mainly dependent on endoscopy[1-3]. However, large colonic lipomas are often mistaken for more serious pathology, as a result of their rarity and variable presentation. Therefore, more attention should be paid to how to increase the rate of preoperative diagnosis. Clinical fea-

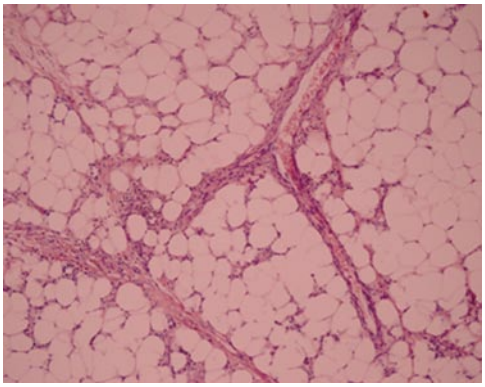


Figure 3 Histopathology showed the numerous fibra intervals in the adipose tissue (HE, × 200).

tures are still important, especially for those large lesions. Our patient with an 8.5 cm × 7 cm × 6.5 cm lesion should have presented with the appearance of complete intestinal obstruction. However, to our surprise, he did not present as an emergency with significant symptoms. Several factors may have contributed to this phenomenon. One potential explanation is the slow growth rate of colonic lipoma. Another, and perhaps more likely explanation is the long-standing obstruction caused by the lesion, which results in proximal colonic dilatation.

Although imaging findings may be less specific, they have still contributed to the preoperative diagnosis. Barium enema may demonstrate a filling defect, and the lesion may exhibit a lobulated appearance[4,6], but this phenomenon is non-specific and the lesion can be mistaken for another type of neoplasm, although water enemas are thought to improve the contrast with radiolucent fat[11]. For large colonic lipomas and acutely ill patients, CT and magnetic resonance imaging are the preferred methods because their imaging characteristics are relatively typical for adipose tissue, and they provide a rapid diagnosis[2,6].

Since most lipomas are submucosal, colonoscopy can provide direct visualization and pathologic examination via biopsy forceps. Thus, preoperative diagnosis mainly depends on colonoscopy. Typical lipomas appear as smooth, spheroidal, slightly yellowish polyps of variable size, with or without a pedicle[3]. In addition, three signs may contribute to the diagnosis, including "cushion sign"[12] (probing the polyp with a closed biopsy forceps will often yield a pillow-like indentation), "tenting effect"[12] (grasping the overlying mucosa with the biopsy forceps presents a tent-like appearance), and the "naked fat sign"[13] (biopsies may result in an extrusion of yellowish fat). Although colonoscopy is reliable for the diagnosis of the usual type of lipoma, it is more difficult for diagnosis of those lesions with an atypical, callous or ulcerated shape. In our case, the necrotic mucosa and numerous areas of ulceration that existed on the tumor surface, together with a relatively hard texture, may have confused the above-mentioned signs, therefore leading to the subsequent misdiagnosis. In addition, biopsy by colonoscopy may provide limited help for the diagnosis of some large lesions, because it cannot obtain adequate tissue. If the adipose tissue lies beneath the normal or ulcerated mucosa, it is not likely to be diagnostic; furthermore, if biopsy yields benign tissue, it is not possible to completely exclude the possibility of malignancy. The exact diagnosis still mainly relies on an intra- or postoperative pathology examination.

Many therapeutic interventions have been tried for the treatment of colonic lipoma, which have varied from hemicolectomy to segmental resection and local excision, according to the correct preoperative diagnosis and intraoperative findings. With the advancement of colonoscopy, endoscopic cautery snare resection of colonic lipomas has become popular and has been proven to be a safe therapeutic method, especially for small lesions[1,3,4,6,7,14]. However, various views with regard to endoscopic removal of large lipomas have been reported. Some studies have demonstrated that removal of lipomas $\geqslant$ 2 cm in diameter is associated with a greater risk of perforation[3,15,16]. On the contrary, some authors have reported that large pedunculated and large sessile lesions can be removed without perforation[6,7]. Kim *et al*[1] have performed endoscopic removal of lipoma with a maximum diameter of 3.8 cm, assisted by injection of saline solution with or without epinephrine into the submucosa beneath the lesion, with no complications. Bar-Meir *et al*[7] have described the safe endoscopic removal of a very large 5-cm lipoma. In addition, the feasibility of slow mechanical transection of a large colonic lipoma (4 cm) with an endoloop ligation technique has been demonstrated by Raju *et al*[15], whereas this novel technique may require application of additional loops several weeks later. The removal of colonic lipoma with the assistance of laparoscopy has also been reported[17].

However, on the basis of our case and the published literature, we think that surgical removal should be the preferred choice for the following indications: (1) lipoma with a diameter of > 4 cm, with a sessile appearance or limited pedicle; (2) unclear preoperative diagnosis; (3) lesions with significant symptoms, especially the appearance of intussusception; (4) involvement of the muscular layer or serosa; and (5) lesion cannot be resected radically under colonoscopy. Although colonic lipoma is a benign tumor, intraoperative frozen sections are required to ensure negative surgical margins, which can guide the choice of surgical approach. As far as our patient was concerned, left hemicolectomy would have been performed instead of local resection, if we had not taken a frozen section intraoperatively. Overall, intraoperative pathology is the most important examination for doubtful cases of colonic lipoma, which can also assist in guiding the exact diagnosis and treatment planning.

REFERENCES

1 **Kim CY**, Bandres D, Tio TL, Benjamin SB, Al-Kawas FH. Endoscopic removal of large colonic lipomas. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **55**: 929-931

2 **Liessi G**, Pavanello M, Cesari S, Dell'Antonio C, Avventi P. Large lipomas of the colon: CT and MR findings in three symptomatic cases. *Abdom Imaging* 1996; **21**: 150-152

3 **Pfeil SA**, Weaver MG, Abdul-Karim FW, Yang P. Colonic lipomas: outcome of endoscopic removal. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1990; **36**: 435-438

4 **Ryan J**, Martin JE, Pollock DJ. Fatty tumours of the large intestine: a clinicopathological review of 13 cases. *Br J Surg* 1989; **76**: 793-796

5 **Radhi JM**. Lipoma of the colon: self amputation. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1993; **88**: 1981-1982
6 **Creasy TS**, Baker AR, Talbot IC, Veitch PS. Symptomatic submucosal lipoma of the large bowel. *Br J Surg* 1987; **74**: 984-986
7 **Bar-Meir S**, Halla A, Baratz M. Endoscopic removal of colonic lipoma. *Endoscopy* 1981; **13**: 135-136
8 **Murray MA**, Kwan V, Williams SJ, Bourke MJ. Detachable nylon loop assisted removal of large clinically significant colonic lipomas. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **61**: 756-759
9 **Gordon RT**, Beal JM. Lipoma of the colon. *Arch Surg* 1978; **113**: 897-899
10 **Zhang H**, Cong JC, Chen CS, Qiao L, Liu EQ. Submucous colon lipoma: a case report and review of the literature. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 3167-3169
11 **Stevens GM**. The use of a water enema in the verification of lipoma of the colon. Am J Roentgenol Radium *Ther Nucl Med* 1966; **96**: 292-297
12 **De Beer RA**, Shinya H. Colonic lipomas. An endoscopic analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1975; **22**: 90-91
13 **Messer J**, Waye JD. The diagnosis of colonic lipomas--the naked fat sign. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1982; **28**: 186-188
14 **Michowitz M**, Lazebnik N, Noy S, Lazebnik R. Lipoma of the colon. A report of 22 cases. *Am Surg* 1985; **51**: 449-454
15 **Raju GS**, Gomez G. Endoloop ligation of a large colonic lipoma: a novel technique. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **62**: 988-990
16 **Yarze JC**. Colonoscopic resection of an asymptomatic colon lipoma. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **63**: 890-891; author reply 891-892
17 **Scoggin SD**, Frazee RC. Laparoscopically assisted resection of a colonic lipoma. *J Laparoendosc Surg* 1992; **2**: 185-189

S- Editor Liu Y **L- Editor** Kerr C **E- Editor** Li JL

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5668
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Acknowledgments to Reviewers of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*

Many reviewers have contributed their expertise and time to the peer review, a critical process to ensure the quality of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*. The editors and authors of the articles submitted to the journal are grateful to the following reviewers for evaluating the articles (including those published in this issue and those rejected for this issue) during the last editing time period.

Manuel Romero-Gómez, MD, Professor
Hepatology Unit, Hospital Universitario de Valme, Ctra de Cádiz s/n, Sevilla 41014, Spain

Charalambos Gustav Antoniades, Porfessor
Institute of Liver Studies, King's College Hospital, Denmark Hill, London SE5 9RS, United Kingdom

Christa Buechler, PhD
Regensburg University Medical Center, Internal Medicine I, Franz Josef Strauss Allee 11, 93042 Regensburg, Germany

Ton Lisman, PhD
Thrombosis and Haemostasis Laboratory, Department of Haematology G.03.550, University Medical Centre, Heidelberglaan 100, 3584 CX Utrecht, The Netherlands

Peter J Mannon, MD
Mucosal Immunity Section, Laboratory of Host Defense, National Institute of Allergy, Laboratory of Clinical Investigation, Building 10/CRC, Room 6-3742, 9000 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, Maryland 20892, United States

Satoshi Osawa, MD
First Department of Medicine, Hamamatsu University School of Medicine, 1-20-1 Handayama, Hamamatsu, 431-3192, Japan

Thomas Langmann, Associate Professor
University of Regensburg, Institute of Human Genetics, Franz-Josef-Strauss-Allee 11, Regensburg 93053, Germany

Gerhard Rogler, Dr, Professor
Department of Internal Medicine, University of Zürich, Zürich 8091, Switzerland

Leonidas G Koniaris, Professor
Alan Livingstone Chair in Surgical Oncology, 3550 Sylvester Comprehensive Cancer Center (310T), 1475 NW 12th Ave., Miami, FL 33136, United States

Jay Pravda, MD
Inflammatory Disease Research Center, Gainesville, Florida, 32614-2181, United States

Roland M Schmid, Dr. Professor of Internal Medicine, Chairman of the 2nd
Department of Internal Medicine, Technical University of Munich, Ismaninger Straße 22, D- 81675 München, Germany

Domenico Alvaro, MD
Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Clinical Medicine, University of Rome La Sapienza, Viale Università 37, Rome 00185, Italy

Paolo Del Poggio, Dr
Hepatology Unit, Department of Internal Medicine, Treviglio Hospital, Piazza Ospedale 1, Treviglio Bg 24047, Italy

Wendy Michelle Mars, PhD
Department of Pathology, University of Pittsburgh, S-411B South Biomedical Science Tower Pittsburgh, PA 15261, United States

Gianluigi Giannelli, MD
Dipartimento di Clinica Medica, Immunologia e Malattie Infettive, Sezione di Medicina Interna, Policlinico, Piazza G. Cesare 11, 70124 Bari, Italy

Rudi Schmid, MD
211 Woodland Road, Kentfield, California 94904, United States

Bashkim Resuli, MD
Department of Internal Medicine and University Service of Gastrohepatology, University Hospital Center " Mother Theresa", Medical Faculty of Tirana, Tirana, Albania

Luigi Bonavina, Professor
Department of Surgery, Policlinico San Donato, University of Milano, via Morandi 30, Milano 20097, Italy

Shinji Tanaka, Director
Department of Endoscopy, Hiroshima University Hospital, 1-2-3 Kasumi, Minami-ku, Hiroshima 734-8551, Japan

Richard A Kozarek, MD
Department of Gastroenterology, Virginia Mason Medical Center, 1100 Ninth Avenue, PO Box 900, Seattle 98111-0900, United States

Jia-Yu Xu, Professor
Shanghai Second Medical University, Rui Jin Hospital, 197 Rui Jin Er Road, Shanghai 200025, China

Seyed-Moayed Alavian, Professor
P.O.Box: 14155-3651, Tehran, Iran

Francesco Negro, MD
Divisions of Gastroenterology and Hepatology and of Clinical Pathology, Hôpital Cantonal Universitaire, 24 rue Micheli-du-Crest, CH-1211 Genève 14, Switzerland

Florian Graepler, Dr
Department of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Infectious Diseases, University Hospital Tuebingen, Otfried-Mueller-Str. 10, D-72076 Tuebingen, Germany

Murray B Resnick, MD, PhD
Department of Pathology, Rhode Island Hospital, 593 Eddy street, Providence RI 02903, United States

Pietro Invernizzi, Dr
Division of Internal Medicine, Department of Medicine, Surgery, Dentistry, San Paolo School of Medicine, University of Milan, Via Di Rudinfi 8, 20142 Milan, Italy

Özlem Yilmaz, PhD, Associate Professor of Microbiology
Dokuz Eylul University, School of Medicine, Department of Microbiology and Clinical Microbiology, Inciralti 35340, Izmir, Turkey

Nikolaus Gassler, Professor
Institute of Pathology, University Hospital RWTH Aachen, Pauwelsstrasse 30, 52074 Aachen, Germany

Chung-Mau Lo, Professor
Department of Surgery, The University of Hong Kong, Queen Mary Hospital, No.102 Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong, China

Joseph Daoud Boujaoude, Assistant Professor
Department of Gastroenterology, Hotel-Dieu de FranceHospital, aint-Joseph University, Beirut 961, Lebanon

Gerardo Nardone, MD, Associate Professor
Department of Clinical and Experimental Medicine, University of Naples Federico II, Via Pansini 5, Napoli 80131, Italy

Richard A Rippe, Dr
Department of Medicine, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC 27599-7038, United States

Einar Stefan Björnsson, Professor
Department of Internal Medicine, Section of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Sahlgrenska University hospital, Med pol II, SE-413 45 Gothenburg, Sweden

Dunja Bruder, PhD
Department for Mucosal Immunity, Helmholtz centre for Infection Research, Inhoffenstrasse 7, Braunschweig 38124, Germany

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5669
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

Meetings

MAJOR MEETINGS COMING UP

Meeting Falk Research Workshop: Morphogenesis and Cancerogenesis of the Liver
25-26 January 2007
Goettingen
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting Canadian Digestive Diseases Week (CDDW)
16-20 February 2007
Banff-AB
cagoffice@cag-acg.org
www.cag-acg.org/cddw/cddw2007.htm

Meeting Falk Symposium 158: Intestinal Inflammation and Colorectal Cancer
23-24 March 2007
Sevilla
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting BSG Annual Meeting
26-29 March 2007
Glasgow
www.bsg.org.uk/

NEXT 6 MONTHS

Meeting 42nd Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver
11-15 April 2007
Barcelona
easl2007@easl.ch
www.easl.ch/liver-meeting/

Meeting Falk Symposium 159: IBD 2007 - Achievements in Research and Clinical Practice
4-5 May 2007
Istanbul
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting European Society for Paediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition Congress 2007
9-12 May 2007
Barcelona
espghan2007@colloquium.fr

Digestive Disease Week
19-24 May 2007
Washington Convention Center, Washington DC

Meeting Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Best Practices: Today and Tomorrow, ASGE Annual Postgraduate Course at DDW
23-24 May 2007
Washington-DC
tkoral@asge.org

Meeting ESGAR 2007 18th Annual Meeting and Postgraduate Course
12-15 June 2007
Lisbon
fca@netvisao.pt

Meeting Falk Symposium 160: Pathogenesis and Clinical Practice in Gastroenterology
15-16 June 2007
Portoroz
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting ILTS 13th Annual International Congress
20-23 June 2007
Rio De Janeiro
www.ilts.org

Meeting 9th World Congress on Gastrointestinal Cancer
27-30 June 2007
Barcelona
meetings@imedex.com

EVENTS AND MEETINGS IN 2007

Meeting Falk Research Workshop: Morphogenesis and Cancerogenesis of the Liver
25-26 January 2007
Goettingen
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting Canadian Digestive Diseases Week (CDDW)
16-20 February 2007
Banff-AB
cagoffice@cag-acg.org
www.cag-acg.org/cddw/cddw2007.htm

Meeting Falk Symposium 158: Intestinal Inflammation and Colorectal Cancer
23-24 March 2007
Sevilla
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting BSG Annual Meeting
26-29 March 2007
Glasgow
www.bsg.org.uk/

Meeting 42nd Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver
11-15 April 2007
Barcelona
easl2007@easl.ch
www.easl.ch/liver-meeting/

Meeting Falk Symposium 159: IBD 2007 - Achievements in Research and Clinical Practice
4-5 May 2007
Istanbul
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting European Society for Paediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition Congress 2007
9-12 May 2007
Barcelona
espghan2007@colloquium.fr

Meeting Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Best Practices: Today and Tomorrow, ASGE Annual Postgraduate Course at DDW
23-24 May 2007
Washington-DC
tkoral@asge.org

Meeting ESGAR 2007 18th Annual Meeting and Postgraduate Course
12-15 June 2007
Lisbon
fca@netvisao.pt

Meeting Falk Symposium 160: Pathogenesis and Clinical Practice in Gastroenterology
15-16 June 2007
Portoroz
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting ILTS 13th Annual International Congress
20-23 June 2007
Rio De Janeiro
www.ilts.org

Meeting 9th World Congress on Gastrointestinal Cancer
27-30 June 2007
Barcelona
meetings@imedex.com

Meeting 15th International Congress of the European Association for Endoscopic Surgery
4-7 July 2007
Athens
info@eaes-eur.org
congresses.eaes-eur.org/

Meeting 39th Meeting of the European Pancreatic Club
4-7 July 2007
Newcastle
www.e-p-c2007.com

Meeting XXth International Workshop on Heliobacter and related bacteria in cronic degistive inflammation
20-22 September 2007
Istanbul
www.heliobacter.org

Meeting Falk Workshop: Mechanisms of Intestinal Inflammation
10 October 2007
Dresden
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting Falk Symposium 161: Future Perspectives in Gastroenterology
11-12 October 2007
Dresden
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Meeting Falk Symposium 162: Liver Cirrhosis - From Pathophysiology to Disease Management
13-14 October 2007
Dresden
symposia@falkfoundation.de

American College of Gastroenterology Annual Scientific Meeting
12-17 October 2007
Pennsylvania Convention Center
Philadelphia, PA

Meeting APDW 2007 - Asian Pacific Digestive Disease Week 2007
15-18 October 2007
Kobe
apdw@convention.co.jp
www.apdw2007.org

15th United European Gastroenterology Week, UEGW
27-31 October 2007
Le Palais des Congrès de Paris, Paris, France

Meeting The Liver Meeting® 2007 - 57th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases
2-6 November 2007
Boston-MA
www.aasld.org

Gastro 2009, World Congress of Gastroenterology and Endoscopy London, United Kingdom 2009

Online Submissions: wjg.wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2007 November 14; 13(42): 5670-5672
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327

Instructions to authors

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Gastroenterology (*WJG, World J Gastroenterol* ISSN 1007-9327 CN 14-1219/R) is a weekly journal of more than 48 000 circulation, published on the 7th, 14th, 21st and 28th of every month.

Original Research, Clinical Trials, Reviews, Comments, and Case Reports in esophageal cancer, gastric cancer, colon cancer, liver cancer, viral liver diseases, *etc*., from all over the world are welcome on the condition that they have not been published previously and have not been submitted simultaneously elsewhere.

Indexed and abstracted in

Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®) and Journal Citation Reports/Science Edition, *Index Medicus*, MEDLINE and PubMed, Chemical Abstracts, EMBASE/Excerpta Medica, Abstracts Journals, *Nature Clinical Practice Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, CAB Abstracts and Global Health. ISI JCR 2003-2000 IF: 3.318, 2.532, 1.445 and 0.993.

Published by

The WJG Press

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed double-spaced on A4 (297 mm × 210 mm) white paper with outer margins of 2.5 cm. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page , Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the Publisher is responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of The WJG Press, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part without the written permission of both the authors and the Publisher. We reserve the right to put onto our website and copy-edit accepted manuscripts. Authors should also follow the guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations, as rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for the loss or damage to photographs and illustrations in mailing process.

Online submissions

Online submissions are strongly advised. Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/index.jsp. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/instructions.jsp) before attempting to submit online. Authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email you describing the problem to wjg@wjgnet.com for assistance. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. A repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

Postal submission

Send 3 duplicate hard copies of the full-text manuscript typed double-spaced on A4 (297 mm × 210 mm) white paper together with any original photographs or illustrations and a 3.5 inch computer diskette or CD-ROM containing an electronic copy of the manuscript including all the figures, graphs and tables in native Microsoft Word format or *.rtf format to:

Editorial Office

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Editorial Department: Apartment 1066, Yishou Garden,
58 North Langxinzhuang Road,
PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com
http: //www.wjgnet.com
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using a word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and in word size 12 with ample margins. The letter font is Tahoma. For authors from China, one copy of the Chinese translation of the manuscript is also required (excluding references). Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Full manuscript title, running title, all author(s) name(s), affiliations, institution(s) and/or department(s) where the work was accomplished, disclosure of any financial support for the research, and the name, full address, telephone and fax numbers and email address of the corresponding author should be included. Titles should be concise and informative (removing all unnecessary words), emphasize what is new, and avoid abbreviations. A short running title of less than 40 letters should be provided. List the author(s)' name(s) as follows: initial and/or first name, middle name or initial(s) and full family name.

Abstract

An informative, structured abstract of no more than 350 words should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts for original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM: Only the purpose should be included. METHODS: The materials, techniques, instruments and equipments, and the experimental procedures should be included. RESULTS: The observatory and experimental results, including data, effects, outcome, *etc*. should be included. Authors should present *P* value where necessary, and the significant data should accompany. CONCLUSION: Accurate view and the value of the results should be included.

The format of structured abstracts is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/11.doc

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words that could reflect content of the study mainly from *Index Medicus*.

Text

For most article types, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include in appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the body text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3 and so on, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. No detailed legend should be involved under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Digital images: black and white photographs should be scanned and saved in TIFF format at a resolution of 300 dpi; color images should be saved as CMYK (print files) but not as RGB (screen-viewing files). Place each photograph in a separate file. Print images: supply images of size no smaller than 126 mm × 85 mm printed on smooth surface paper; label the image by writing the Figure number and orientation using an arrow. Photomicrographs: indicate the original magnification and stain in the legend. Digital Drawings: supply files in EPS if created by freehand and illustrator, or TIFF from photoshops. EPS files must be accompanied by a version in native file format for editing purposes. Existing line drawings should be scanned at a resolution of 1200 dpi and as close as possible to the size where they will appear when printed. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes of atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: ...

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered as 1, 2, 3 and so on, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. No detailed legend should be included under the tables. This part should be added into the text where the tables are applicable. The information should complement but not duplicate that contained in the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under the column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P<0.05$, $^{b}P<0.01$ should be noted ($P>0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of *P* values, $^{c}P<0.05$ and $^{d}P<0.01$ are used. Third series of *P* values can be expressed as $^{e}P<0.05$ and $^{f}P<0.01$. Other notes in tables or under

illustrations should be expressed as ^1F, ^2F, ^3F; or some other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.* in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscripts and who endorse the data and conclusions are included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should code the references according the citation order in text in Arabic numerals, put references codes in square brackets, superscript it at the end of citation content or the author name of the citation. For those citation content as the narrate part, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]. If references are directly cited in the text, they would be put together with the text, for example, from references [19,22-24], we know that...

When the authors code the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in reference part and also insure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not code the same citation twice.

PMID requirement

PMID roots in the abstract serial number indexed by PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?db=PubMed). The author should supply the PMID for journal citation. For those references that have not been indexed by PubMed, a printed copy of the first page of the full reference should be submitted.

The accuracy of the information of the journal citations is very important. Through reference testing system, the authors and editor could check the authors name, title, journal title, publication date, volume number, start page, and end page. We will interlink all references with PubMed in ASP file so that the readers can read the abstract of the citations online immediately.

Style for journal references

Authors: the first author should be typed in bold-faced letter. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized and followed by their name in abbreviation (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). Title of the cited article and italicized journal title (Journal title should be in its abbreviation form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634]

Note: The author should test the references through reference testing system (http://www.wjgnet.com/cgi-bin/index.pl)

Style for book references

Authors: the first author should be typed in bold-faced letter. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized and followed by their name in abbreviation (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Grover VP**, Dresner MA, Forton DM, Counsell S, Larkman DJ, Patel N, Thomas HC, Taylor-Robinson SD. Current and future applications of magnetic resonance imaging and spectroscopy of the brain in hepatic encephalopathy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 2969-2978 [PMID: 16718775]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ Cell Tumour Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http//www.cdc.gov/ncidod/EID/eid.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Inappropriate references

Authors should always cite references that are relevant to their article, and avoid any inappropriate references. Inappropriate references include those that are linked with a hyphen and the difference between the two numbers at two sides of the hyphen is more than 5. For example, [1-6], [2-14] and [1, 3, 4-10, 22] are all considered as inappropriate references. Authors should not cite their own unrelated published articles.

Statistical data

Present as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express t test as t (in italics), F test as F (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as r (in italics), degree of freedom as γ (in Greek), sample number as n (in italics), and probability as P (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p(B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2 not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format about how to accurately write common units and quantum is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/15.doc

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further mention.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.
Genotypes: *gyr*A, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*
Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*
Biology: *H pylori, E coli, etc.*

SUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS AFTER ACCEPTED

Please revise your article according to the revision policies of *WJG*. The revised version including manuscript and high-resolution image figures (if any) should be copied on a floppy or compact disk. Author should send the revised manuscript, along with printed high-resolution color or black and white photos, copyright transfer letter, the final check list for authors, and responses to reviewers by a courier (such as EMS) (submission of revised manuscript by e-mail or on the *WJG* Editorial Office Online System is NOT available at present).

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before sending for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing; (4) Grade D: rejected. The revised articles should be in grade B or grade A.

Copyright assignment form

Please downloaded CAF from http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/9.doc.

We certify that the material contained in this manuscript:

Ms:

Title:

is original, except when appropriately referenced to other sources, and that written permission has been granted by any existing copyright holders. We agree to transfer to WJG all rights of our manuscript, including: (1) all copyright ownership in all print and electronic formats; (2) the right to grant permission to republish or reprint the stated material in whole or in part, with or without a fee; (3) the right to print copies for free distribution or sale; (4) the right to republish the stated material in a collection of articles or in any other format. We also agree that our article be put on the Internet.

Criteria for authorship: The WJG requests and publishes information about contributions of each author named to the submitted study. Authorship credit should be based on (1)direct participation in the study, including substantial contributions to conception and design of study, or acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) manuscript writing, including drafting the article, or revising it critically for important intellectual content; (3)supportive work, including statistical analysis of data, or acquisition of funding, or administration, technology and materials support, or supervision, or supportive contributions. Authors should meet at least one of the three conditions. The WJG does not publish co-first authors and co-corresponding authors.

We hereby assign copyright transfer to WJG if this paper is accepted.

Author Name in full (Full names should be provided, with first name first, followed by middle names and family name at the last, eg, Eamonn MM Quigley). Handwritten names are not accepted.

Author Name in abbreviation (Family name is put first in full, followed by middle names and first name in abbreviation with first letter in capital, eg, Quigley EMM). Handwritten names are not accepted.

1 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

2 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

3 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

4 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

5 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

6 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

7 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

8 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

9 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

10 Full Name: _____
Abbreviation Name: _____
Signed: _____
Date: _____

Final check list for authors

The format is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/13.doc

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions of reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/10.doc

Proof of financial support

For paper supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the document and serial number of the foundation.

Publication fee

Authors of accepted articles must pay publication fee.
EDITORIAL and LETTERS TO THE EDITOR are free of change.